

Foreword

Thank you for choosing Hongqi H9 sedan!

All FAW vehicle models have passed China Compulsion Certification (CCC, GCC Certification).

Hongqi H9 sedan carries multiple luxury equipment and advanced technology. To take full advantage of these equipment and technology, FAW recommends you read this manual thoroughly to know Hongqi H9 sedan quickly and comprehensively.

In addition to introducing the use of the vehicle, this manual explains the driving safety, vehicle maintenance and emergency countermeasures in detail to help you drive this vehicle safely and comfortably, and meanwhile maintain the value of the vehicle to the maximum degree.

The documents provided with the vehicle include this Owner's Manual, Maintenance Manual, which contain the important maintenance information for H9 Sedan. FAW suggests you keep the documents provided inside the vehicle for reference at any time.

This manual is compiled in accordance with the product situations at the time of printing. It will be modified into a second edition for the subsequent products. FAW will reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice. Thank you for your understanding.

First Auto Works (FAW)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Pictorial index	Search by illustration
1	Safety Instructions	One must read through the safety instructions.
2	Instrument cluster	Reading instruments, various alarm lights and indicators,etc.
3	Operating the components	The Opening/closing of windows and doors, adjustments before driving,etc.
4	Driving	Required operations and advice while driving
5	Audio system	Audio system operation
6	Interior features	Usage of interior equipment,etc.
7	Maintenance and care	Steps of vehicle maintenance
8	When trouble arises	Measures for failures or emergencies
9	Vehicle specifications	Details of vehicle specifications
10	Additional information	Additional information on sales to other countries and regions except for the mainland of China
	Other information	Listing of the acronyms and other information contained in this manual

1 Safety Instructions

1-1. Safety Instructions
 Safe Driving 22
 Seat belts 23
 Airbag 29
 Children safety information 40
 Children restraint system 41
 Install the children restraint system
 44
 Cautions on exhaust gas 47

1-2. Immobilizer System
 Engine immobilizer system 48
 Vehicle body immobilizer system 49

2 Instrument cluster

2. Instrument Cluster
 Combination
 instrument..... 52
 Warning light..... 54
 Indicator lamp 56
 Combination instrument multifunctio
 display 58
 Head-up display* 67

3 Operating the components

3-1. Information on the key
 Key 70

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the door and trunk lid

Doors..... 73
 Trunk lid..... 77
 Passive entry & start system 82

3-3. Adjusting the seats

Front seats 87
 Rear seats 90
 Head restraints 91
 Seat memory* 93

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and rear-view mirrors

Steering wheel..... 95
 Interior anti-glare rear-view
 mirror 97
 Exterior rear-view mirror 99

3-5. Opening and closing the windows

Power windows 102
 Panoramic sunroof 105

4 Driving

4-1. Before Driving

Driving a vehicle 110
 Goods and luggage 116
 Trailer towing 117

4-2. Driving specifications

Engine (start) switch 118
 Transmission 120
 Driving mode 125

Air suspension *	128
Turn signal light control handle	132
EPB Electronic Parking Brake ..	133
AUTO HOLD.....	135
4-3. Operating lights and wipers	
Headlight switch	137
ADB intelligent high beam control system*	139
Fog light switch.....	141
Front windshield wiper and washer.....	142
4-4. Fuel filling	
Opening the fuel tank cover.....	145
4-5. Using other driving systems	
Constant speed cruise control* .	148
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Function*	151
Super Adaptive Cruise Control (SACC)*	158
Front and rear parking radar.....	165
Rear view camera system*	170
Panoramic camera system *	174
Tire pressure monitor system (TPMS)	179
LDW/LKA Lane Keeping Assist system*	181
Driver Status Monitor (DSM) system*	184
Forward collision warning (FCW) system*	185
AEB (Autonomous Emergency Braking) system*	188

BSD (Blind Spot Detection) system *	191
TSR (Traffic Sign Recognition) system*	196
Idling start/stop system.....	198
APA (Auto Parking Assist) system*	202
TripREC*	208
Driver assistance system.....	210
4-6. Driving information	
Key points for driving in winter..	213

5 Audio system

5-1. Basic operations	
Multimedia display	216
Buttons on the audio system panel	222
USB port.....	223
5-2. Using audio system *	
Vehicle.....	225
Travel	237
Entertainment	243
My.....	246
Service	250
5-3. Using the Bluetooth® telephone	
Hands-free system	255
Bluetooth® telephone.....	258
5-4. Using the voice recognition function *	
Voice recognition	262

5-5. Using the mobile APP*
 Hong Qi Smar Connect APP ... 264

6 Interior features

6-1. Using the A/C system
 Fully automatic A/C system 268
 Fully automatic A/C system - front control system 269
 Fully automatic A/C system - rear control system 279
 Rear windshield heating 284

6-2. Using the interior lamps
 List of interior lamps 285

6-3. Using the storage units
 List of storage units 288
 Trunk appliance 294

6-4. Other interior equipment
 On-board wireless charging * ... 295
 Sun visor 296
 File holder 297
 Vanity mirror 298
 Cigarette lighter 299
 Power socket 300
 220V Power socket 302
 Seat temperature control* 304
 Seat massage function* 306
 Rear center armrest 308
 Roof grab handle 309
 Coat hook 310

7 Maintenance and care

7-1. Maintenance and servicing
 Cleaning and protecting vehicle exterior trim 312
 Cleaning and protecting vehicle interior trim 314

7-2. Maintenance
 Maintenance instructions 316

7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance
 Do-it-yourself maintenance precautions 318
 DPF 320
 Engine hood 321
 Engine compartment 322
 Battery 331
 Tire 334
 Tire pressure 337
 Wheel 339
 A/C filter 340
 Replacing smart key battery 342
 Checking and replacing the fuse 344

7 When trouble arises

8-1. Essential information
 Emergency flasher 350
 SOS alarm 351

8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies

If the vehicle needs to be towed	352
If any abnormality is found on the vehicle	356
If a warning light illuminates or a warning buzzer sounds	357
In the case of a flat tyre	362
If the engine cannot be started .	369
If the key is lost.....	370
If the smart key does not work properly	371
If the door can not be locked properly	373
If the battery or super capacitor is low*	375
If the vehicle is overheating	379
In case of the vehicle stuck.....	381
If you drive on water covered roads	382
In case of a punctured tyre	383
In case of an accident.....	384
Trunk lid emergency open	385

9 Vehicle specifications

9. Specifications

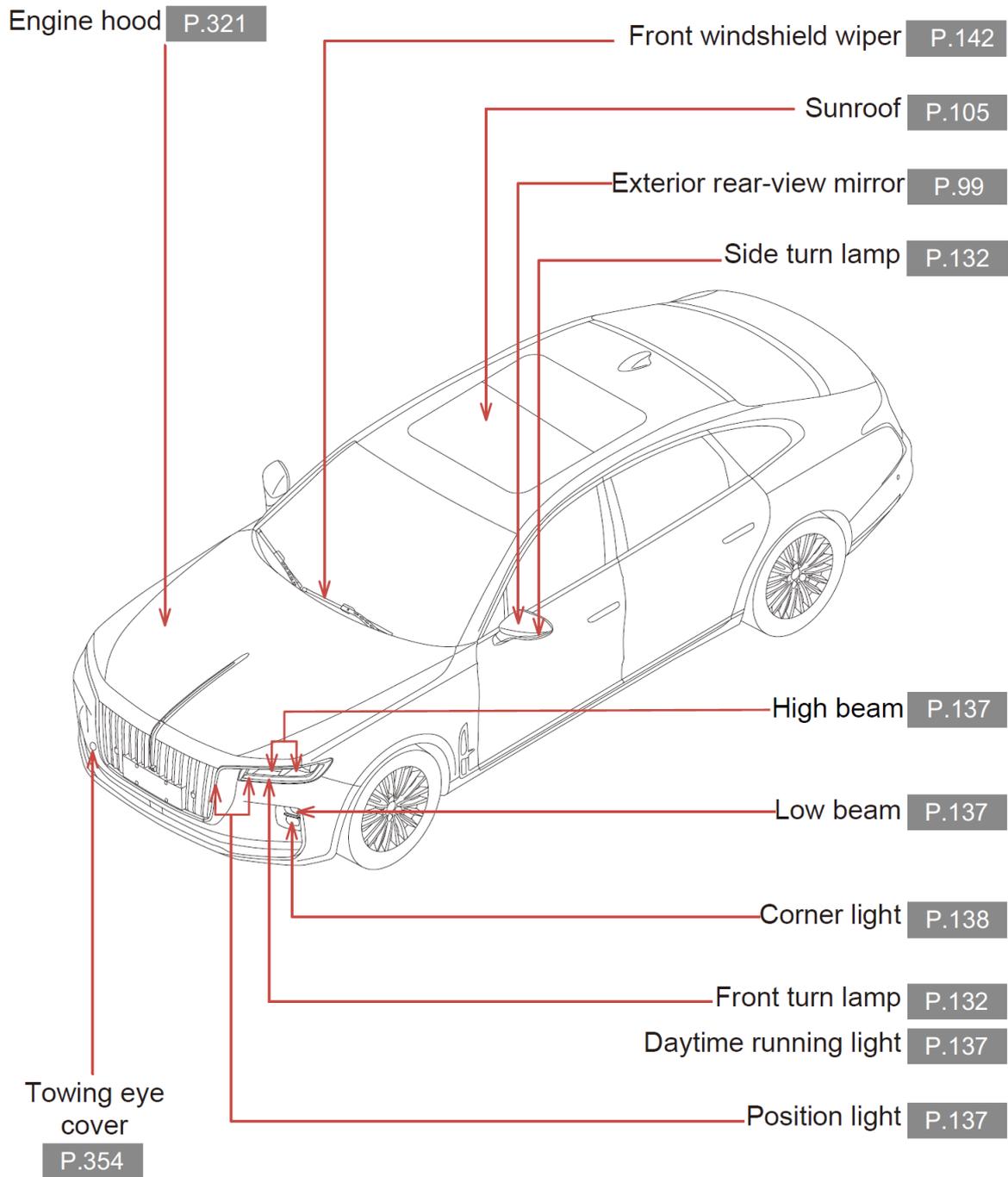
Maintenance data	388
Fuel information.....	402

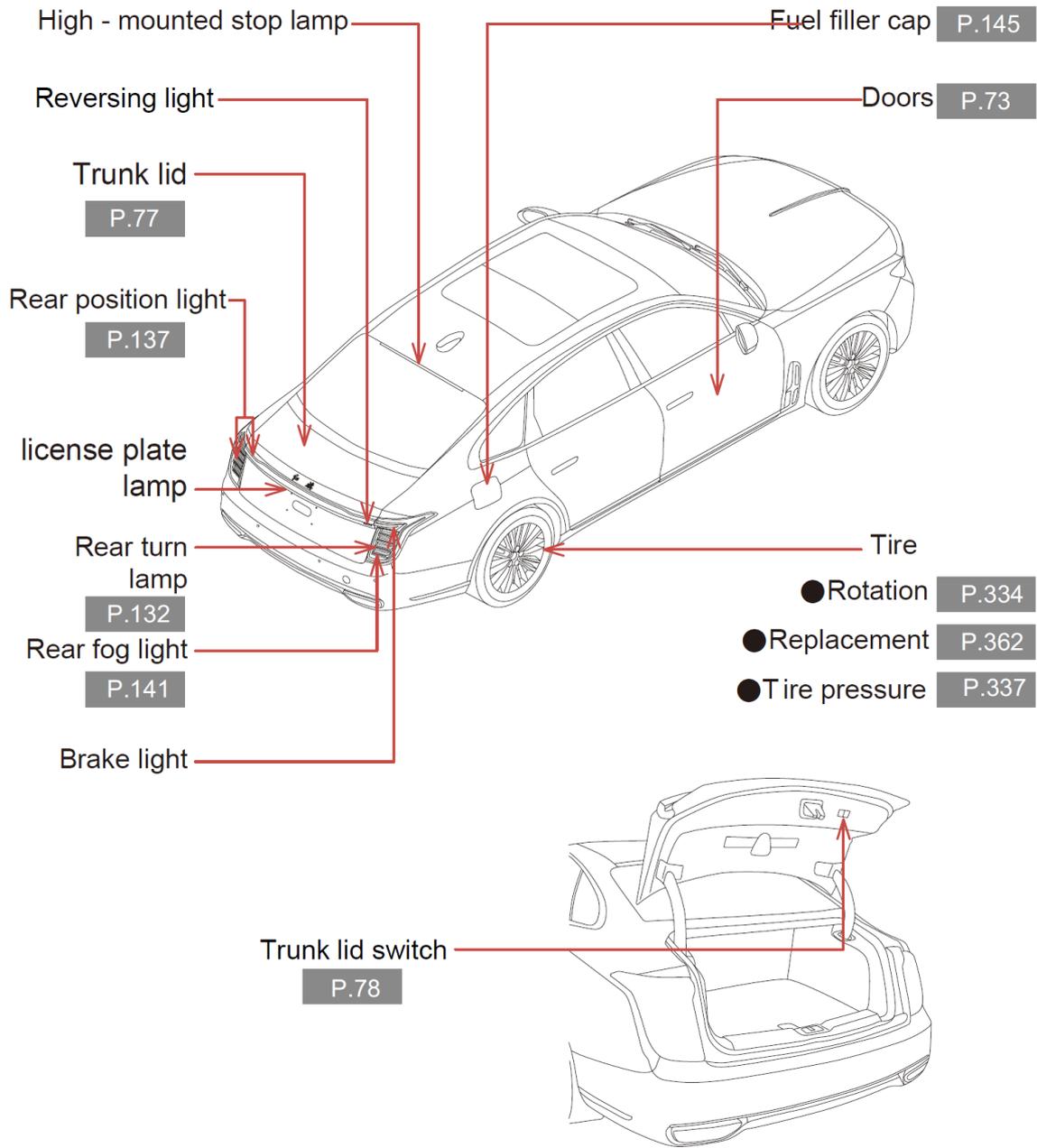
10 Additional information

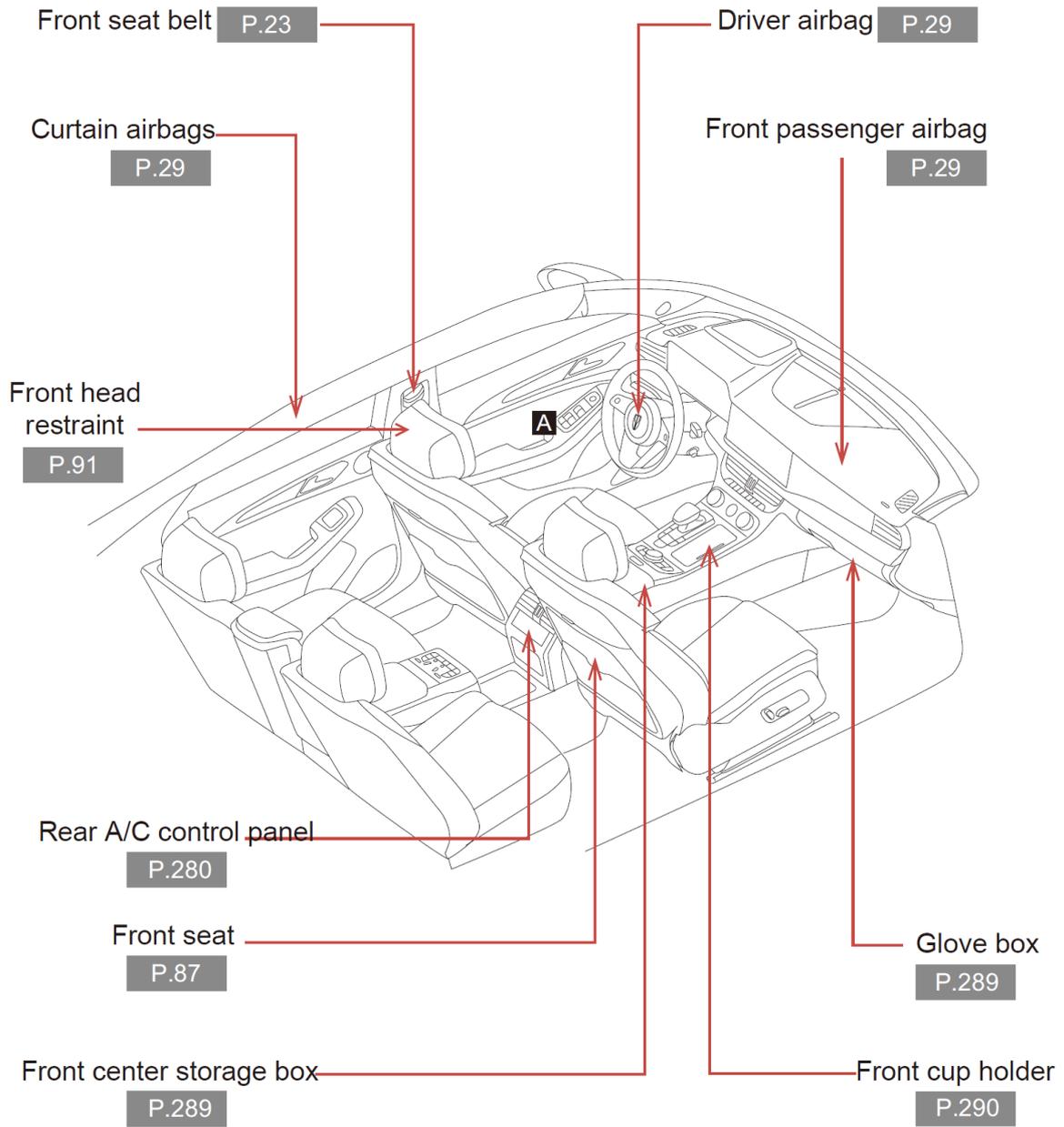
Additional information on sales to other countries and regions except for the mainland of China	404
---	-----

Other information

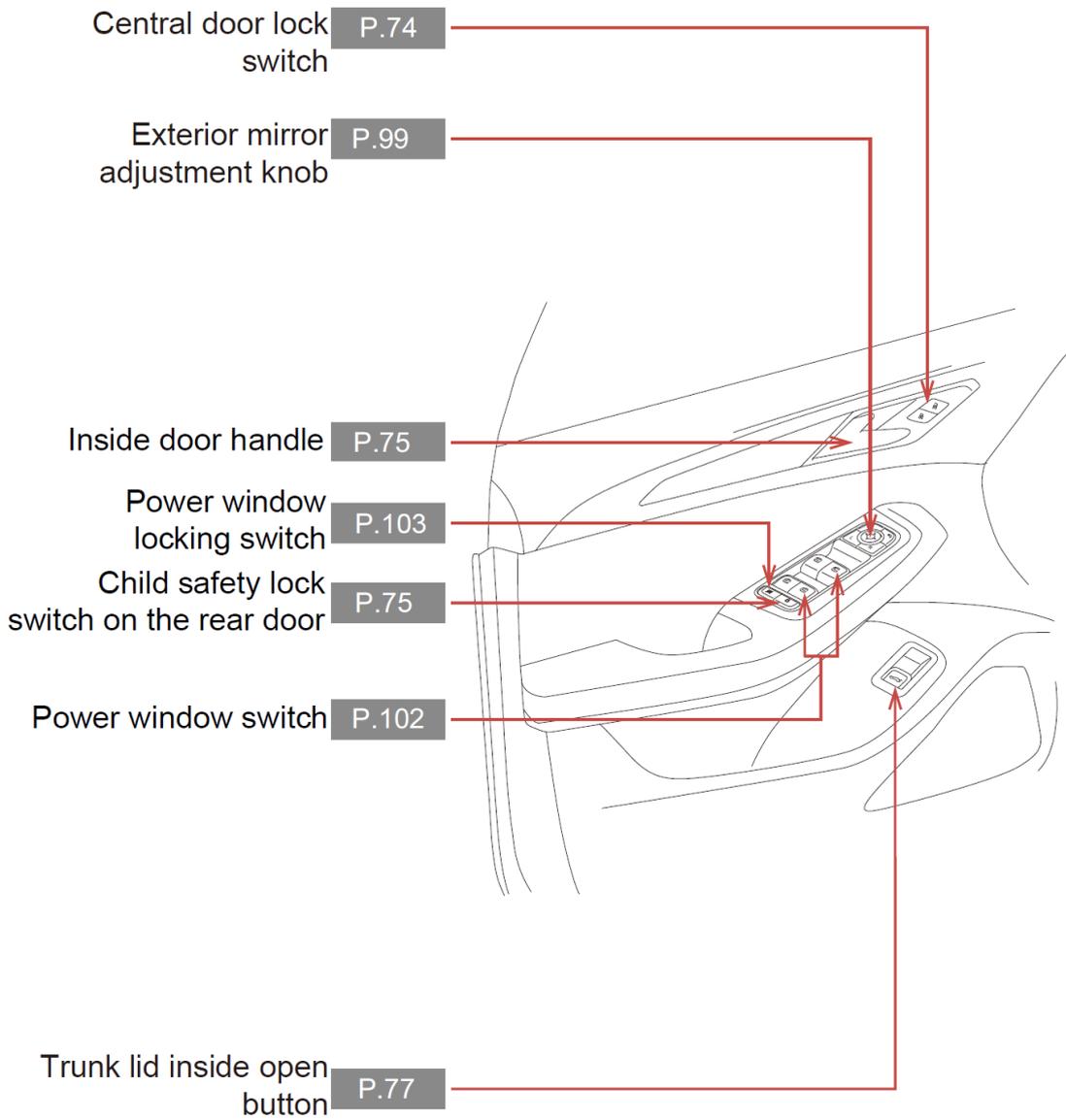
Abbreviation list	406
-------------------------	-----

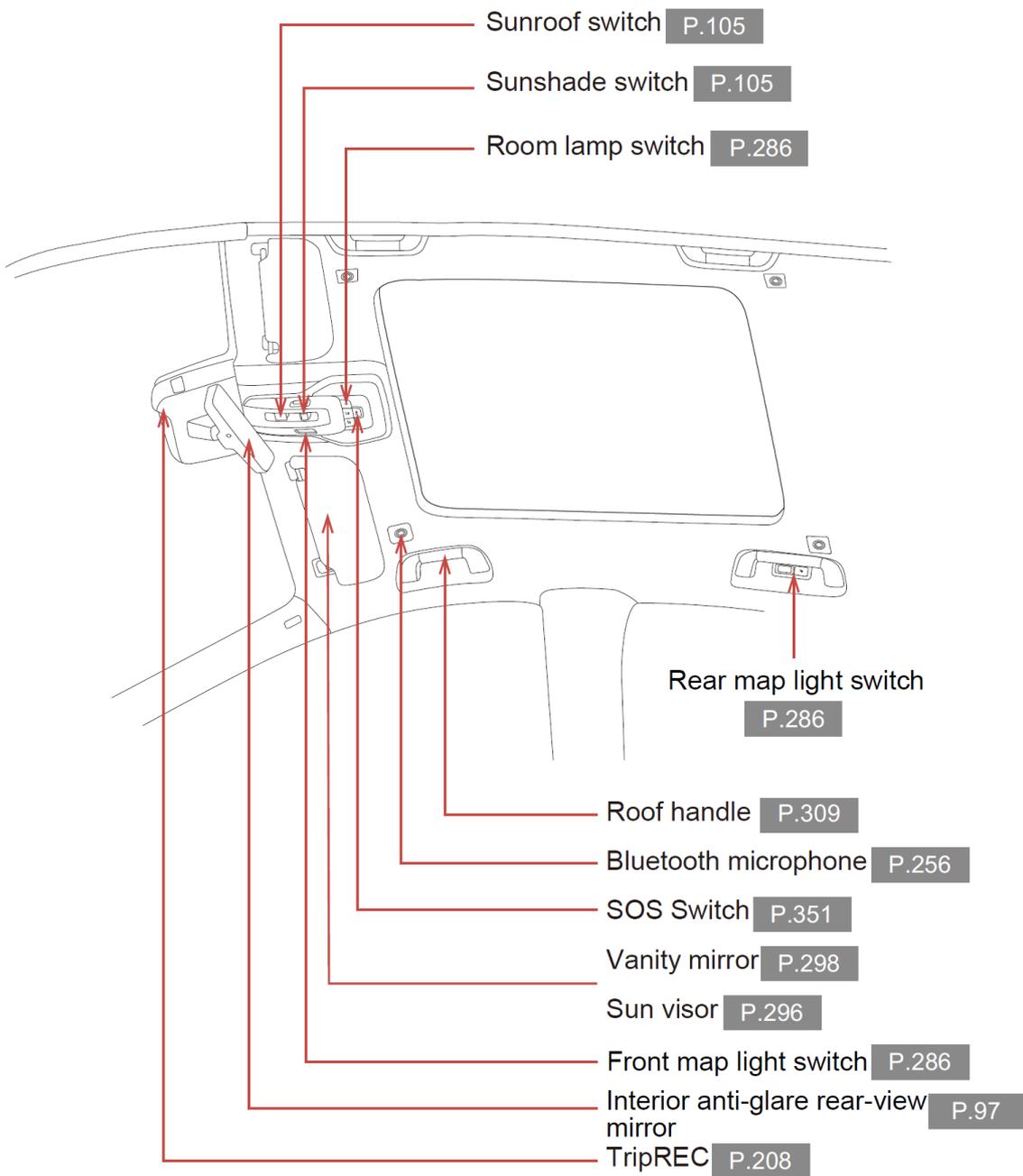


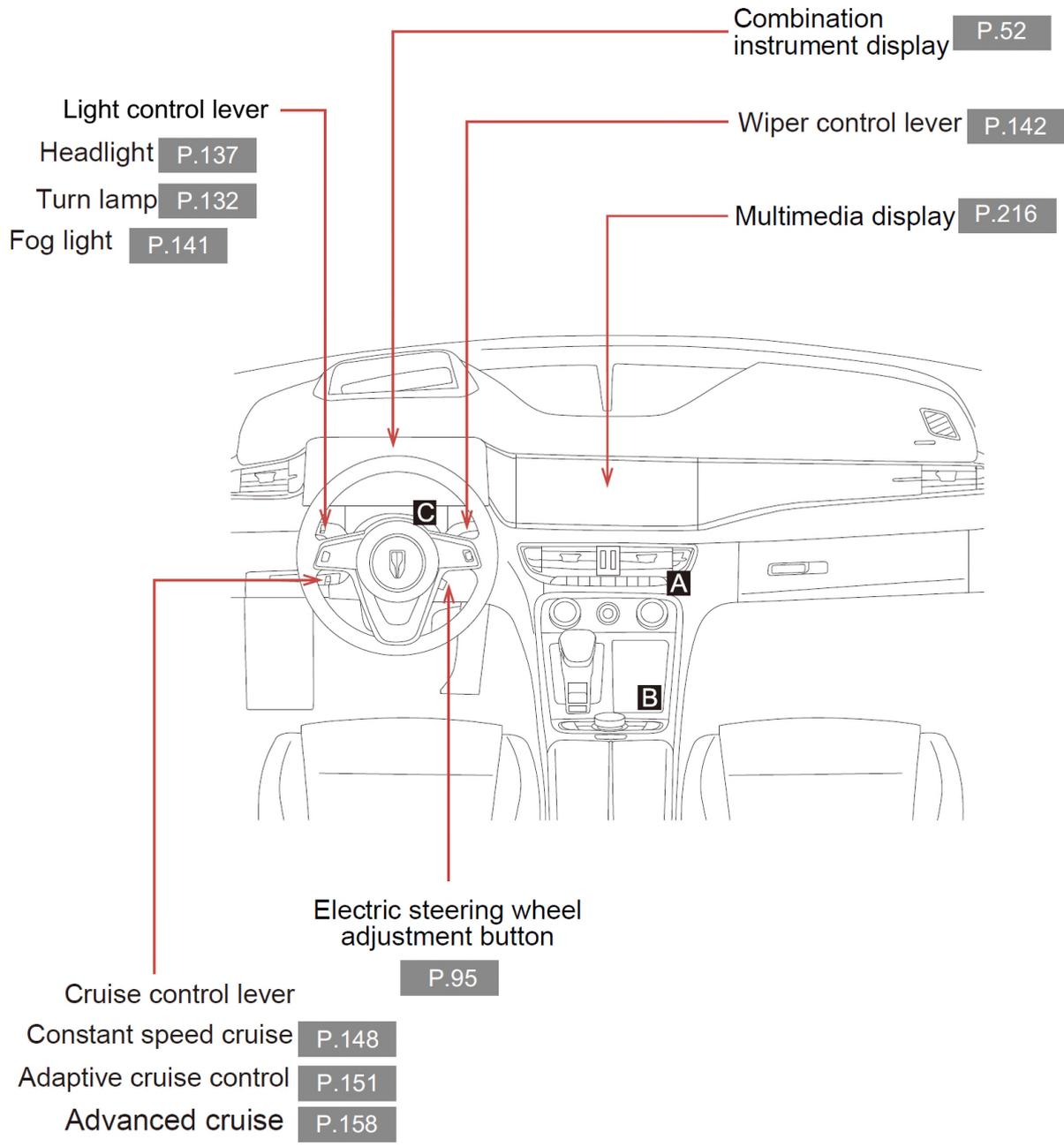


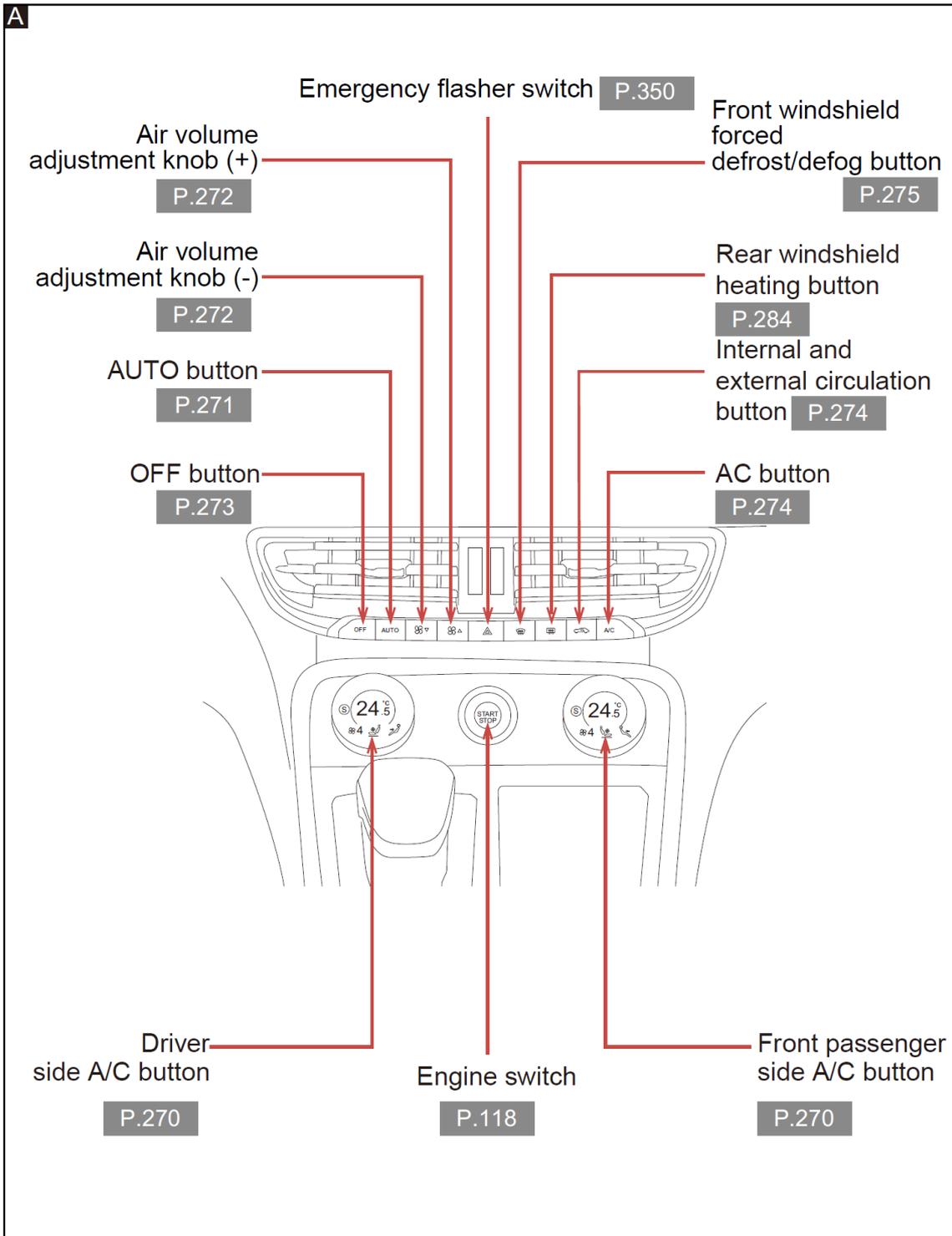


A

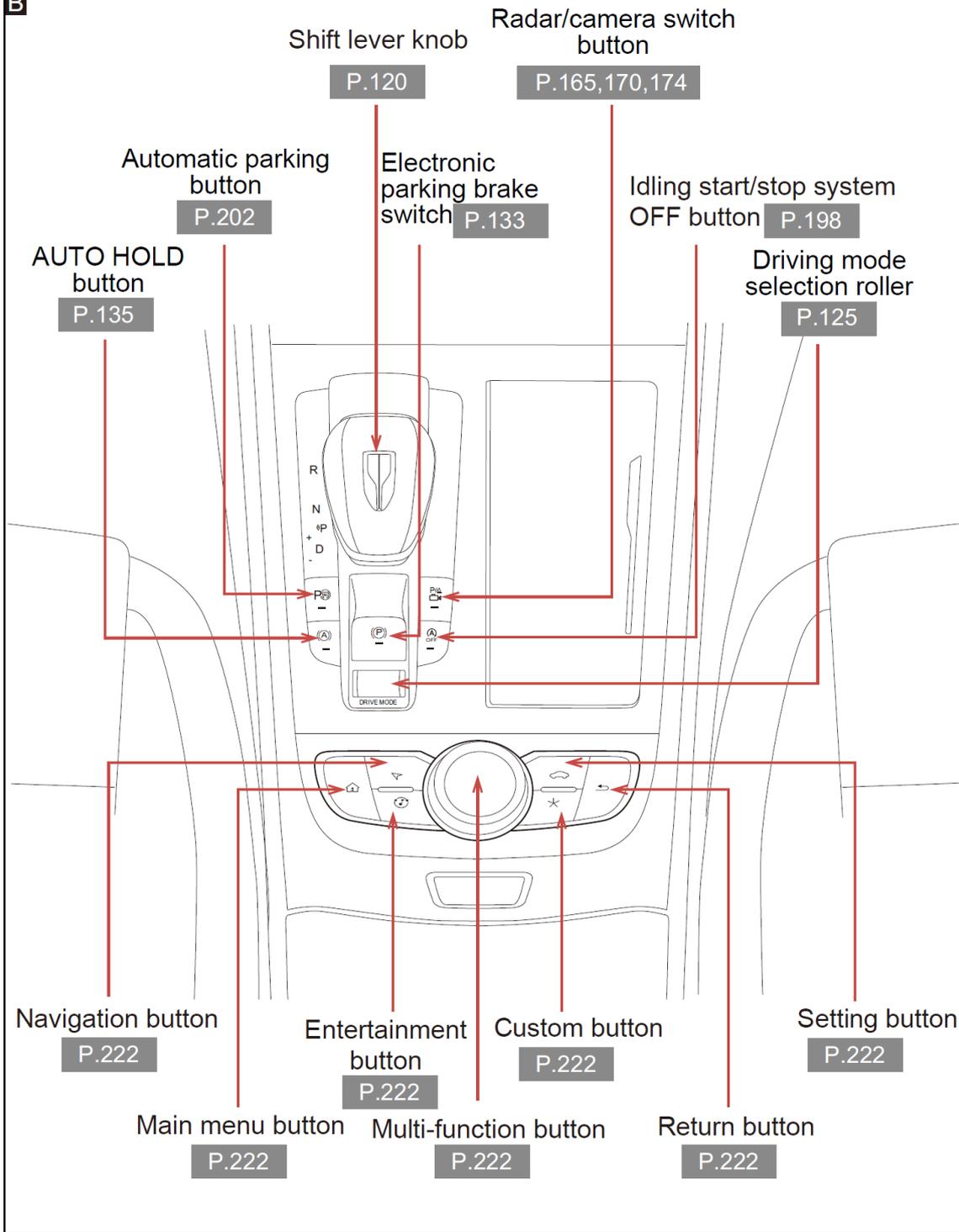




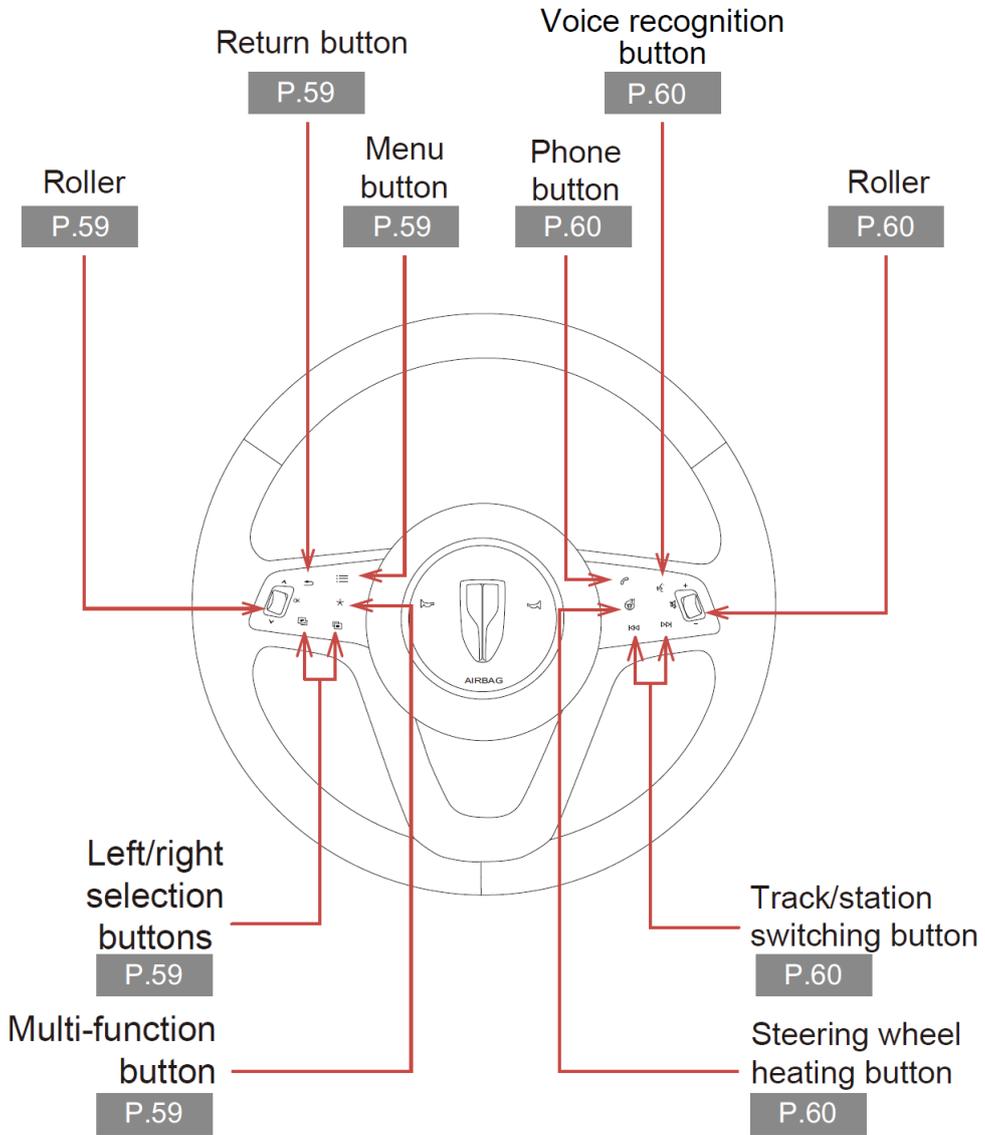


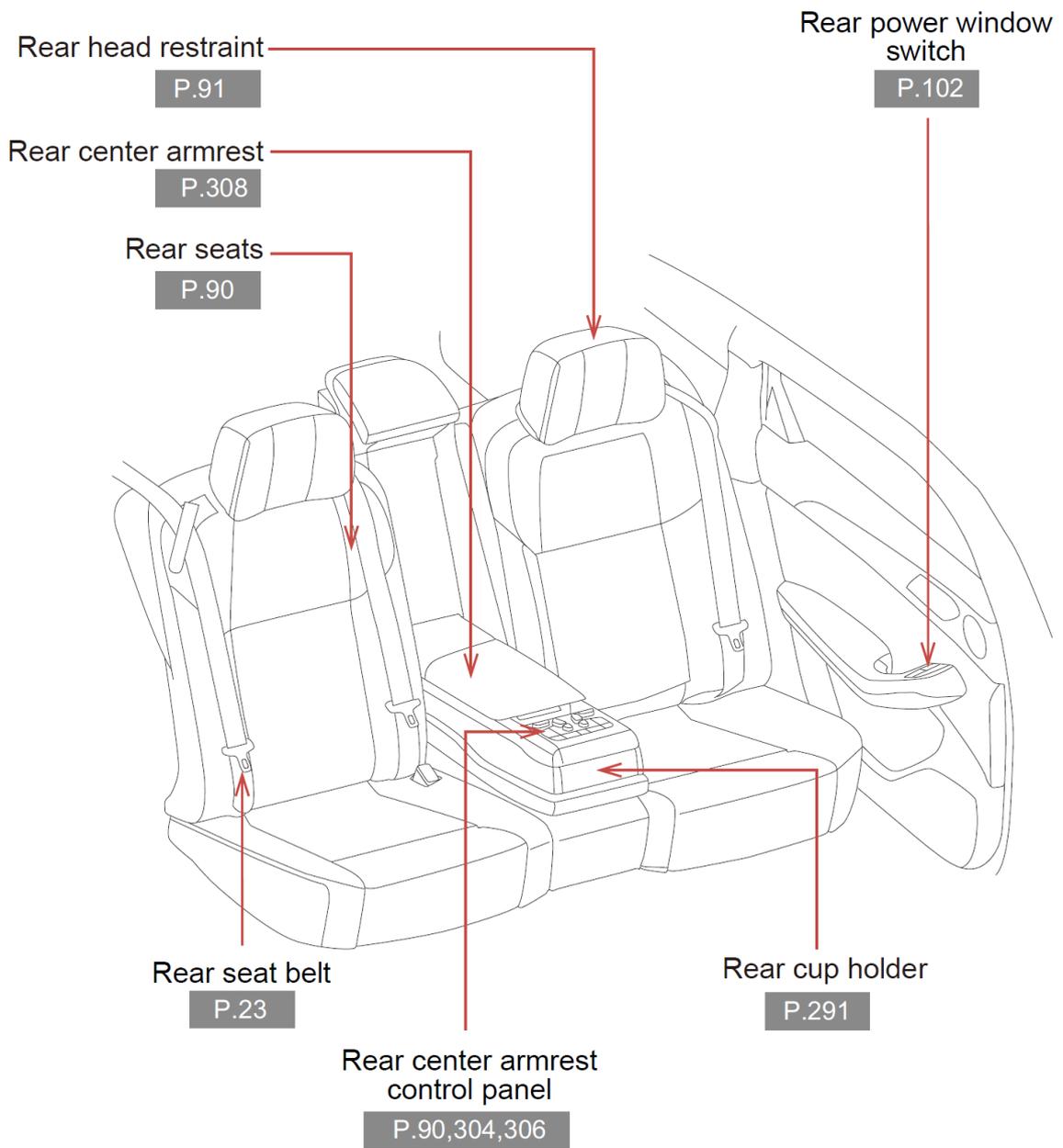


B



C





For your information

Owner's Manual

Only after getting a driving license can the owner drive this vehicle on road. This manual specifically targets at qualified drivers.

In this manual, "*" means that the configuration and function may vary by and are only available in certain countries, regions, and vehicle models. Please refer to the actual vehicle for specific equipment information.

The pictures in this manual are only schematic diagrams that help you understand the vehicle more intuitively. And they may be slightly different from your vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle when using.

All specifications provided in this manual are up-to-date as of the time the manual is delivered to print. However, due to FAW's constant efforts in re-modeling and improving, the equipments and performance of subsequent models may vary. Accordingly, contents of this manual will be updated at any time without notice. It's not suggested you compare the contents in other Manual versions with the equipments and performance of the vehicle you purchased, and demand additional equipment in light of differences between versions. If you are unclear about the purchased vehicle or the user's manual, please contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealers.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of the vehicle

The FAW authorized Hongqi dealers possesses advanced tools, equipments as well as genuine accessories required for providing maintenance and service for your vehicle. We suggest you use the qualified genuine accessories and spare parts.

FAW cannot accept any liability nor can it guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine FAW accessories and spare parts, neither for replacement nor installation involving such parts. In addition, damages or performance problems resulting from the use of non-genuine FAW spare parts or accessories may not be covered under warranty.

Do not use products which are not authorized by FAW to modify the vehicle, otherwise it will affect the vehicle's maneuverability, safety and durability, and may even violate local government regulations. Besides, any problems caused by the modification are not covered under warranty.

Read the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Connect the diagnostic instrument to the vehicle OBD port. When the ECU information is being read, you can read the vehicle VIN. You can obtain reading devices from market, which should meet ISO14229, ISO15765, ISO15031, ISO11898 standards.

Install the RF transmitter system

Installing a RF transmitter system onto a vehicle may affect electronic systems such as:

- Anti-lock Braking System
- Cruise control system
- Airbag System
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Please contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealers before you install the RF transmitter system.

Vehicle Scrapping

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in the vehicle contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners intact, it may cause personal injury or fire, etc.. Be sure to have the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by qualified enterprise or institutions before you scrap the vehicle, and FAW authorized Hongqi dealers are familiar with relevant regulations and can provide you with consulting services.

This manual introduces the Vehicle Models CA7205, CA7205G, CA7250HA6T, CA7306, CA7306G.



CAUTIONS

■ Precautions while driving

The driver always drive soberly and defensively with full attention.

- Driving under sober state: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol and/or drugs. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgement and reduce coordination, which could result in serious injury or even death.
- Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Pay attention to the moves of other vehicles and pedestrians at any time so as to make timely judgments and prevent accidents.
- Focus on driving: Always concentrate on driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting control buttons, making a phone call, or reading could cause car crash, resulting into serious injury or even death.

■ Precautions regarding children's safety

- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- Never allow children to have or use the key, otherwise they may be able to start the vehicle or operate the shift lever, causing a safety hazard.
- Never enable children to play with the door, the windows or other features of the vehicle which may cause injury.
- Make sure the temperature in the vehicle is favorable, because extreme temperatures inside can be fatal to children.

Reading this manual

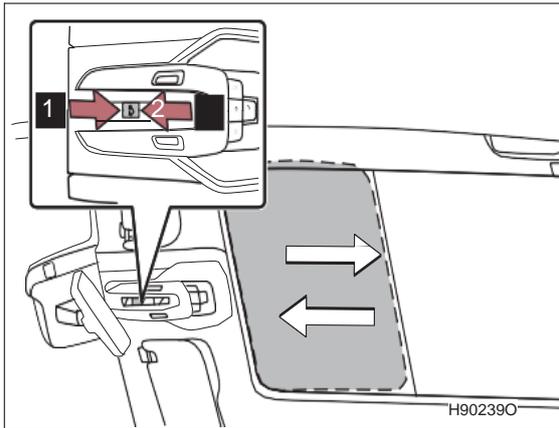
CAUTIONS

Explain warnings which, if not observed, may cause serious injury or even death.

NOTICES

Explain precautions which, if not observed, may cause damages or

STEP 1 Represents operation or operating steps following number sequence.



 Indicates actions (pushing, turning, pressing, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.

 Indicates results of operation(eg. Lid is open).



 Represents "Keep off", "Do not do this", "Please avoid this situation".

1-1. Safety Instructions

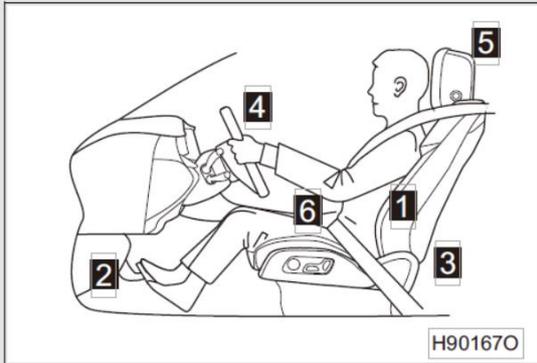
Safe Driving22
Seat belts23
Airbag29
Children safety information40
Children restraint system41
Install the children restraint system
.....44
Cautions on exhaust gas47

1-2. Immobilizer System

Engine immobilizer system48
Vehicle body immobilizer system 49

Adjust the seats, steering wheel and rear-view mirrors to the appropriate position before driving to ensure safety.

■ Correct driving posture



- 1 Sit upright and lean against the backrest.
- 2 Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required.
- 3 Adjust the backrest so that the controls are easily operable.
- 4 Adjust the tilt of the steering wheel so that the airbag is facing your chest.
- 5 Adjust and lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint flush with the top edge of the occupant's ears.
- 6 Wear the seat belt correctly.

■ Use the seat belts correctly

Before driving the vehicle, make sure all the occupants wear seat belts. Children should use appropriate child restraint system until they are grown to fit with the seat belts on the vehicle.

■ Adjusting the exterior mirrors

By properly adjusting the interior and exterior mirrors to ensure a good view of the rear situation.



CAUTIONS

■ Precautions while driving

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat during driving; otherwise, it may cause a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not put a cushion between your body and the backrest; otherwise, it may be unfavorable to maintain correct posture, reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint.
- Do not place any object under the front seats, or it may become jammed in the seat rails
- It is prone to fatigue during long-distance driving and proper rest is necessary.
If you feel tired or drowsy while driving, do not force yourself to continue driving but take a rest immediately.

■ Adjust the position of the seat

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other occupants are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts when adjusting the seats; otherwise, the finger may be jammed in the seat adjustment mechanism.

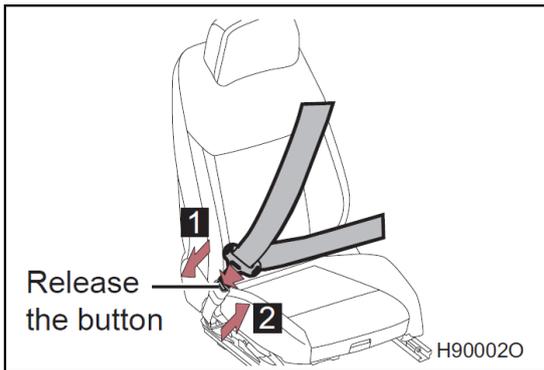
Make sure that all the occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

Correct use of the seat belts



- Extend the belt at the shoulder so that it crosses all over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the belt at the lap as low as possible cross the hips.
- Adjust the backrest position, sit upright and lean against the backrest.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

Fasten and release seat belts



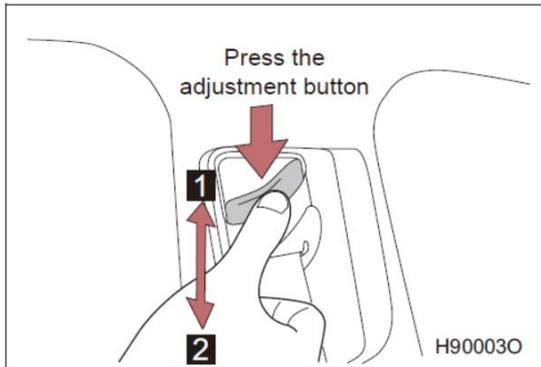
- 1** Fasten the belt
Push the latch plate into the buckle until a “click” sound is heard.
- 2** Release the belt
Press the release button.



NOTICES

If the driver or occupants do not wear the belt, the combination instrument will activate an alarm when driving at a certain speed.

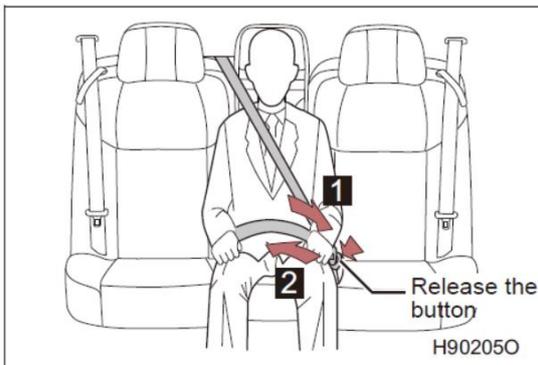
Adjust the seat belt height (front seats)



- 1 Move upward
- 2 Move downward

Press and hold the adjustment button, and move the height adjuster upward and downward as needed until you hear a “click”.

Rear central seat belt *



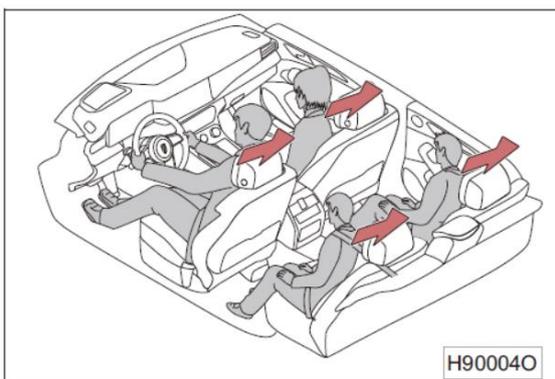
- 1 Fasten the belt

Push the latch plate into the buckle until a “click” sound is heard.

- 2 Release the belt

Press the release button.

Seat belt pretensioners (front and rear outer seats)



When serious frontal impact occurs to the vehicle, the pretensioner can be activated to tighten the belt and restrain the occupants quickly, and thus provides better protection for the occupants.

However, the pretensioners may not be activated in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.

■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop and/or on impact. It may also lock the belt if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, smooth motion will allow the belt to extend, so you can move with ease.

■ Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle are designed for persons of adult size.

- Children should use appropriate child restraint system until they are grown to fit with the seat belts on the vehicle.
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, they should also follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage for adults. (→ P. 23)

■ Replace the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

- If multiple collisions occur to the vehicle, the seat belt pretensioner is activated during the first collision, but will not be activated on the second and subsequent collisions.
- After the pretensioner has been activated by a collision, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to replace the belt in time.

■ Seat belt regulations

If there are seat belt regulations in your country or region, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for seat belt replacement or installation.

⚠ CAUTIONS

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of emergency braking, emergency steering or accidents, please observe the following notes. Otherwise it will lead to serious injury, even death.

■ **Wear a seat belt**

- Ensure that all passengers wear seat belts.
- Always wear seat belts correctly.
- Please do not tilt the seat excessively for comfort. Because only when the occupants sit upright and lean against the backrest, the seat belt offers maximum protection.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and stretch over your hip.

■ **Pregnant women**



- Follow doctors' orders and wear the seat belt in a proper way.
- Pregnant women should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hip in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. The belt should be kept from the bulge on her abdomen.
- If the seat belt is not correctly fastened, pregnant women and fetuses may be hurt severe or even dead at the time of emergency braking or collisions.

■ **Patients**

Follow doctors' orders and wear the seat belt in a proper way.

■ **When children are in the vehicle**

Do not let children play with the seat belts. If the seat belt is wrapped around the child's neck, it may cause suffocation or other serious injuries resulting in death.

If this happens and the buckle can not be released, cut the seat belt with scissors.

**CAUTIONS**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or an accident and avoid serious personal injury or even death.

■ **Correctly wear the seat belt**

- It is very dangerous for the driver to take a wrong posture or wear a seat belt incorrectly. The pretensioner and restraint system does not provide adequate protection due to incorrect position of the seatbelt, which may result in serious personal injury.
- Wearing a seat belt incorrectly is very dangerous. During the collision, an occupant not wearing a seat belt may collide with other people or objects in the vehicle and may even be thrown out of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or even death. In the same collision, it will be safer for passengers wearing a seatbelt.

■ **Do not wear the twisted seat belt**

Twisted seat belts are very dangerous. During the collision, the twisted seatbelt will not be able to fully utilize the entire width to absorb the impact force, which allows more force to be exerted on the bone under the seatbelt, and thus cause serious injury or even death.

■ **Do not share a seat belt among more than one occupant**

It is hazardous for more than one occupant (including children) to share a seat belt. Because the seat belts cannot properly disperse the impact force, the occupants may hit each other and cause serious injury or even death.

■ **Adjustable shoulder restraint device (front seats)**

Always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the shoulder. The seat belt should be kept away from the neck, but should not slip off the shoulder. Otherwise, it will reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt during an accident. In the event of emergency braking, emergency steering, or an accident, it may cause serious injury or death.

■ **Do not over-tilt the seat**

Please do not tilt the seat excessively for comfort. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and leaning against the backrest.

■ **Do not drive the vehicle with a damaged seat belt**

Using a damaged seat belt is very dangerous. An accident may result in damage to the seat belt. Damaged seat belts can not provide adequate protection during a collision. Before using the seat belt again after an accident, all seat belt systems must be thoroughly checked by the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

■ **Seat belt pretensioner**

In case of any collision, please immediately contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to check the seat belt pretensioner and airbag. As with the airbag, the seat belt pretensioner can only be used once and must be replaced after being deployed during collision. If they are not replaced, the risk of serious injury to the occupant will increase when a collision occurs again.



CAUTIONS

■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not clamp the seat belt, latch plate in the door, otherwise the belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belt system periodically. Check the seat belt parts for cuts, wearing, and looseness. Do not use a damaged seat belt and replace with a new one. Damaged seat belts cannot offer protection to the occupant, and thus may cause serious injury or death.
- Ensure that the latch plate and buckle are locked tight and the belt is not twisted.
If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.
- Replace the seat belts along with the seat assembly if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts yourself. Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for necessary handling

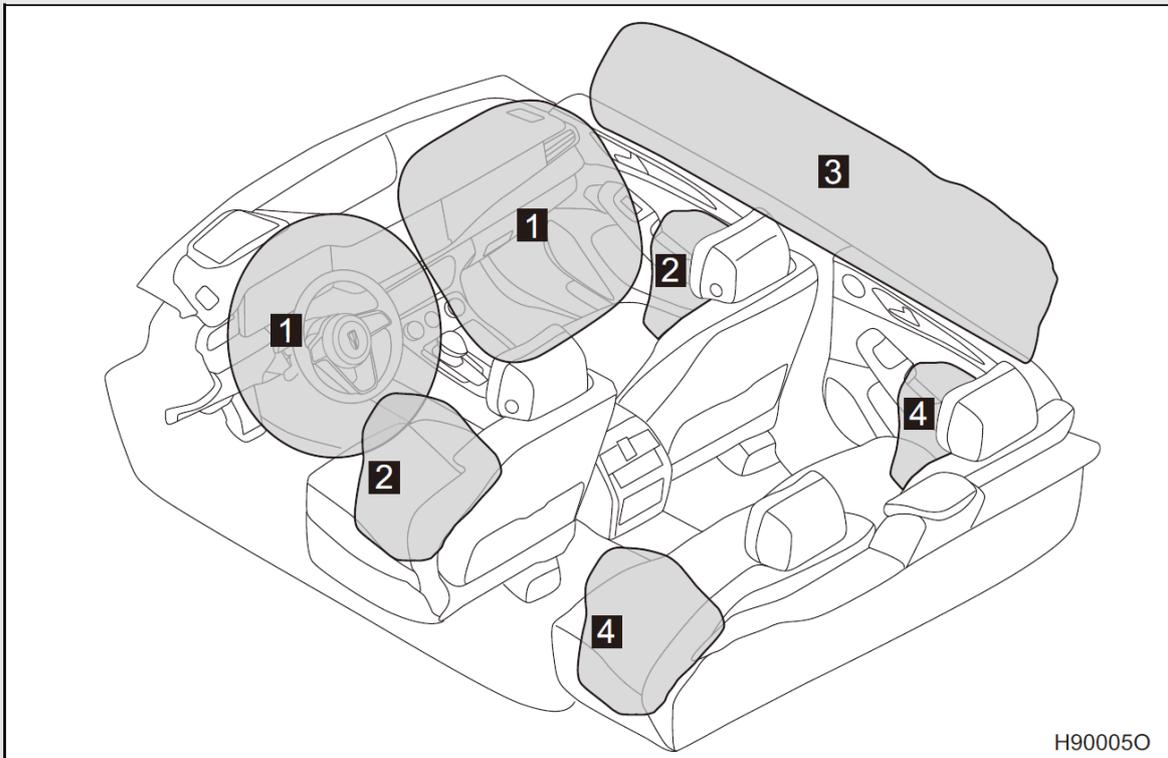


NOTICES

■ Keep the seat belts clean

A stained seat belt may be difficult to retract. Therefore, keep the seat belts clean. (→ P. 314)

The airbags are the passive safety protection devices to reduce or avoid injury to the occupants when the vehicle is subjected to severe impacts that may cause serious injury to the occupants. When the vehicle is under some serious impacts, the airbag is deployed. The vehicle is equipped with multiple airbags. The airbags are used in conjunction with seat belts to reduce the risk of serious injury or death to the occupants in the vehicle. (The shape of the deployed airbag is only for reference)



1 Driver airbag/Front passenger airbag

Help protect the heads and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact of interior components.

2 Driver seat airbag/Front passenger seat airbag

Help protect the torso of the front seat occupants.

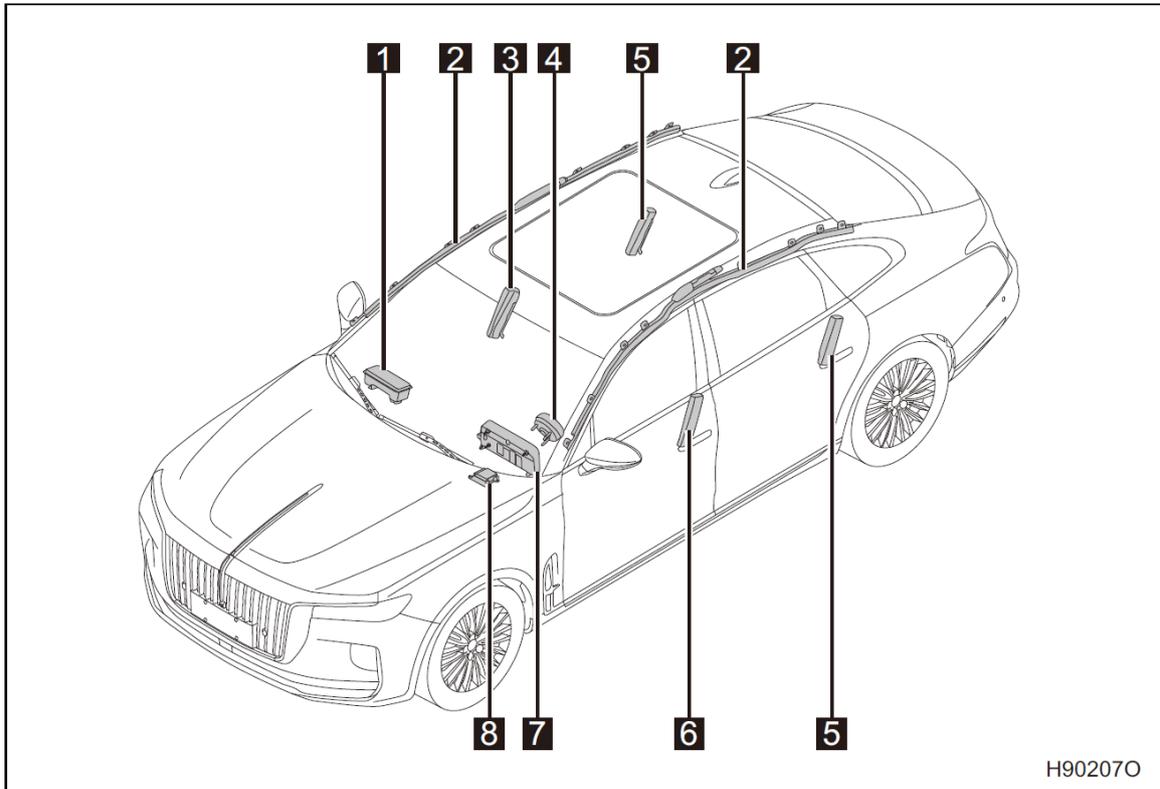
3 Curtain airbags

Help protect the heads of the driver, front passenger and occupants in the side rear seats.

4 Rear seat airbags*

Help protect the torso of the rear outer occupants.

Airbag system components



H902070

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1 Front passenger airbag | 2 Curtain airbags |
| 3 Front passenger seat airbag | 4 Driver airbag |
| 5 Rear seat airbags* | 6 Driver seat airbag |
| 7 Airbag malfunction warning lamp | 8 Airbag control unit |

The main airbag system components are shown above.

The airbag system triggers the airbag gas generator in the event of severe frontal or side impacts. The chemical reactions in the gas generator quickly fill the airbag with non-toxic gas to avoid injury caused by secondary collisions between occupants and interior components.

**CAUTIONS****■ Precautions for airbags**

Observe the following precautions regarding the airbags. Otherwise, it may result in serious injury or even death.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and may cause serious injury or even death if the driver is too close to the airbag.
- Since the high risk zone for the deploying driver airbag is the 0 - 100 mm segment of the deploying area. Place yourself 300 mm at least from your driver airbag. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 300 mm away, you can change your driving position in several ways:
 - Move your seat backwards as far as you can while still reaching each pedal with ease.
 - Slightly tilt the back of the seat. If you cannot see the road conditions clearly ahead with the backrest tilting backwards, a hard anti-skid seat cushion can be used to support your body or raise the seat.
 - Adjust the steering wheel and tilt it downward. Thus the airbag points toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

While adjusting the seat as recommended above, make sure that the pedals and steering wheel are under control of the driver, and the instrument panel controls within the driver's reach.

- The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the airbag system and the pretensioned belt are scrapped.

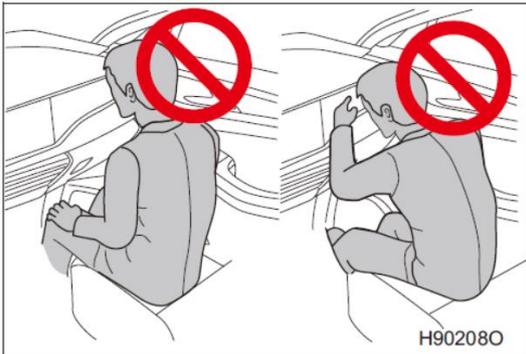
■ Always use a seat belt

When driving a vehicle equipped with airbags, the seat belts must be fastened. It is extremely dangerous to rely on the airbag alone in accident. Because the airbag alone cannot avoid serious injury. Therefore, always wear a seat belt during a ride.

CAUTIONS

■ **Precautions for airbags**

- The front passenger airbag deploys with considerable force, and may cause serious injury or even death if the front passenger is too close to the airbag. The front passenger seat shall keep away from airbag as far as possible and adjust the backrest for a sitting up straight posture.
- Infants with improper sitting posture and improper protection may be hurt seriously or even dead due to air bag deploying. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. FAW strongly recommends that all infants and children should be placed in the child seats, which should be fixed at the rear seat. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat.



- Please do not lean against the edge of the instrument panel, pillar A, roof side inner rail, doors and the seat; otherwise, the deploying of the front passenger airbag may cause strong impact on the head and result in serious personal injury or even death (especially noticeable for children.)



- Do not let children stand in the front of the front passenger airbag.
- Do not allow the children sit on the legs of front passenger or to place items on the legs.



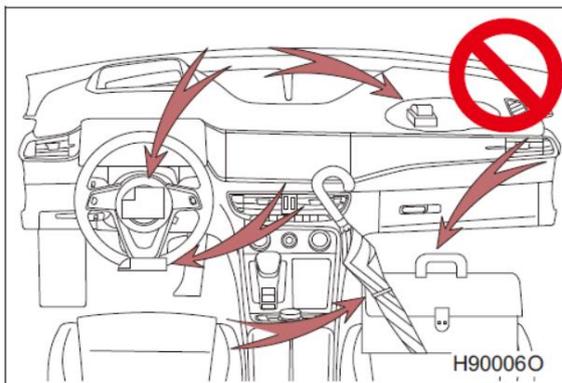
- Do not lean against the door, roof side inner rail or pillar A, B.

⚠ CAUTIONS

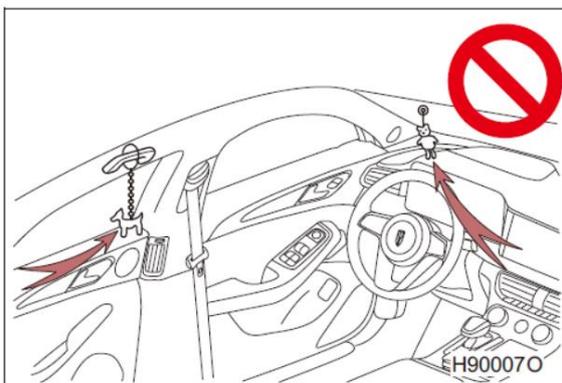
■ Precautions for airbags



- Do not kneel on passenger seat with your face towards the door or do not extend your head or hands from the window.



- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against the areas around the instrument panel or the driver airbag cover and so on. These items may fly out when the driver, front passenger airbags are deployed.



- Do not attach anything to the areas around the door, windshield glass, side door glass, pillar A, pillar B, pillar C, roof side inner rail or roof grip.
- Do not put hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. If the curtain airbags deploy, these items may fly out and cause serious injury or even death.



CAUTIONS

■ Precautions for airbags

- Do not use seat accessories which may block the deploying parts of the seat airbags as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the airbag components; otherwise, it may lead to airbag malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the airbags are deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If it becomes difficult to breathe after the airbags have deployed, please open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash any residue off your body as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the airbags are stored (the driver airbag cover and instrument panel) are damaged or cracked, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for replacement.

■ After the airbag deployed during a collision

The airbag system can only provide one-time accident protection. After the airbag deployed during a collision, it is necessary to visit the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to replace the airbag, airbag control unit and related components, and prohibited to continue to use the original part.

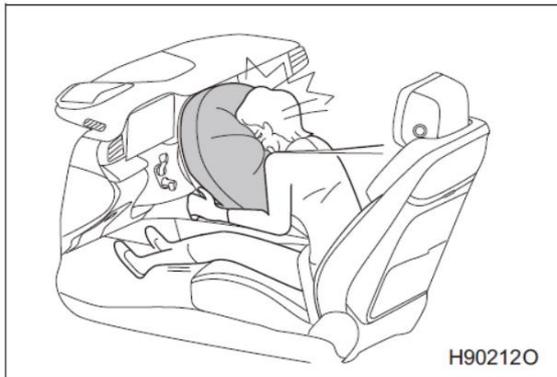
■ Modification and disposal of airbag system components

Do not scrap your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting a FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

Otherwise, the airbags may have a fault or deploy accidentally (inflate), which may result in serious hurt or even death.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the airbags.
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, seats or seat ornaments, pillar A, B and C or roof side inner rails.
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or both sides of the occupant compartment.
- Installation of snow plows, winches, etc. to the front grille.
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system.
- Installation of mobile two-way walkie talkie.

■ If the airbags deploy (inflate)



- The airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause serious injury or even death especially if the driver is too close to the airbag.
- Airbag deployment is accompanied by a ignition noise and smoke, but it will not cause a fire. The people who suffer from respiratory diseases such as asthma may breath with difficulty by inhaling the smog. In this case they shall exit the vehicle immediately. Open windows or doors to breath fresh air in if they cannot get out.

- When the airbag is deployed at an extremely high speed, it may cause slight abrasions, scalds, congestion, etc.
- Wash with clean water as soon as possible if the residue (gas etc.) splashed into eyes or attached to the skin while the airbag is deployed. People with sensitive skin may have an allergic reaction.
- The airbag module components (steering wheel, airbag cover and gas generator) as well as the instrument panel, the front seats, the pillars A, B, C and roof side inner rails, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.

■ Airbag triggering factors

- The triggering range of the airbag in various accident situations cannot be generalized, because the specific conditions vary a lot. For example, the properties of the objects colliding with the vehicle (hardness), the impact angle and the vehicle speed are important factors in airbag triggering.
- The decisive factor in the airbag triggering is the deceleration curve and pressure curve generated during a collision. The sensors fitted on the vehicle will detect the degree of the collision accident with the electronic control unit and thus trigger the airbags selectively and timely. If the vehicle deceleration value or pressure value generated and measured on collision is lower than the preset reference value within the control unit, the airbag will not be deployed even though the vehicle may have deformed to some degree in the accident.

■ Operating conditions (Driver airbag/front passenger airbag)

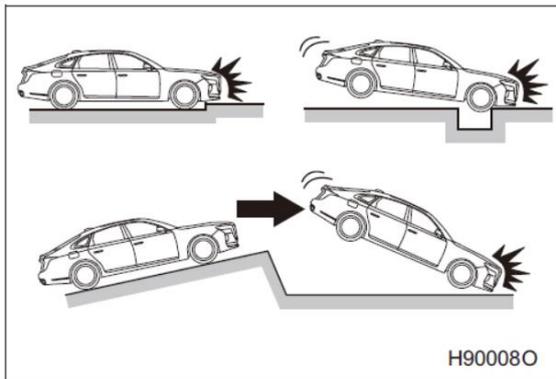
- With the impact exceeding the set critical value in the event of severe frontal collision accidents, the driver/front passenger airbags will be deployed.
However, the airbags may not be activated if the vehicle strikes a movable or deformable object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, or if the vehicle is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the front of the vehicle “underrides” or goes under the bottom of a truck, etc.).
- It is possible that in some collisions where the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the set threshold, the front airbags and the seat belt pretensioners may not be activated.

■ **Operating conditions (Seat airbags and curtain airbags)**

- With the impact exceeding the set critical value in the event of severe side collision, the side airbags and curtain airbags on the collision side will be deployed.
- Seat airbags and curtain airbags may be deployed together with the driver airbag/front passenger airbag in the event of some special accidents.

■ **Other conditions under which the airbags may deploy (except collision)**

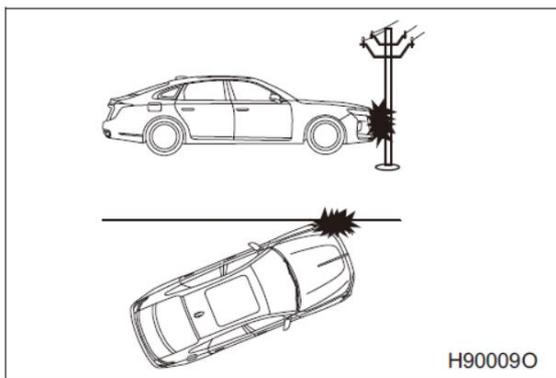
The driver airbag/front passenger airbag may also be deployed if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle.



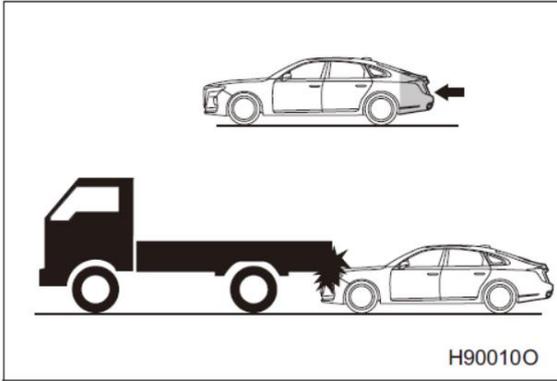
- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Fall into or run across a deep pit
- Landing hardily or vehicle falling

■ **Conditions where airbags may not deploy (driver airbag/front passenger airbag)**

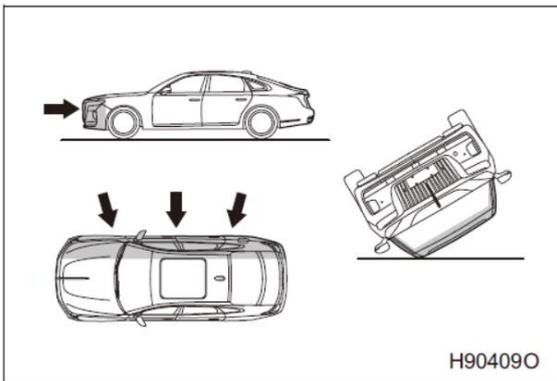
When the vehicle collides with a cylindrical object such as a pole or a tree, sustains a rear-end collision, a pileup into the underside of the truck tail or runs into the bottom of the truck, hits a wall or a highway barrier in a non-frontal way, or encounters with a side collision, a rollover, or a low speed frontal collision, the driver airbag / front passenger airbag may not be deployed. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the airbags may occur.



- Colliding with a cylindrical object such as a pole or a tree
- Hitting a wall or a highway barrier in a non-frontal way



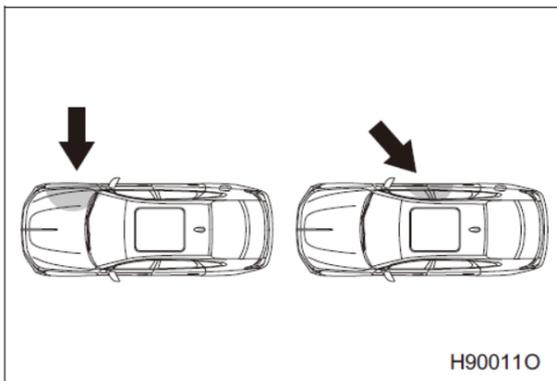
- Rear-end collision
- A pileup into the underside of the truck tail or runs into the bottom of the truck



- Low speed frontal collision
- Side collision
- Vehicle rollover

■ **Conditions where airbags may not deploy (seat airbags or curtain airbags)**

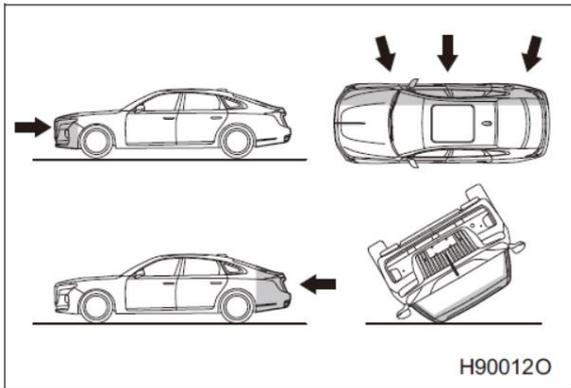
The seat airbag and curtain airbag may not be activated if the vehicle is subjected to a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment or a collision from the side at certain angles.



- Collision from the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at certain angles

1-1. Safety Instructions

The seat airbags and curtain airbags are not generally designed to deploy if the vehicle is involved in a low-speed frontal or side collision or a rear-end collision, or rollover.

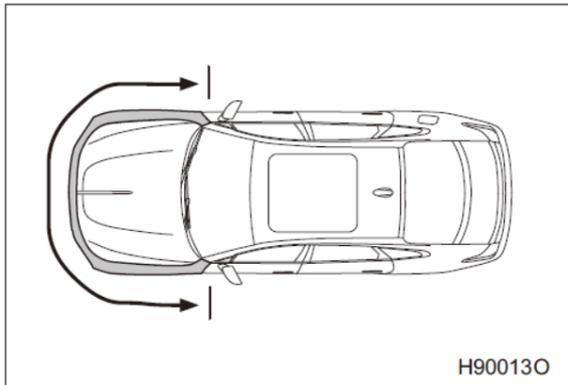


- Low speed frontal collision
- Low-speed side collision
- Rear-end collision
- Vehicle rollover

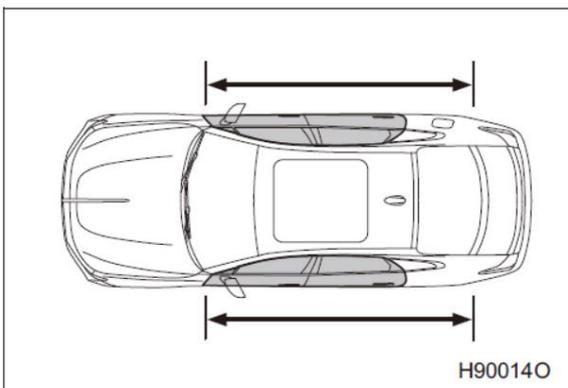
■ When should you contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle needs to be checked and/or repaired. Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible by then.

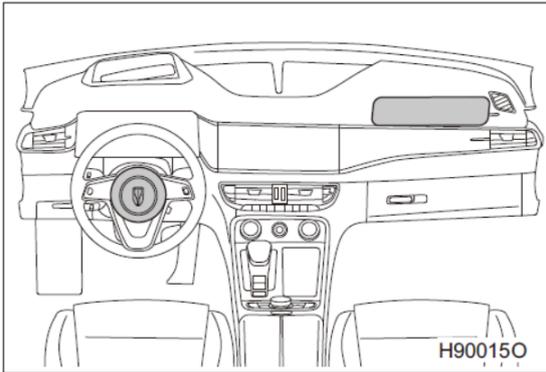
- Any of the airbags has been deployed.



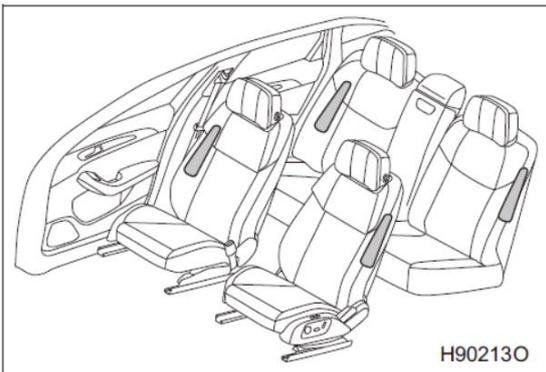
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the airbags to deploy.



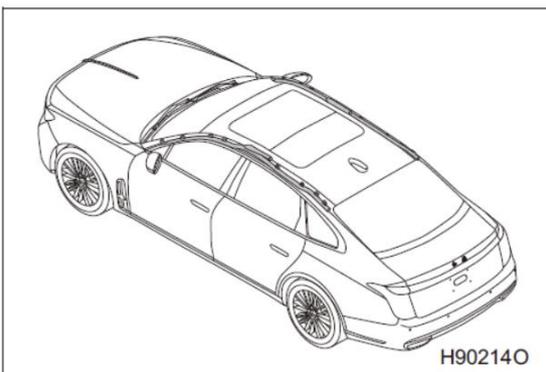
- A part of or around the door is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the seat airbags and curtain airbags to deploy.



- The dashboard near the driver airbag cover and the front passenger airbags is scratched, cracked, or damaged in other way.



- The surface of the seats with a airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged in other way.



- The curtain airbag part is scratched; pillars A, B and C guard plate, roof, grab handle, reading lamp, microphone and other components are cracked or damaged.

Observe the following precautions when there is a child in the car.

Children should use appropriate child restraint system until they are grown to fit with the seat belts on the vehicle.

- It is recommended to seat the child in the rear seats to prevent them from accidentally hitting the shift lever, wiper switches, etc.
- During driving, apply the rear-door child locks and window lock switch to prevent the child from opening the doors and accidentally operating power windows.
- Do not allow the child to operate equipments (such as power windows, hood, trunk lid, seats, etc.) that may trap the body.



CAUTIONS

■ **Do not allow the child to carry the vehicle key or play unattended in the car**

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Never allow the child to carry or use the key. The child can start the vehicle and operate the shift lever. The child may get injured when playing with the windows, sunroof or other equipments. In addition, too high or low temperatures can be fatal to the child.

■ **It is necessary to lock the vehicle and keep the key in a safe place that the child cannot reach**

It is very dangerous to leave the car without locking it or placing the keys in a place accessible to the child. The child entering the open trunk can be unintentionally locked in it. Especially in summer, the child may suffer from heat exhaustion, resulting in brain damage and even death. Whether you have a child or not, you must lock the doors and trunk.

FAW strongly recommends the use of child restraint system.

Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint system on a rear seat is much safer than installing one to the front passenger seat.

- Please select the appropriate child restraint system according to their weight and body size.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system. General installation instructions are provided in this manual.
- FAW recommends you to use the child restraint system complying with the GB 27887-2011 regulation.

Types of child restraint system

According to the GB 27887-2011 regulation, child restraint system can be divided into the following 5 groups:

Group 0 : < 10 kg

Group 0+: < 13 kg

Group I: 9 kg - 18 kg

Group II: 15 kg - 25 kg

Group III: 22 kg - 36 kg

Information on the adaptability of different sitting positions to child restraint system

Mass group	Seating position (or other positions)		
	Front passenger seat	Rear outer seats	Rear centre seat
Group 0 : < 10 kg	X	X	X
Group 0+: < 13 kg	X	X	X
Group I: 9 kg - 18 kg	X	X	X
Group II: 15 kg - 25 kg	X	X	X
Group III: 22 kg - 36 kg	X	X	X

The meaning of the letters in the above table:

X: Not suitable for the use of child restraint system of this mass group.

Information on the adaptability of different ISOFIX positions to ISOFIX child restraint system

Mass group	Size class	Fixture module	ISOFIX position on the vehicle	
			Rear left seat	Rear right seat
Portable baby crib	F	ISO/L1	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X
Group 0 : < 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	IUF	IUF
Group 0+: < 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	IUF	IUF
	D	ISO/R2	IUF	IUF
	C	ISO/R3	IUF	IUF
Group I: 9 kg - 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	IUF	IUF
	C	ISO/R3	IUF	IUF
	B	ISO/F2	IUF	IUF
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF	IUF
	A	ISO/F3	IUF	IUF

The meaning of the letters in the above table:

IUF: Suitable for forward-facing child restraint system of universal category approved for this mass group.

X: The ISOFIX position is not suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or this size class.

■ Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

- The child should use appropriate child restraint systems unless they are grown to fit in the seat belts.
- If the child is too large to use the child restraint system, the child should be seated in the rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt.



CAUTIONS

■ Manufacturer's instructions for child restraint system

Pay attention to the manufacturer's instructions when selecting, installing and using the child restraint system, otherwise the ideal protection effect may not be obtained.

■ When children are in the vehicle

Do not let children play with the seat belts. If the seat belt is wrapped around the child's neck, it may cause suffocation or other serious injuries even death.

If this happens and the buckle can not be released, cut the seat belt with scissors.

■ When the child restraint system is not in use

- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle and store it securely in the trunk. If the head restraint is removed when installing the child restraint system, be sure to install it before driving. This will prevent occupants from being injured in the event of an emergency brake or accident.

■ Use the child restraint system

Using a child restraint system not suitable for your car may not offer proper protection to the infant or child. This may result in serious injury or death (in the event of emergency braking or an accident).

■ Precautions for child restraint system

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and emergency braking, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on their weight and size. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child protector. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- We strongly recommend you to select the appropriate child restraint system according to the child's size and install it in the rear seat. It is strictly forbidden to install a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.
- Vehicle with seat airbags and curtain airbags: Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, roof side rails where the seat airbags or curtain airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the seat airbags and curtain airbags deploy, and the impact could cause serious injury or even death to the child.
- It is necessary to follow the manufacturer's instructions and always ensure that the child restraint system is securely fastened.

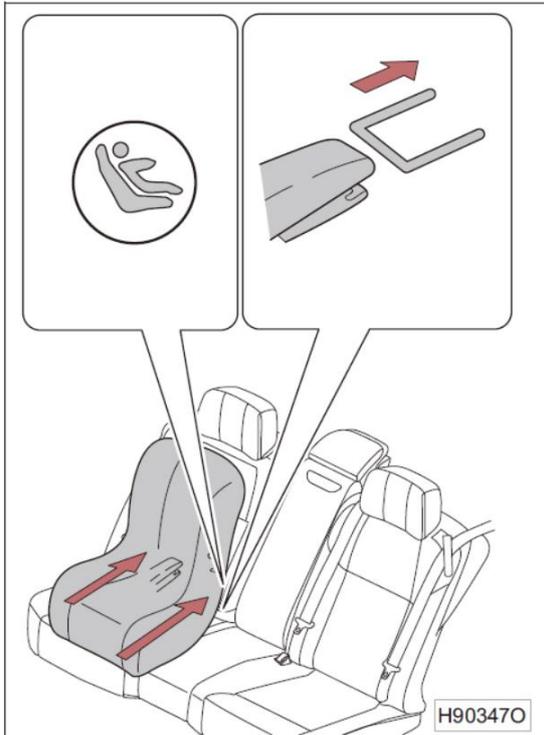
The unsecured child restraint system is very dangerous. In the event of an emergency brake or collision, the child restraint system will move, causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants.

1-1. Safety Instructions

Install the children restraint system

Follow the instruction manual provided by the manufacturer. Use ISOFIX rigid anchor to secure the child restraint system to the seat. Attach the top tether strap when installing the child restraint system with top tether strap.

Install with ISOFIX rigid anchor



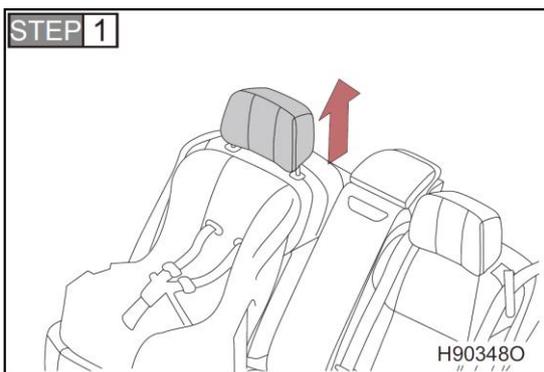
STEP 1 Slightly increase the gap between the seat cushion and the backrest.

STEP 2 Fit the child seat lock striker to the ISOFIX rigid anchor to ensure that the lock striker is locked.

If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system, which cannot be installed correctly, install the child restraint system after raising the head restraint.

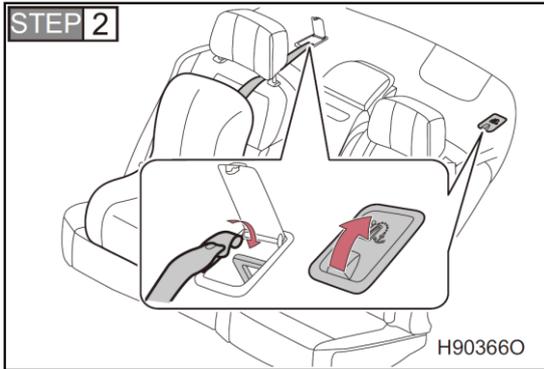
If the child restraint system is equipped with a top tether strap, the strap should be secured to the anchor support.

The child restraint system with top tether strap



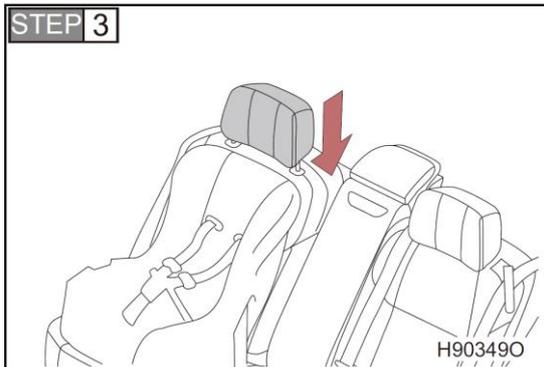
Use ISOFIX rigid anchor to secure the child restraint system.

If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system, which cannot be installed correctly, install the child restraint system after raising the head restraint.



Fasten the hook firmly to the anchor support and fasten the top tether strap.

Make sure that the top tether strap is firmly secured.



Restore the headrest to the correct position.

CAUTIONS

■ When installing the child restraint system

Please observe the following precautions, otherwise it may cause serious injury or death.

- Ensure that the top tether strap is securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Do not tie the top tether strap to anything other than the anchor bracket.
- Push and pull the child restraint system from side to side and forward to be sure it is secure.
- After installing children restrain system, do not adjust the seat. If the seat is adjusted, the safety of the child restraint system should be reconfirmed.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

■ Correctly fasten a child restraint system to the anchor device

When using the lower anchor devices, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint system. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause serious injury or even death to the child or other passengers in the event of a emergency braking or an accident.



CAUTIONS

■ **When installing the child restraint system**

- Please observe installation manual attached to the child restraint system to fix child restraint system in right position. If child restraint device is not fixed in right position, child or other passengers may be hurt seriously or even dead at the time of emergency brake or an accident.



- There are labels on the both sides of the sun visor on the front passenger side, reminding you not to place a rear-facing child restraint system on the seats with airbag. Details of the labels are shown in the figure.

Exhaust gas contains substances harmful to human.



CAUTIONS

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO) that is colorless and odorless.

Observe the following precautions. Otherwise, the exhaust gas can flow into the vehicle and cause dizziness resulting in accidents or serious harm even death to human.

■ Important for driving

- Keep the trunk lid closed.
- If the exhaust gas can still be smelled in the vehicle even with a closed trunk lid, open the windows and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible for inspection.

■ When parking the vehicle

- If the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated or a closed place (e.g garage), be sure to turn off the engine.
- Do not allow a long running of the engine.
If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust gas does not enter the vehicle.
- Do not leave the engine running in a snow pack where it is snowing. If snow accumulates around the vehicle while the engine is running, the accumulated exhaust gas may enter the vehicle.

■ Exhaust pipe

The exhaust system should be checked regularly. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, joint damage or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle checked and repaired by the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

1-2. Immobilizer System

Engine immobilizer system

In order to prevent the vehicle from being stolen, the vehicle is equipped with smart key, which has a built-in password chip and Bluetooth key, which should be authorized to connect. If the key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer, the key cannot start the engine. Different vehicles register different information in the keys.

Never leave the keys in the vehicle when leaving the vehicle.

This system helps to prevent vehicle thefts, but it does not prevent all thefts or guarantee the absolute safety of the vehicle.

Carrying the registered key, press the engine “START STOP” switch to release the engine immobilizer system.

-
- Conditions that may cause system malfunctions
 - Strongly impacted keys
 - Intrusion of water into keys
 - Place the key on the hot area, such as the instrument panel exposed to the sun
 - Use magnetic key chain
 - Wash the smart key using ultrasonic cleaner
 - If the key is close to or against a key (with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle
 - If the engine cannot be started with the correct method, the engine immobilizer system may have broken down. Please contact FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for check.

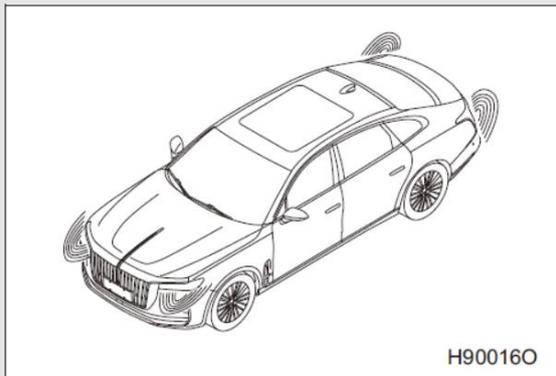


NOTICES

■ **Ensure normal operation of the system**

Do not retrofit or remove the engine immobilizer system. If it is refitted or removed without permission, normal operation of the system can not be ensured.

The vehicle body immobilizer system mainly monitors the states of the four doors, engine hood and trunk lid. The system sounds the alarm and flashes the lights when a break in is detected.



Operation of vehicle body immobilizer system.

Close doors, trunk lid and engine hood and lock all doors after exiting the vehicle.

Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Perform any of the following operations:

- Unlock the doors or trunk by passive entry function or wireless control function, Bluetooth or Hongqi Smart Connect APP.
- Turn on the engine switch.

■ **Items to check before locking the vehicle**

To prevent unexpected triggering of the vehicle theft alarm, make sure nobody, valuables and any other private property is in the vehicle and windows and sunroof are closed before the vehicle is locked.

■ **When the battery is disconnected**

Be sure to deactivate the alarm system.

If the battery is disconnected before the alarm is deactivated, the alarm may be triggered after reconnecting the battery.



NOTICES

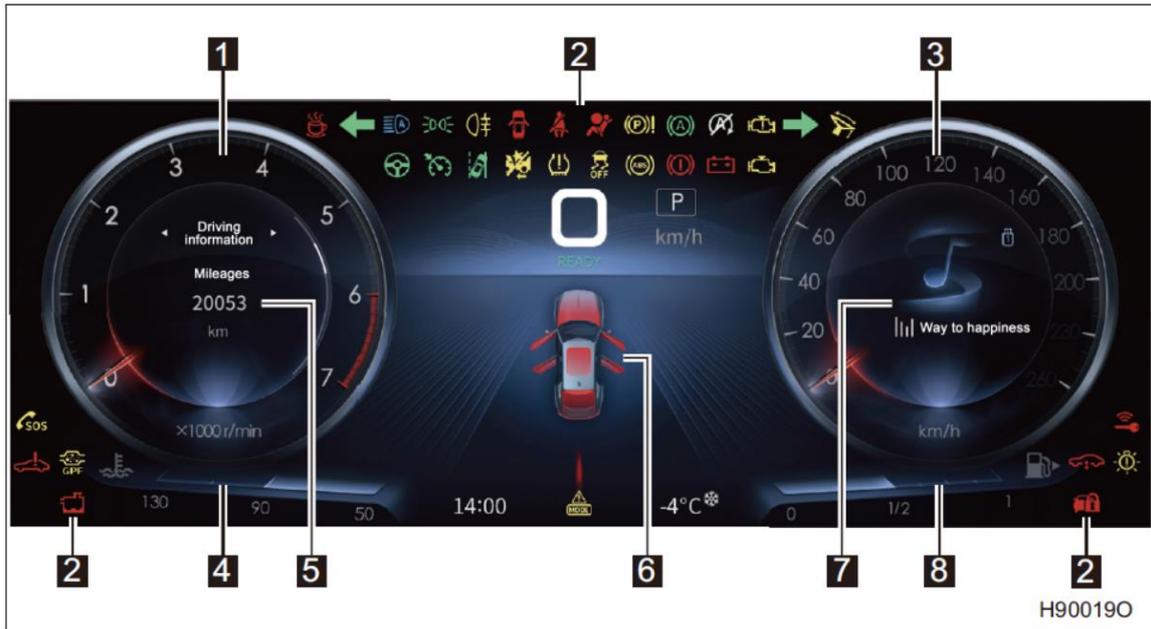
■ **Ensure normal operation of the system**

Do not retrofit or remove the engine immobilizer system. If it is refitted or removed without permission, normal operation of the system can not be ensured.

2. Instrument Cluster

Combination instrument.....	52
Warning light	54
Indicator lamp	56
Combination instrument multifunction display	58
Head-up display*	67

Combination instrument



Due to the different vehicle configurations, the contents displayed also vary.

1 Engine tachometer

Displays the revolutions per minute of the engine.

2 Tip/alarm icons display area

Display the vehicle indicator lights, warning lights and other information.

3 Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed.

4 Engine coolant temperature display area

Display the engine coolant temperature information.

5 Driving information display area

Display the driving information, tire pressure monitoring, vehicle height, alarm query, energy flow, head-up display and backlight brightness settings, etc.

6 General information display area

Display the gear, vehicle speed, navigation information, driving assistance information, date, and various alarm/reminder information, etc.

7 Media information display area

Display music, radio, news, video, telephone information, etc. in the audio system.

8 Fuel gauge display area

Display the remaining fuel.

■ **Combination instrument comes on when**

The engine switch is turned to "IG-ON" mode.



CAUTIONS

- Prevent damage to the engine and its components
 - The engine revolution is nearly the maximum if the tachometer is in the red zone, please have the speed controlled.
 - The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone. In this case, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely.
- When adjusting the brightness

For safety, please adjust the backlight brightness after parking and do not distract or hinder safe driving because of using this function. Ignoring road and traffic conditions can lead to an accident.

2. Instrument Cluster

Warning lights

The warning lights indicate the current status of the various vehicle systems or the current possible faults in the corresponding system. (→ P. 357)



Engine control system malfunction warning light



Engine exhaust gas monitoring system malfunction warning light



12V battery charging malfunction warning light



Low fuel volume warning light



Airbag system malfunction warning light



Abnormal oil pressure warning light



Transmission system/electronic shift system malfunction warning light



Seat belt reminder light



PEPS malfunction warning light



Engine immobilizer system malfunction warning light



Electronic wiper system malfunction warning light



Low key battery warning light



Low washer fluid level warning light



Bulb malfunction warning light



Low brake fluid level/system malfunction warning light



Coolant high temperature warning light



EPS system malfunction warning light



Over-worn brake liner alarm lamp



ABS system malfunction warning light



EPS system major malfunction warning light



Hybrid system malfunction warning light



AUTO HOLD system malfunction warning light



HBB system malfunction warning light



Constant speed cruise system malfunction warning light



EPB system malfunction warning light



Abnormal tyre pressure/system malfunction warning light

	Automatic driving light/automatic wiper function malfunction warning light		Headlight leveling system malfunction warning light
	Drive select system malfunction warning light		Driver assistance system malfunction warning light
	Air suspension system malfunction warning light		Air suspension system major malfunction warning light
	SOS malfunction warning light		Power train mounting malfunction warning light
	Low coolant level warning light		Super capacitor malfunction warning light
	GPF cleaning warning light		GPF malfunction warning light
	APA system malfunction warning light		Wireless charging system malfunction warning light
	TripREC malfunction warning light		TripREC Micro SD card malfunction warning light
	PM2.5 malfunction warning light		Idle start-stop system malfunction warning light

NOTE:

There may be a malfunction in a system if the corresponding light does not turn on, or if the lights do not turn off. Contact FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for vehicle check.

Indicators inform the current status of the vehicle's various systems.



Left turn indicator lamp



Right turn indicator lamp



High beam ON indicator lamp



Position light ON indicator lamp



"READY" indicator lamp



Rear fog light ON indicator lamp



ESC system ON indicator lamp



ESC system OFF indicator lamp



Idle start-stop system ON indicator lamp



Idle start-stop system limited indicator lamp



Idle start-stop system OFF indicator lamp



Open door indicator lamp



ADB system working indicator lamp



ADB system ON indicator lamp



CCS system ON indicator lamp



CCS system work indicator lamp



Maintenance reminder indicator lamp



TSR system intelligent speed limit-traffic identification indicator lamp



EPB working indicator lamp



AUTO HOLD working indicator lamp



FCW system OFF indicator lamp



AEB system OFF indicator lamp



LDW/LKA system ON indicator lamp



LDW/LKA system work indicator lamp



DSM system warning indicator lamp(minor abnormality)

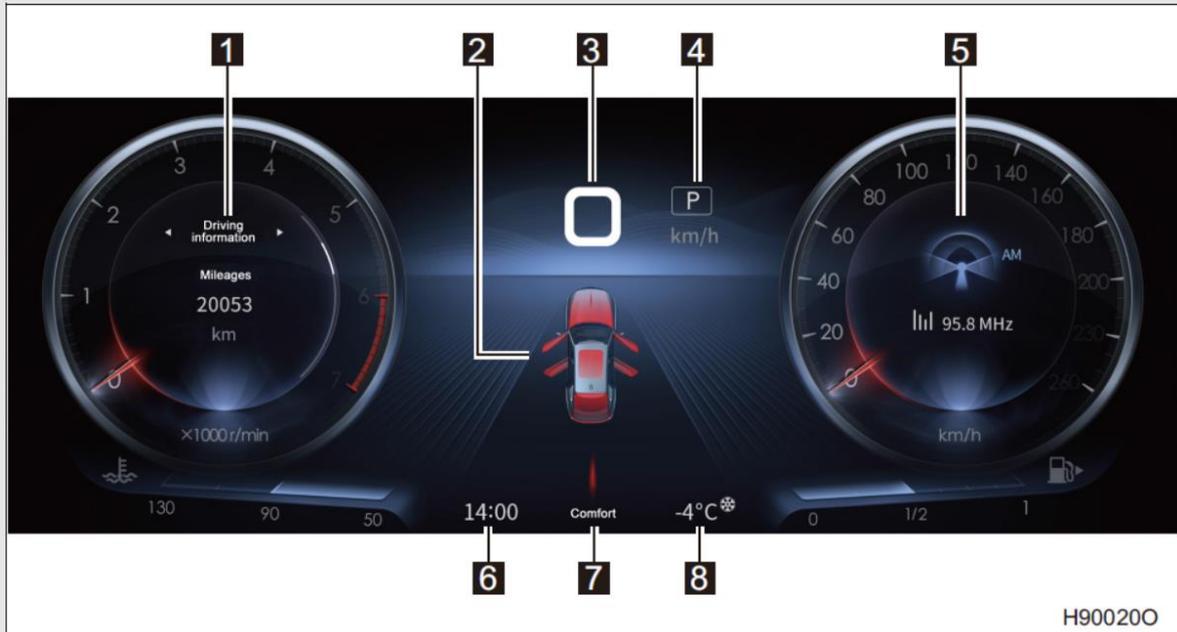


DSM system warning indicator lamp(major abnormality)

	ACC system ON indicator lamp		ACC system work indicator lamp
	SACC system steering assist ON indicator lamp		SACC system steering assist work indicator lamp
	Key recognizing failed indicator lamp		Ambient temperature indicator lamp
	Driving mode failed to switch indicator light		

Combination instrument multifunction display

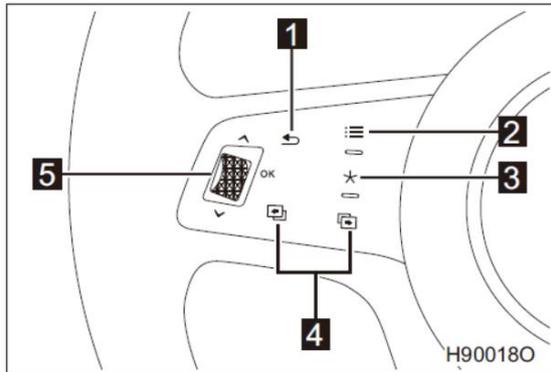
The driver can view various driving-related information and audio navigation information through the driving information display area, media information display area and comprehensive information display area in the combination instrument.



- 1** Driving information display area
- 2** General information display area
- 3** Vehicle speed display area
Displays the current vehicle speed.
- 4** Gears display area
Displays the current gear position.
- 5** Media information display area
- 6** Time display area
Displays the time information.
- 7** Driving mode display area
Displays the current driving mode information.
- 8** Ambient information display area
Displays the ambient temperature and PM2.5 value outside the car.

Keys on the steering wheel

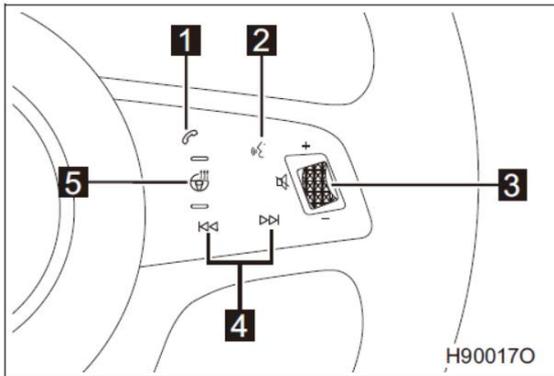
■ Left keys on the steering wheel



- 1** Return key
- 2** Menu key
- 3** Multi-function key
- 4** Left/right selection keys
- 5** Roller

No.	Function
1	Press: return to the previous interface
2	Press: enter/exit the head-up display and backlight brightness setting interface Press and hold: press and hold for more than 10s to restart the audio system
3	Press: to switch multimedia audio source or take a TripREC capture Press and hold: to make an emergency video recording on the TripREC The multi-function keys can be set in the system settings of the audio system. (→ P. 232)
4	Press: to switch among the driving information, tire pressure monitoring, vehicle height, alarm query, energy flow, etc.
5	Scroll: to switch up and down to select items Press: to confirm the selection

■ Right keys on the steering wheel



- 1 Phone key
- 2 Voice recognition key
- 3 Roller
- 4 Track/station switching key
- 5 Steering wheel heating key *

No.	Function
1	Press: to answer the current call in case of incoming call to disconnect the current call in case of calling/making a call to display the last call information in case of no incoming call, and press it again to dial out Press and hold: to disconnect the current call in case of incoming call to automatically dial the last call number in case of no incoming call
2	Press: trigger / exit the voice recognition
3	Scroll: increase/decrease the volume, and if it is muted, it will be unmuted Press: to mute / unmute
4	Press: previous track (station) / next track (station) Press and hold: fast forward/rewind the current audio file playback progress
5	Press: to turn on/off the steering wheel heating function

⚠ CAUTIONS

■ **When driving**
 Be extremely careful when operating the steering wheel keys to prevent accidents.

Driving information display area

By using the left keys of the steering wheel, you can operate the functions such as driving information, tire pressure monitoring, vehicle height, alarm query, energy flow, head-up display and backlight brightness setting.



By using the left and right keys on the steering wheel, you can switch between the driving information, tire pressure monitoring, vehicle height, alarm query, energy flow. And short press the Menu key on the steering wheel to enter the head-up display and backlight brightness settings interface.

■ Driving information

By using the roller on the steering wheel wheel, you can switch between total mileage, distance to empty, average fuel consumption / mileage / running time after starting, and the average fuel consumption / mileage / running time, and instantaneous fuel consumption after resetting.

● Mileages



Displays the total mileages.

● Distance to empty



Display the distance to empty of the vehicle under the current working condition.

- Average fuel consumption / mileage / running time after starting



Display the average fuel consumption / mileage / running time in this driving cycle.

- Average fuel consumption / mileage / running time after resetting



Display the average fuel consumption / mileage / running time since from the last resetting.

Pressing and holding the roller on the steering wheel allows you to reset the average fuel consumption / mileage / running time.

Note: average fuel consumption / mileage / running time after resetting: the average fuel consumption / mileage / running time since from the last resetting.

- Instantaneous fuel consumption



Display the instantaneous fuel consumption of the vehicle under the current working condition.

■ Tire pressure information



When the tire pressure of one or several tires is abnormal, the corresponding tire pressure value is displayed in yellow; the tire pressure value of other normal tires is displayed in green.

When one or several tire pressure sensors fail, the multi-function display area in the combined instrument displays "---", and the values of other normal tires are displayed normally.

■ Vehicle height *



Displays the current vehicle height.

■ Alarm query

The alarm information will appear in the form of a pop-up window. You can also view all current vehicle alarm information through the alarm query interface.



You can switch the current alarm information up and down through the roller on the steering wheel.

■ Energy flow*



Display the current working status of the vehicle's 48V system.

■ Head-up display and backlight brightness setting



Short press the steering wheel menu button to enter the head-up display and backlight brightness setting interface.

You can set the head-up display (on/off, height, brightness, angle) and backlight brightness.

Media information display area

By using the keys and multi-function key on the right side of the steering wheel, you can operate the functions such as radio, music, news and other multimedia information and telephone.

■ Multimedia information



By using the multi-function key on the steering wheel, you can switch among the radio, music, news, etc.; short press the track/station switching key to switch tracks/stations, and long press to fast forward/rewind the current playing content.

■ Telephone

When connecting to Bluetooth, the call information can be displayed in the multimedia information display area.

● Making a call



Short press the phone key on the steering wheel to display the last call number, short press again to dial the number; long press the phone key to directly dial the last call number.

● Answering the incoming call



When there is an incoming call, short press the phone key on the steering wheel to answer the call.

● Ending the incoming call



When there is an incoming call, long press the phone key on the steering wheel to end the call; short press the phone key to end the call during a call.

Comprehensive information display area

The comprehensive information display area can make overlapping display of navigation information, driving assistance information, and alarm/reminder information.

■ Navigation information



When the on-board navigation application is turned on, the navigation status display area displays the current navigation information.

■ Alarm/reminder information



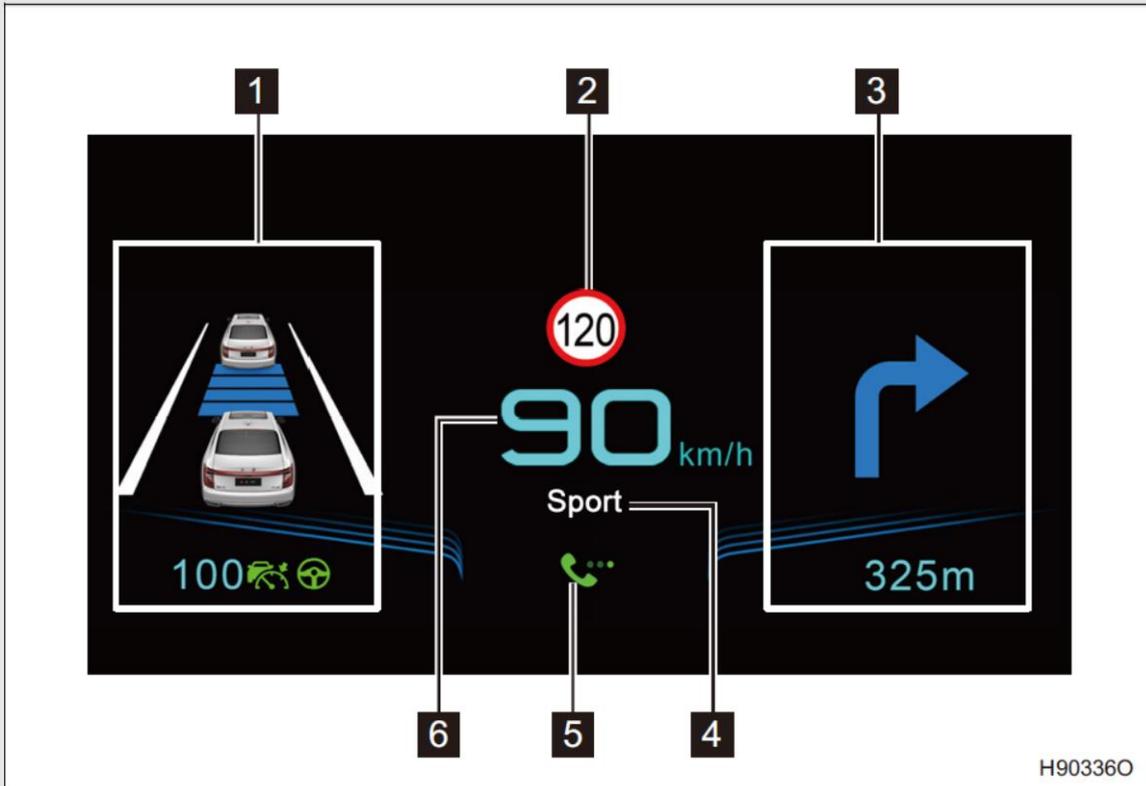
The alarm/reminder information will appear in the form of a pop-up window. You can also view all current vehicle alarm information through the alarm query interface.

■ Driver assistance information



When the driving assistance system is turned on, the multi-function display area displays the driving assistance information. In this interface, you can query the status and alarms of the driving assistance system.

The head-up display is linked with the instrument and audio system, by which the driving assistance and navigation information are projected on the front windshield glass at the position directly facing the driver.



1 Driver assistance system display area

Display the information such as cruise, frontal collision warning, autonomous emergency braking and lane keeping assist system.

2 Speed limit alarm/gears display area

Display the current road speed limit or gear information.

3 Navigation system display area

Display the information on the next intersection.

4 Driving mode display area

Displays the current driving mode information.

5 Phone display area

Display the call reminder symbol.

6 Vehicle speed display area

Displays the current speed.

Using head-up display

■ Head-up display setting

The on/off, virtual image height, brightness and angle of the head-up display can be set in the head-up display and backlight brightness setting interface in the combination instrument. (→ P. 64)

The on/off and the displayed content of the head-up display can be set in the setting interface of the audio system. (→ P. 229)



CAUTIONS

■ Before using head-up display

The driver always drive soberly and defensively with full attention.

- Check that the position and brightness of the virtual image displayed on the head-up display will not hinder the safe driving. Incorrectly adjusting the position or brightness of the virtual image may obstruct the driver's vision and cause an accident, resulting in serious injury or even death.

■ When driving

- During driving, do not keep looking at the head-up display, otherwise you may fail to see the pedestrians and objects on the road ahead.



NOTICES

■ Prevent damage to the components

- Do not place any liquid near the head-up display projector. If the projector gets wet, it may cause electrical failure.
- Do not place any objects or stickers near the head-up display projector. Otherwise, the HUD display may be interrupted.
- Do not touch the head-up display projector or throw sharp-edged objects at the projector. Otherwise, it may cause mechanical failure.

3-1. Information on the key
 Key 70

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the door and trunk lid
 Doors..... 73
 Trunk lid..... 77
 Passive entry & start system 82

3-3. Adjusting the seats
 Front seats 87
 Rear seats 90
 Head restraints 91
 Seat memory* 93

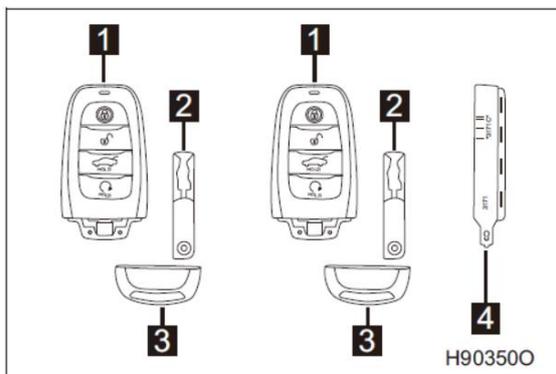
3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and rear-view mirrors
 Steering wheel..... 95
 Interior anti-glare rear-view mirror 97
 Exterior rear-view mirror 99

3-5. Opening and closing the windows
 Power windows 102
 Panoramic sunroof 105

Key

Key

This car comes with the following keys.



1 Smart key

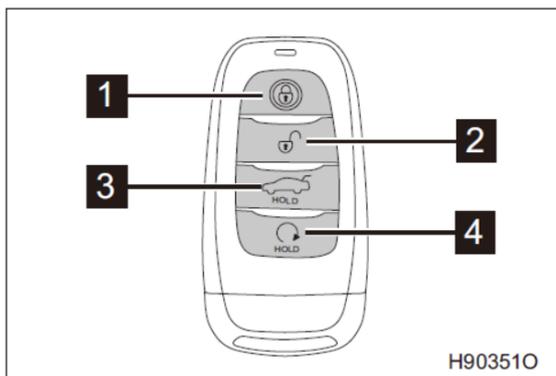
- Operating passive entry & start system(→ P. 82)
- Operating the wireless remote control function

2 Mechanical key

3 Key end cover

4 Key number plate

Wireless remote control



1 Lock the doors by pressing the button, while lock all the windows and sunroof by pressing and holding the button*1

2 Unlock the doors by pressing the button, while open all the windows and sunroof by pressing and holding the button*1

3 Press and hold the button to unlock and open the trunk lid

4 Press and hold to trigger the car search function

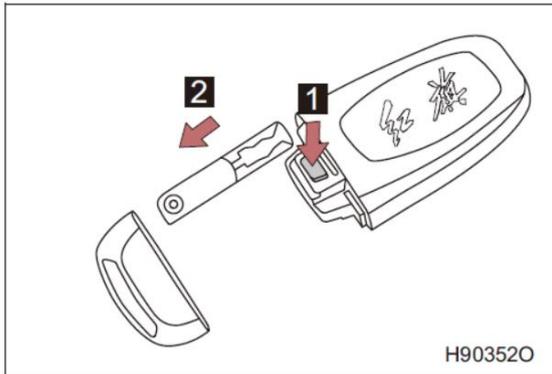
With the vehicle locked, press and hold the car search button to trigger the car search function, and the turn signal flashes for 3 times and the horn will also sound 3 times.

*1: Press and hold the button to trigger the automatic raising/lowering of the window, then release it; press the button again, the window and sunroof will stop moving.

Bluetooth key*

The mobile phone Bluetooth key can be bound through the Hongqi Smart Connect APP. As long as you carry and activate the Bluetooth key, you can operate the passive entry & start system. (→ P. 264)

Using the mechanical key



1 Press the unlock button and disengage the key end cover

2 Take out the mechanical key

Put the mechanical key in the smart key after using it. Carry the mechanical key together with the smart key. If the smart key battery runs out and does not work properly, use the mechanical key. (→ P. 371)

■ When needing parking service

Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the smart key only.

■ Key number plate

Please put the key number plate in a safe place and keep it properly.

■ When taking an aircraft

When bringing a smart key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the smart key while inside the aircraft cabin. If the key is put in a bag, make sure that any button will not be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the smart key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

■ Smart key battery level

- The standard lifecycle of the battery is 1-2 years.
- The battery may run out even if the smart key is not used. The following symptoms indicate a low level of or zero energy of the smart key battery. Replace the battery when necessary. (→ P. 342)
 - The passive entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
 - The detection area becomes smaller.
 - The combination instrument shows a message of low battery level.
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the key within 1 m of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
 - TVs
 - Personal computers
 - Mobile phones, cordless telephone and battery chargers
 - The charging cell phone or cordless phones
 - Table lamps
 - Induction cooker

■ Replace the battery

(→ P. 342)



NOTICES

■ **To prevent damage to the key**

- Do not make keys subject to strong shocks or expose the keys to high temperature (such as under direct sunlight) and wet environment.
- Do not wet the key or wash it in an ultrasonic cleaner or other units.
- Do not immerse the key in the water.
- Do not attach metal or magnetic items to the key, or place the key near such items.
- Do not disassemble the smart key.
- Do not stick labels or other items on the surface of the key.
- Do not place the key near the material that generates magnetic fields, such as a TV, audio system, induction cooker or electronic medical devices (such as a low-frequency medical devices).

■ **When carrying the smart key**

When carrying the smart key, a distance of 10 cm or more should be kept from operating electrical appliances. The radio wave emitted by the electrical appliance less than 10cm away from the smart key can interfere with the key operation and disable the normal work.

■ **When the passive entry & start system fails or has other key related failures**

Please send the vehicle to the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer together with all the keys accompanied with the vehicle.

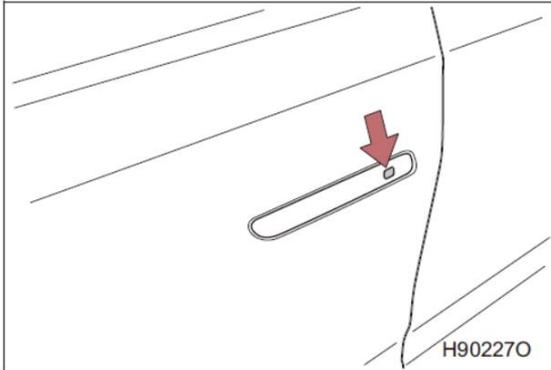
■ **When the key is lost**

If the key is lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Immediately bring all the other keys accompanied with the vehicle to the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for getting new ones.

Unlock and lock the door from the outside of the vehicle

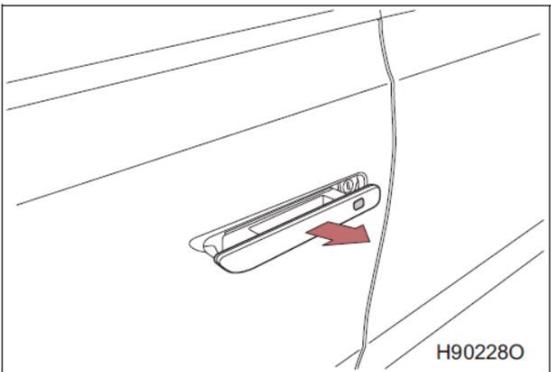
■ **Passive entry**

As long as you carry the smart key or Bluetooth key with you, you can unlock and lock the door through the passive entry function.



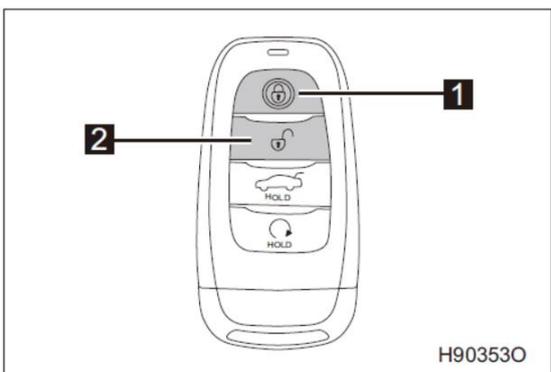
Turn off the engine switch, touch the door handle sensing area to lock the door.

When any one of the doors is not closed, the door cannot be locked by doing so.



With the vehicle locked, touch and hold the door handle sensor switch to unlock the door and pop out the door handle.

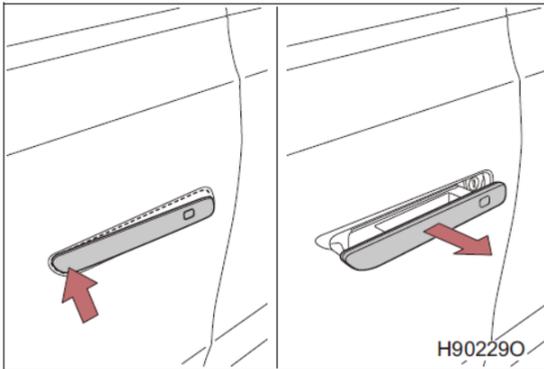
■ **Wireless remote control**



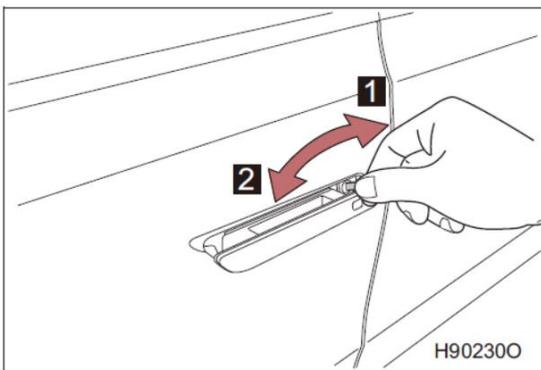
1 Lock all the doors

2 Unlock the driver door/all the doors Please see P.226 for unlocking method setting.

■ Mechanical key



Press the front of the driver door handle to tilt it, then pull the middle part to pull the handle out vertically.



Pull and hold the handle, then use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the doors.

- 1 Unlock the doors
- 2 Lock the doors

■ Operation signals

All turn lamps flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

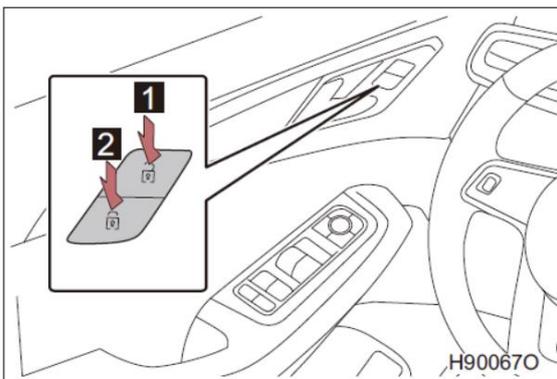
■ Exhausted key

If the key battery runs out, replace it with a new one. (→ P. 342)

Unlock and lock the door from the inside of the vehicle

The doors can be unlocked and locked with the central door lock switch on the driver door.

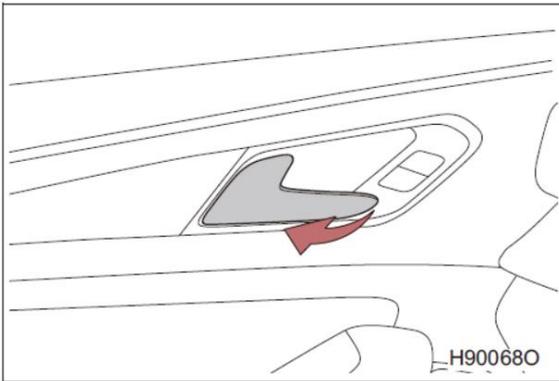
■ Central door lock switch



- 1 Unlock all the doors
- 2 Lock all the doors

Note: When the door is not closed, the central door lock switch can only unlock but not lock the doors.

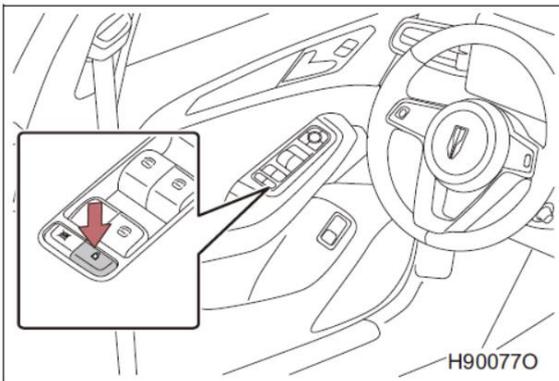
■ Inside door handle



Pull the inside door handle to open the door.

After locking the door, pull the inside door handle once to unlock the door and pull it again to open the door.

Child safety lock on the rear door



The door can not be opened from the inside after the safety lock being activated.

The activated safety lock can prevent the child from opening the door in the vehicle.

■ Locking at certain speeds

- With all doors closed, but not locked and the vehicle running, with the speed exceeding 20 km/h, the function of locking at certain speeds will be activated to lock all doors.

■ Hidden door handle

- When the vehicle is unlocked through the passive entry function or the central control door lock switch, all door handles pop out.
- When the vehicle is unlocked by the remote control key, the driver side/all door handles will pop up according to the set safety unlock mode.
- When the vehicle is running at the speed exceeds approximately 15 km/h, all door handles retract.
- When the vehicle is locked through the passive entry function, remote control key or central control door lock switch, all door handles retract.

■ The conditions affecting the passive entry & start system and wireless remote control (→ P. 84)



CAUTIONS

■ To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.

Otherwise, the occupant in the car can be thrown out of the vehicle due to the unintentionally opened door, resulting in serious injury or even death.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Make sure all the doors are closed properly.
- Always lock all the doors.
- Do not pull the inside handles of the doors while driving.

Otherwise, the door can be opened and the passenger can be thrown out of the car, leading to serious injury or even death.

- Always set the rear door child safety lock when children are seated in the rear seats.
- When you get out of the car with nobody in it, please carry the keys, close all the windows and sunroof and lock all the doors to prevent others from entering or stealing the car.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- Never allow children to have or use the key, otherwise they may be able to start the vehicle or operate the shift lever, causing a safety hazard.
- Never allow children to play with the windows or other equipments of the vehicle which may result in injury.
- Make sure the temperature in the vehicle is favorable, because the heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.
- Always make sure the surrounding area is safe before opening the doors.
It is extremely dangerous to suddenly open the door, because the door may hit the other car or pedestrians passing by resulting in accidents.
- After closing the doors, verify that they are closed tight.
Failure to close the door tight is dangerous. If the vehicle is driven in this case, the door may open unintentionally, causing an accident.

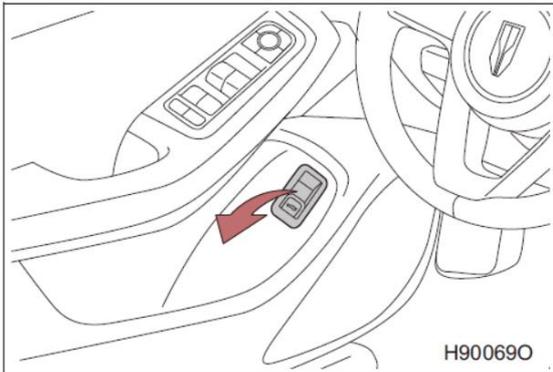
■ When using hidden door handle

- Be careful not to be pinched by the door handle or have it damaged.
- When the door handle pops out, make sure that there is no foreign matter around it to prevent damage.
- When driving in winter, remove the ice or snow from the door handle first, and then unlock or lock the door, otherwise the door handle may not work properly.

The trunk lid can be opened by using the trunk lid open button, passive entry function or wireless remote control.

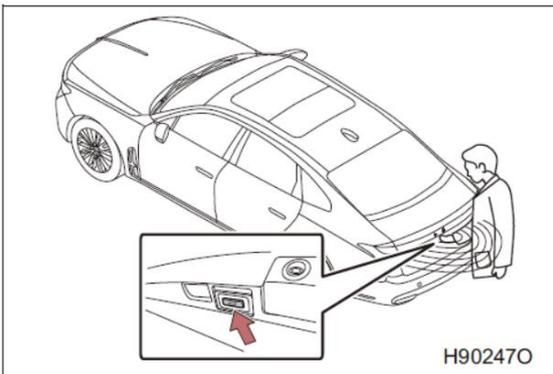
Opening the trunk lid

■ Opening the trunk lid from the inside of car



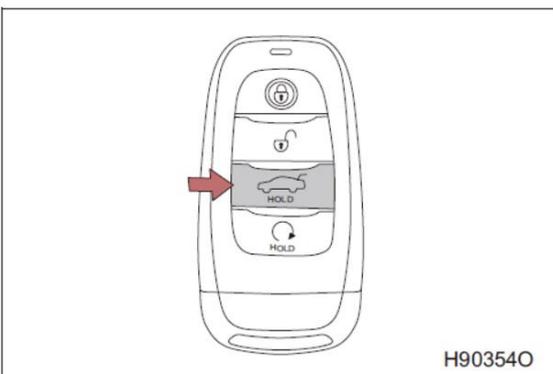
When the vehicle is stationary and the trunk lid is closed, pull up the trunk lid open button to unlock and open the trunk lid.

■ Opening the trunk lid from the outside of car



When the vehicle is locked, carry the smart key or Bluetooth key with you, press the open button outside the trunk lid to unlock and open the trunk lid; and when the vehicle is unlocked, press the open button outside the trunk lid to unlock and open the trunk lid.

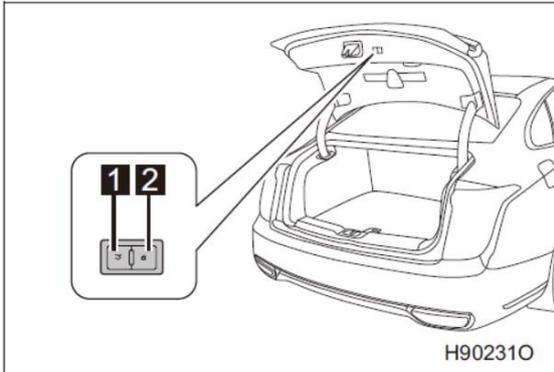
■ Wireless remote control



When the engine switch is in "IG-OFF" mode and the trunk lid is closed, press and hold the button to unlock and open the trunk.

Closing the trunk lid

■ Trunk lid switch *



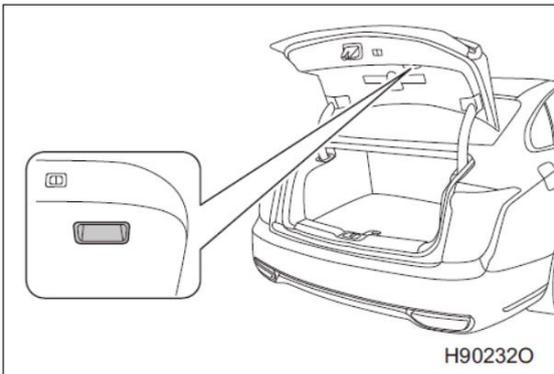
1 Trunk lid closing button

Press the trunk lid closing button and the trunk lid will automatically close.

2 One-click lock button

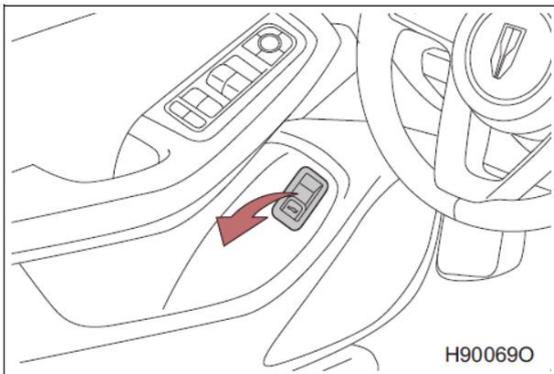
When the engine switch is in the "IG-OFF" mode, all the doors are closed, carry the smart key with you and there is no other identifiable smart key in the car, press the one-click lock button to allow the trunk lid to automatically close after a few seconds delay and lock the vehicle.

■ Trunk lid handle



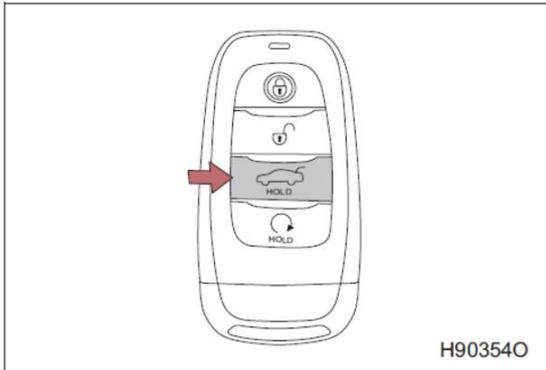
Pull down on the trunk lid handle and press the trunk lid to close it.

■ Trunk lid inside open button



When the vehicle is stationary and the trunk lid is open, pull and hold the trunk lid inside open button until the trunk lid is closed.

- Wireless remote control



When the engine switch is in "IG-OFF" mode and the trunk lid is open, press and hold the button until the trunk lid is closed.

- **Trunk lamp**

The trunk lamp turns on when the trunk lid is opened.

- **During the opening of the trunk lid, pull the trunk lid inside open button to pause, and pull it again to continue opening the trunk lid.**

- **Trunk lid position memory**

Open the trunk lid, adjust it to an appropriate angle (the angle needs to be more than half of the maximum opening angle), press and hold the trunk lid closing button for more than 3 seconds, all the turn signals flash once to memorize the current position as the trunk open position.

- **Reminder of the key left in trunk**

When you open and close the trunk lid alone from the outside of car with the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode and car locked, the reminder function of the approved key left in trunk will be activated (the trunk lid pops open automatically).



CAUTIONS

- **Be careful to open and close the trunk lid to avoid being pinched by it.**
- **Before driving**
 - Make sure the trunk lid is completely closed. If the trunk lid is not completely closed, it may open accidentally hitting nearby objects or making the luggage in it thrown out during driving, causing an accident.
 - Do not let children play in the trunk. If the child is accidentally locked in the trunk, it may suffer heat stroke, suffocation or other injuries.
 - Do not allow children to open or close the trunk lid. Doing so may cause the trunk lid to open unintentionally or cause the closing trunk lid to trap the child's hand, head, or neck.
- **Precautions when driving**

Make sure to close the trunk lid to prevent from belongings dropping off and prevent from the exhaust gas entering into the cabin.
- **When children are in or around the vehicle**

Never leave the child play in or around the car unattended, especially when the trunk lid is open. The child may enter the trunk and trapped themselves in it. The over high or low temperature in the closed car may cause serious injury or death.
- **Important for driving**

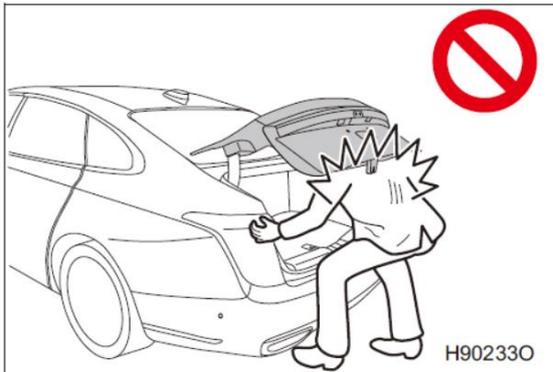
Never seat anyone in the trunk. Otherwise, during emergency braking or a crash, it is likely to cause serious injury even death.
- **Jam protection function ***
 - Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

CAUTIONS

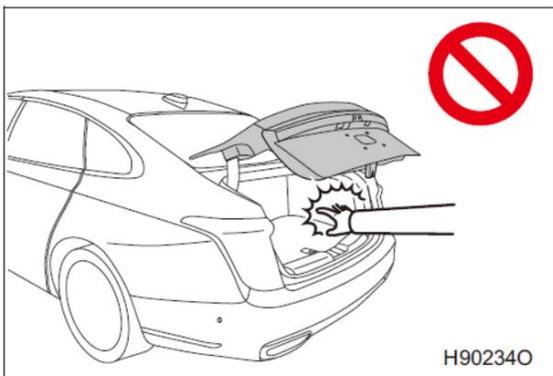
■ Trunk usage

Observe the following precautions. Otherwise, some part of the body may be jammed and cause serious injury.

- Before opening trunk lid, first remove load on it, such as snow and ice. Otherwise, the trunk lid may suddenly close again.
- When opening or closing the trunk lid, please make a thorough check to ensure the peripheral region is safe.
- If there is someone nearby, please ensure their safety and inform them that trunk lid will be opened or closed.
- On a windy day, be careful when opening or closing trunk lid, because it may move suddenly in strong wind.
- Never install any accessories on the trunk lid. Otherwise, the extra weight on the trunk lid may cause the trunk lid to open and close suddenly.



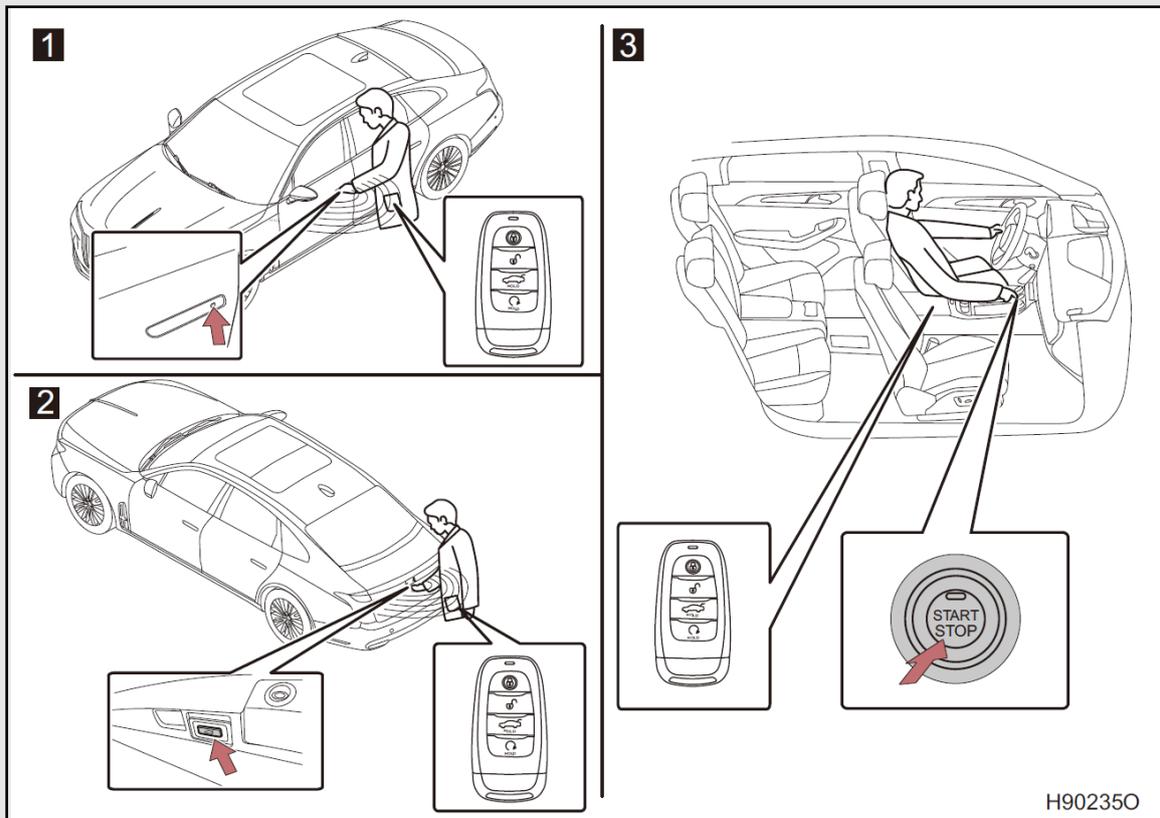
- It is more difficult to open or close the trunk lid on a slope than that on a flat road. Therefore, be careful to prevent it from being closed during opening or opened during closing accidentally. Before using the trunk, please confirm the trunk lid is fully opened and fixed.



- Be careful to close the trunk lid to avoid the finger or other body part being jammed.

Passive entry & start system

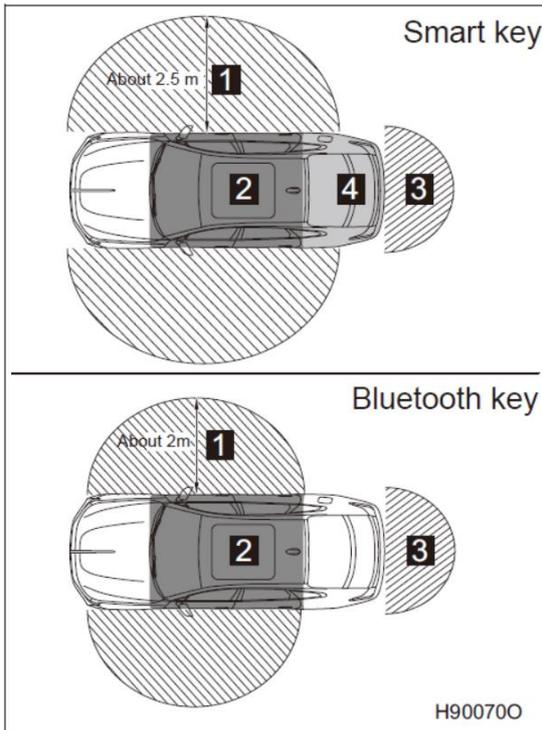
The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the smart key or Bluetooth key with yourself (in pocket). (The driver should always carry the keys.)



Note: This picture only takes the smart key as an example.

- 1** Lock and unlock the doors. (→ P. 73)
- 2** Lock and unlock the trunk lid. (→ P. 77)
- 3** Start the engine. (→ P. 118)

■ Effective range (areas within which the smart key can be detected)



Effective range of the key antenna:
Hemispheric area with the antenna as the center

1 When locking or unlocking the doors

The doors can be locked or unlocked when the key is within the exterior induction areas.

2 When starting the engine or changing the engine switch modes

You can start the engine or change the engine switch mode if the key is within the interior induction area.

3 When unlocking the trunk

If the key is within the induction area outside the trunk, it can be unlocked if the conditions are met.

4 When the key left in trunk

If the trunk lid is closed when the key is within the induction area inside the trunk, the reminder function of the approved key left in trunk will be activated if the conditions are met. (→ P. 79)

■ Warning and prompting function

The system warning and prompting functions can be achieved via the multifunction display on the combination instrument and the buzzer, hazard warning lights and engine switch status indicator.

- When any warning light is on

Adopt corresponding measures according to the illuminated warning lights. (→ P. 357)

- When the warning information is displayed

Adopt corresponding measures according to the warning information displayed on the combination instrument.

■ **Conditions affecting operations**

The passive entry & start system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the smart key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the passive entry & start system and wireless remote control from operating properly.

- When the key battery is low.
- When the key battery is depleted.
- Near a TV tower, power plant, filling station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise interference.
- When carrying portable radio, mobile phone, cordless telephone or other wireless telecom equipments.
- When the key is in contact with, or is covered by metal objects.
- When multiple smart keys or Bluetooth keys are in the vicinity.
- When carrying or using the keys together with the following devices that emit radio waves.
 - Another vehicle's smart key
 - Wireless remote control key that emits radio waves
 - Personal computers
- If sunscreen with metal contents or metal objects are attached to the rear windshield.
- When the following metal objects touch or cover the key.
 - Cards with aluminium foil
 - Cigarette case with aluminium foil on the inside
 - Metallic wallet or bag
 - Coins
 - Metallic hand warmer
 - Media such as CD and DVD
- Another vehicle's smart key (emitting radio waves) is used near the vehicle.
- When the smart key is near a battery charger or an electronic device.

■ To operate the system properly

- Make sure to carry the keys when operating the system. Do not get the keys too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.
- Depending on the specific positions and holding gestures of the key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly.

■ Security features

- When unlocking the vehicle with remote control or passive entry function, the car can be automatically locked after a certain period of time if the door or trunk lid is not opened.

■ When the vehicle is not driven for a long period

- To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not place the smart key too close to the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is not driven for a long period, it must be locked. Otherwise, the battery may be depleted.

■ If the passive entry & start system does not operate properly

- Lock and unlock the doors: using the mechanical key. (→ P. 371)
- Start the engine. (→ P. 372)

■ Remarks of passive entry & start system function

- Even when the key is within the effective range (induction areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases.
 - The smart key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
- As long as the smart key or Bluetooth key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by any one. Please keep the keys properly.
- The passive entry may become inoperable if large amount of water splashes on the door handle (such as in a car wash or in heavy rain).
- The doors may not be locked in the following situations.
 - When locking the door using the passive entry function with the smart key or Bluetooth key inside the vehicle.
 - When locking the doors by carrying the smart key outside the vehicle without turning off the engine switch.
 - When any door is not completely closed.
 - When the shift lever is not in P/N.



CAUTIONS

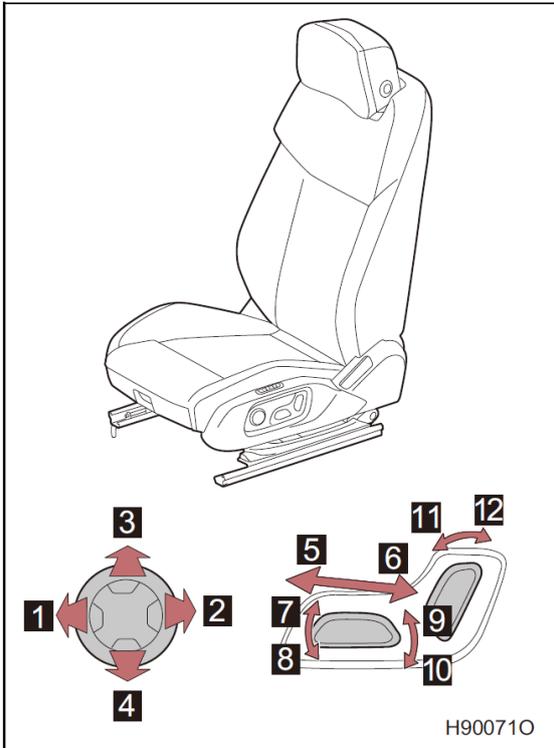
■ Notes regarding the electronic devices interference

People with implanted pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy pacemakers or implanted cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a proper distance from the passive entry & start system antennas.

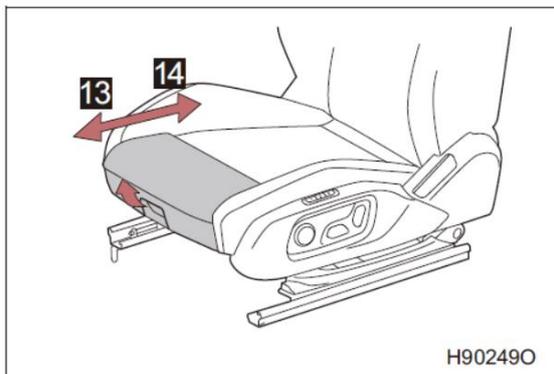
- The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. For the details of the radio waves frequency and emitting time, please consult the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer. Then consult your doctor about whether it can be normally used.
- People with other electronic medical devices, rather than implanted pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy pacemakers or implanted cardioverter defibrillators, should consult the device manufacturer about the effects of radio waves on the device operation.
- Radio waves could have unpredictable effects on the operation of such medical devices.
- For details of the passive entry & start system, please consult the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

Adjustment steps:

► Driver seat

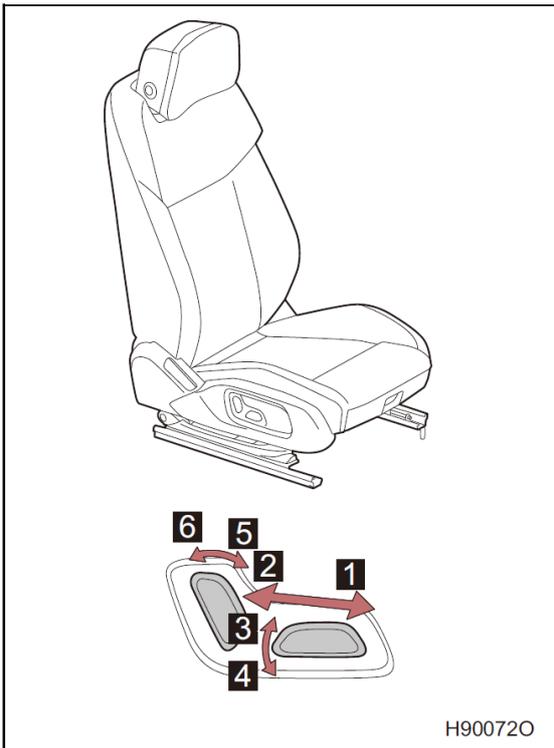


- 1 Lumbar support convexed*
- 2 Lumbar support concaved*
- 3 Lumbar support moving upward*
- 4 Lumbar support moving downward*
- 5 Seat moving forward
- 6 Seat moving backward
- 7 Front end of seat going up
- 8 Front end of seat going down
- 9 Seat going up
- 10 Seat going down
- 11 Backrest inclining forward
- 12 Backrest inclining backwards

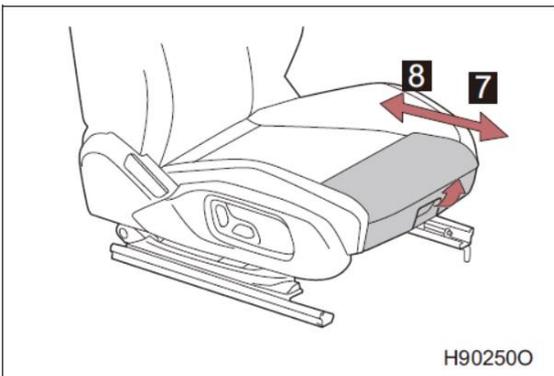


- 13 Cushion depth increases
 - 14 Cushion depth decreases
- Pulling the adjustment handle to manually adjust the seat cushion depth.

► Front passenger seat

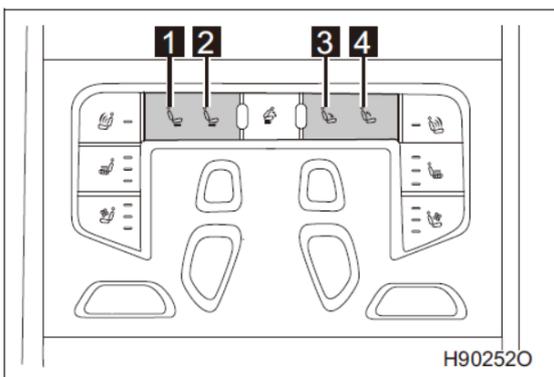


- 1 Seat moving forward
- 2 Seat moving backward
- 3 Seat going up
- 4 Seat going down
- 5 Backrest inclining forward
- 6 Backrest inclining backwards



- 7 Cushion depth increases
 - 8 Cushion depth decreases
- Pulling the adjustment handle to manually adjust the seat cushion depth.

► Front passenger seat (rear control buttons) - for the operation of rear seat passengers



- 1 Seat moving backward
- 2 Seat moving forward
- 3 Backrest inclining forward
- 4 Backrest inclining backwards

**CAUTIONS****■ Seat adjustment**

- When the vehicle is moving, do not over-tilt the seat to prevent the body from slipping out of the lap belt. If the seat is over tilted, the lap belt may slide over the hip and directly squeeze the stomach or the shoulder belt may also strike the neck. This increases the chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.
- Do not place your hand under the seat or near the moving part. Otherwise the finger or hand may be trapped by the seat mechanism.
- Be careful when adjusting the seat position to ensure other occupants will not be injured in this process.
- Do not allow children to adjust the seat.
This is very dangerous. It may cause serious injuries once the child's hand or foot is trapped.
- It is necessary to stop the vehicle properly before adjusting the driver seat.
It is very dangerous to adjust the driver seat while the vehicle is moving. It may cause a loss of vehicle control, resulting in an accident.

■ Seat retrofitting

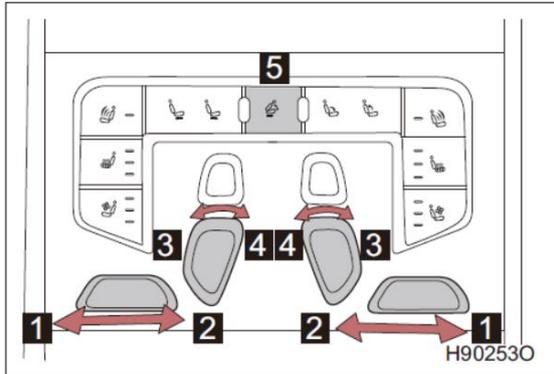
- Retrofitting or replacing the front seat may damage the airbag components in the seat, resulting in the improper airbag deployment in the event of a collision.
- If the seat needs to be removed or replaced, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

■ Seats under damage

- It is extremely dangerous to drive a vehicle with a damaged seat.
- After a collision, the seat may be damaged even if the seat airbag is not deployed. Therefore you need to contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to check the seat, seat belt pre-tensioner and airbag after each collision.

Adjustment steps:

The rear seat adjustment switch is set on the rear seat control panel.



- 1 Cushion depth increases
- 2 Cushion depth decreases
- 3 Backrest inclining forward
- 4 Backrest inclining backwards
- 5 One-click reclining*

■ **One-click reclining function**

- Press the one-click reclining function button, rear right seat cushion depth increases, the seat back inclines backwards, and the front passenger seat moves forward at the same time; after use, press the button again to return to the position before adjusting.
- During the adjustment, press the one-click reclining function button to terminate the adjustment, press the button again to return to the position before adjusting.

CAUTIONS

■ **Seat adjustment**

- Do not place your hand under the seat or near the moving part. Otherwise the finger or hand may be trapped by the seat mechanism.
- Be careful when adjusting the seat position to ensure other occupants will not be injured in this process.
- Do not allow children to adjust the seat.
This is very dangerous. It may cause serious injuries once the child's hand or foot is trapped.

■ **Seat retrofitting**

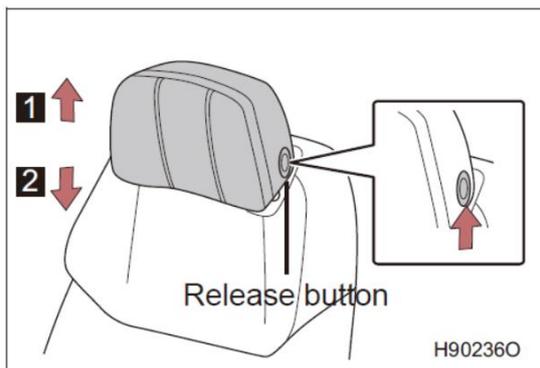
- Retrofitting or replacing the front seat may damage the airbag components in the seat, resulting in the improper airbag deployment in the event of a collision.
- If the seat needs to be removed or replaced, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

■ **Seats under damage**

- It is extremely dangerous to drive a vehicle with a damaged seat.
- After a collision, the seat may be damaged even if the seat airbag is not deployed. Therefore you need to contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to check the seat, seat belt pre-tensioner and airbag after each collision.

3-3. Adjusting the seats Head restraints

► Front seat head restraints/ rear seat head restraints (manual adjustment)*



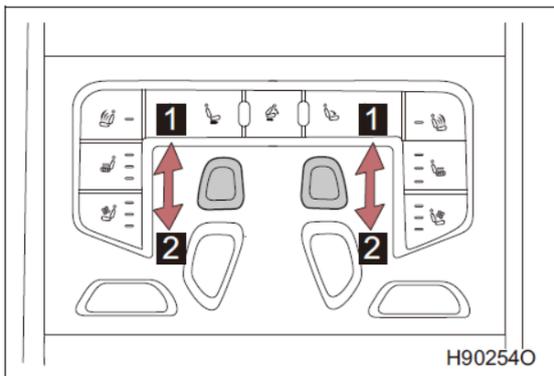
1 Up

Pull the head restraint upwards while pressing and holding the release button

2 Down

Push the head restraint downwards while pressing and holding the release button.

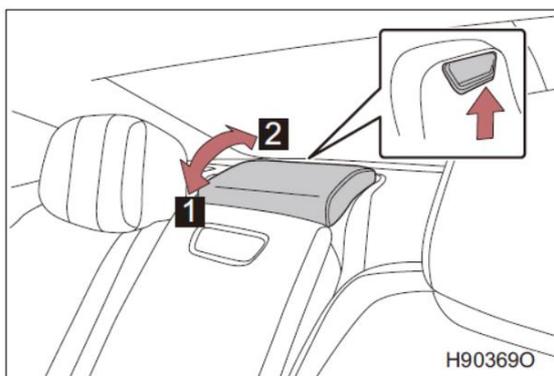
► Rear seat head restraints (electric adjustment)*



1 Up

2 Down

► Rear centre seat head restraint*



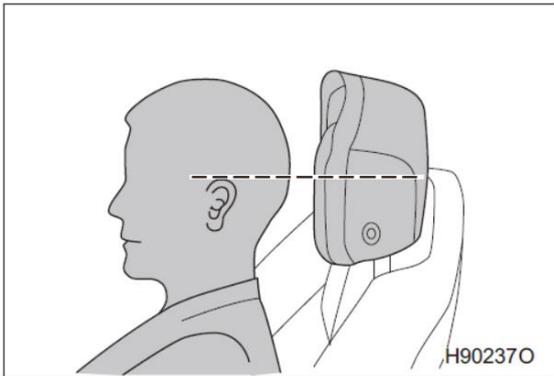
1 Upright

2 Folding

Fold the headrest backward while pressing and holding the adjustment handle.

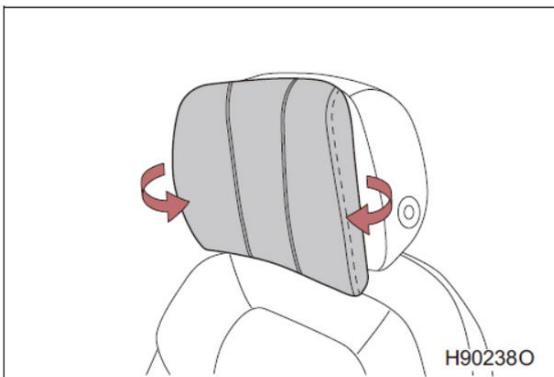
Note: When using the rear middle seat, the head restraint of the rear middle seat must be adjusted to the upright position. After use, return it to the folded position.

■ Adjusting the height of the head restraint



Adjust the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint flush with the top edge of the occupant's ears.

■ Sleeping head restraint *



The two sides of the head restraint can be folded inward to a comfortable position.



CAUTIONS

■ **Precautions for head restraint**

Please observe the following cautions about the head restraint. Otherwise it may lead to serious personal injuries, or even death.

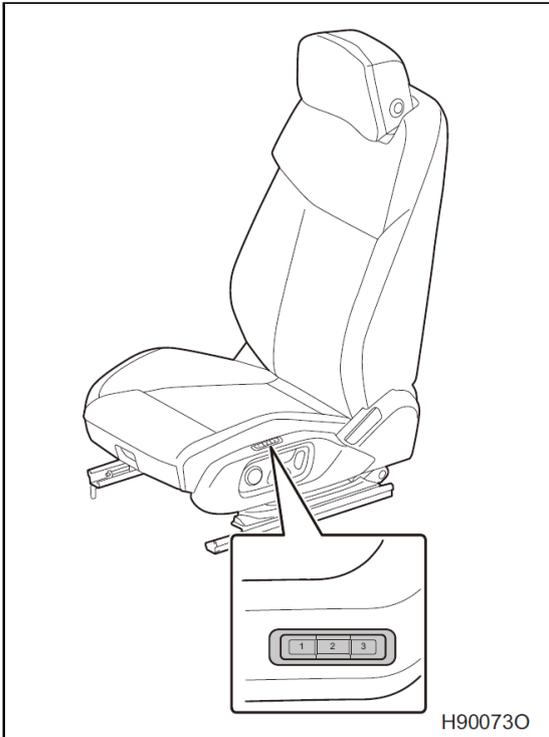
- Use the head restraints specially designed for each seat.
- Always adjust the head restraints to the correct position.
- When using the electric head restraint, be careful not to get caught.
- When using an electric head restraint, make sure that there is no foreign matter around it to prevent damage to it.
- After the head restraint is removed, do not drive the vehicle.

Whenever driving the vehicle, the head restraint should be installed properly and adjusted to a suitable position. Driving a vehicle with the head restraint too low or not mounted is very dangerous. The absence of head support can cause injuries to the neck in the event of a collision.

- **The seat head restraints can weaken the whiplash effect on the seat occupant, and reduce the injury on the neck of the driver or the passengers.**

It can store the information of seats, steering wheel and exterior mirrors.

Seat memory setting



Set memory content: after adjusting the seat, steering wheel, and exterior mirror to a proper position, press and hold any memory button (more than 3s), and release the button after hearing the prompt tone from the instrument, indicating that the position information has been memorized in this button.

Call up the memory content: press the memory button to make the seats, steering wheel and the exterior mirrors automatically move to the stored positions in this button.

■ Initialize setting

Put the engine switch in the "IG-ON" mode, press buttons 1 and 3 at the same time to initialize the settings, the alarm speaker will beep once, indicating that the initialization is successful.

■ Audio system position record settings

In addition to the local memory, each account login in the audio system position record can also be memorized a set of position information. (→ P. 248)

Greeting function

The greeting function consists of automatic back-off and return.

Automatic back-off: after the engine is switched off and the front left door opened, the seat and steering wheel automatically moves backwards to the utmost for the driver to get off.

Automatic return: after the engine is switched on and the front left door closed, the seat and steering wheel automatically returns to the position before the automatic back-off.

■ **Greeting function switch**

The greeting function can be set to turn on and off in the settings of the audio system. (→ P. 226)

■ **When automatically backing off**

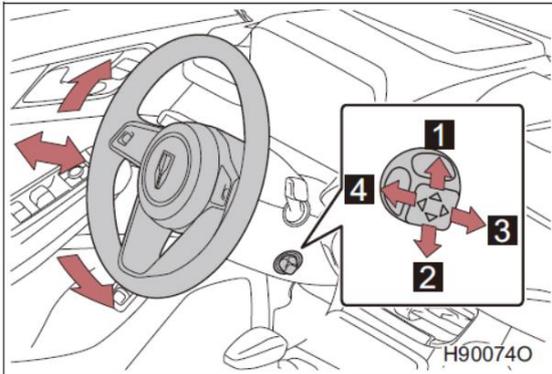
If the driver operates the steering wheel adjustment switch, seat adjustment switch or seat memory button during seat automatic back-off, this back-off will be terminated.

■ **When automatically returning**

If the driver operates the steering wheel adjustment switch, seat adjustment switch, seat memory button or starts the engine during seat automatic return, this return will be terminated.

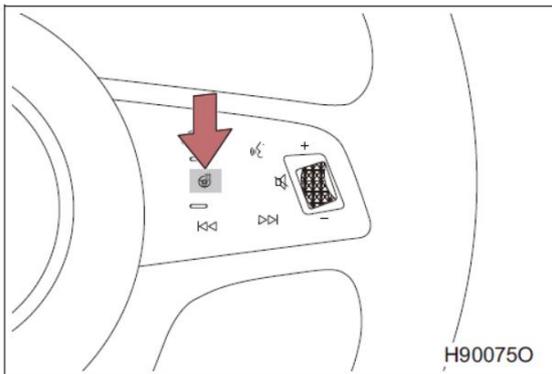
Adjusting the steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position.



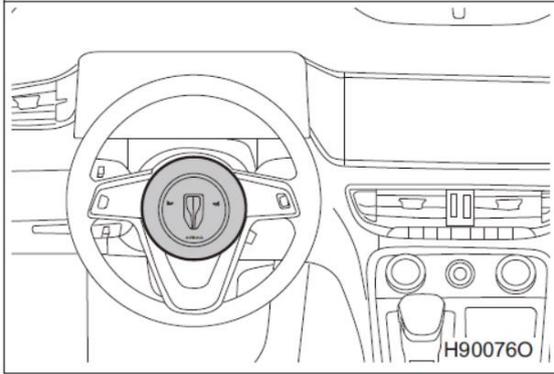
- 1 Move upward
- 2 Move downward
- 3 Move forward
- 4 Move backward

Steering wheel heating *



Press the steering wheel heating button, the indicator comes on and the heating function is activated; and press it again to deactivate the steering wheel heating function.

Horn



To sound the horn, press on the horn mark or its surrounding area.

CAUTIONS

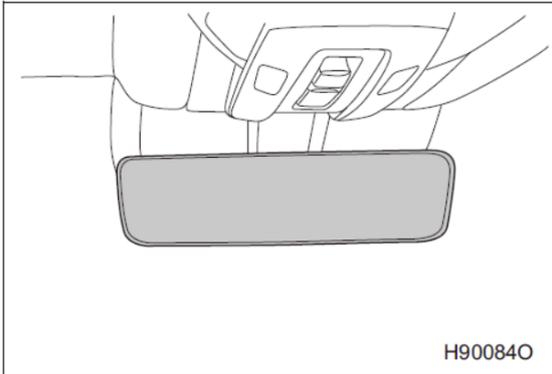
■ Precautions when driving

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving. Otherwise, it may cause false driver operations, potentially resulting in an accident and leading to serious injury or even death.
- Put hands on 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions on the outer side of the steering wheel rim when driving. Do not put both hands on 12 o'clock position or grip the steering wheel by other gestures. Otherwise, the deployment of the air bag may result in injury to the arms and/or head of the driver.

■ When adjusting the steering wheel

Keep the driver's chest at least 300mm away from the steering wheel; never adjust the steering wheel to face the driver's face. Otherwise, the driver airbag will not provide effective protection in the event of an accident.

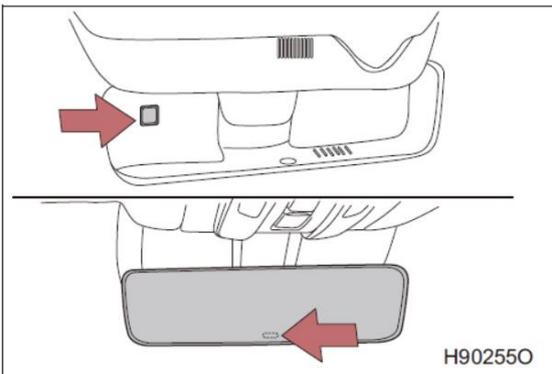
Adjusting the interior mirror



According to the driving posture, the interior mirror can be adjusted upwards, downwards, leftwards and rightwards.

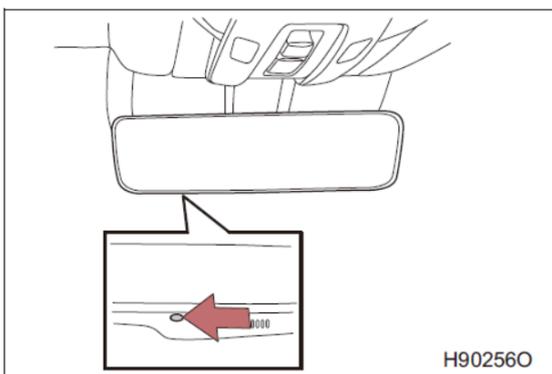
The driver must adjust the mirror to a suitable position so that a good rear view can be achieved through the rear windshield.

Anti-glare function



The interior mirror features auto anti-glare function and can detect the ambient light intensity and that of the vehicle behind via the front and rear light sensors, and also automatically weaken the reflect light in case of too bright light of vehicle behind at night.

Streaming interior rearview mirror*



The streaming interior rearview mirror can display the images collected by the rearview camera through the interior rearview mirror, so that the line of sight is not affected by factors such as the rear windshield and the rear passengers.

■ Streaming interior rearview mirror switch

Press the switch to turn on/off the streaming interior rearview mirror, which has automatic anti-glare function when it is off.

■ Basic setting of streaming interior rearview mirror

The display scale, display area and display brightness can be set in the settings of the audio system. (→ P. 230)



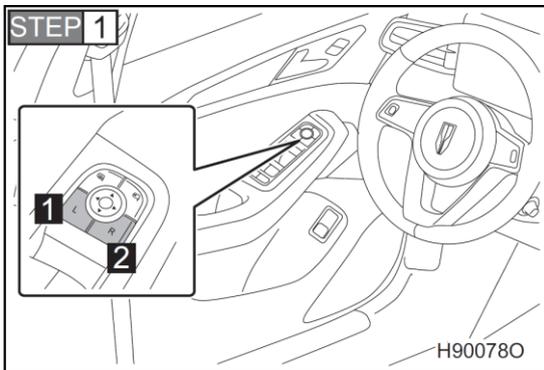
CAUTIONS

■ **When driving**

- Never adjust the rearview mirror when driving. Otherwise, accidents may occur due to false operations, resulting in serious injuries or even death.
- If objects stacked on the rear seat is higher than the backrest, the vision in the interior mirror can be blocked, potentially resulting in traffic accidents. Therefore, the height of the stacked objects should not exceed the backrest.

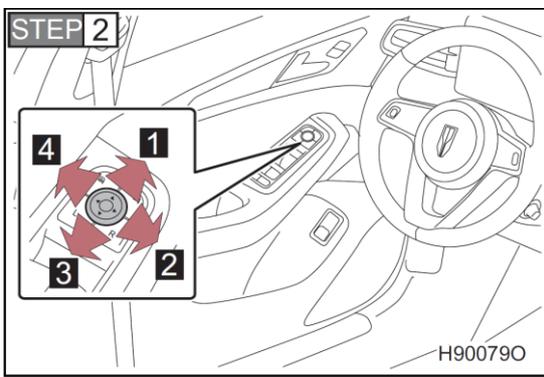
Adjusting the exterior mirrors

The exterior mirror angles can be adjusted when the engine switch is in "IG-ON" mode.



Press the corresponding side mirror selection button, and the button indicator comes on.

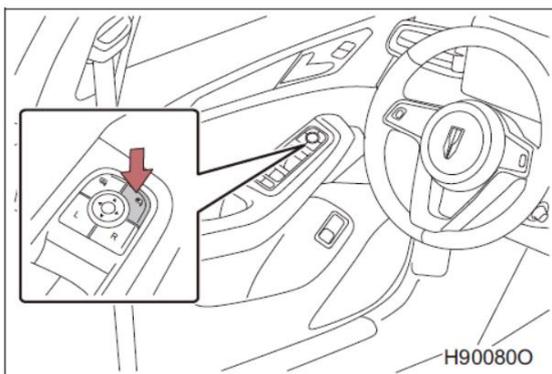
- 1 Left side
- 2 Right side



Press the button to adjust the corresponding side mirror.

- 1 Move upward
- 2 Move rightward
- 3 Move downward
- 4 Move leftward

Folding the exterior mirrors

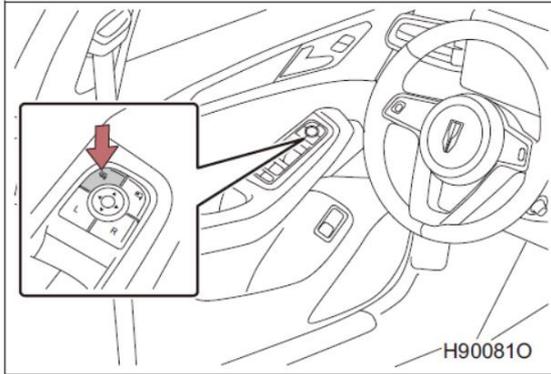


Press the exterior mirror folding button to fold the exterior mirror; press the button again to return it to its original position.

The exterior mirrors will be automatically folded as the door locked and be unfolded as the door unlocked.

The exterior mirrors can be set to auto-folding ON and OFF in the settings of the audio system. (→ P. 226)

Exterior mirror heating



When the mirror fogs up, press the exterior mirror heating button to heat the exterior mirror; press the button again to deactivate the heating.

If it is not manually turned off, the heater will automatically turn off after a certain period of time.

■ Adjustment conditions for exterior mirror angles

The engine switch is in "IG-ON" mode and the vehicle is parked.

■ Operating conditions for the exterior mirror folding and heating The engine switch is in "IG-ON" mode.

■ Activating electric mode in cold weather

The exterior mirrors can freeze in cold weather. In such case, the mirrors may fail to be automatically folded and unfolded in the electric mode. In this case, remove the ice and snow from the exterior mirrors first and then manually operate the mirrors.

■ Exterior mirror memory

The exterior rear-view mirror has a memory function and can be linked with the memory function of the seat and steering wheel. (→ P. 93)

■ Automatic adjustment of right rear-view mirror

This function is activated when the shift lever is placed in the R gear that the right rear-view mirror automatically turns down to provide the driver with a reverse field of vision.

The rear-view mirror will automatically return to the previous position after 10s that the shift lever shifted to other gears from the R gear or when the vehicle speed is more than 15km/h.

The driver can adjust the right rearview mirror to an appropriate angle when the shift lever is placed in R gear, which is memorized as the target position to turn down.

**CAUTIONS****■ When driving**

Observe the following precautions while driving. Otherwise, it may cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle and accidents to occur, resulting in serious injury or even death.

- Always watch the surroundings before changing lanes.

It is very dangerous to change the lane without considering the actual distance to the vehicle in the exterior mirror. As the actual distance to the object is smaller than the one you see through the mirror, it may cause serious accidents.

- Do not drive the vehicle with the exterior mirror folded. Before driving, ensure to return the exterior mirror to the unfolded position.

■ When the exterior mirror moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to trap the hand with the moving mirror.

■ When the exterior mirror heaters are operating

- Do not touch the exterior mirror surface, as the mirror may become very hot and cause a scald.
- When heating is not required, deactivate the heating function.

■ Precautions while driving

Observe the following precautions while driving:

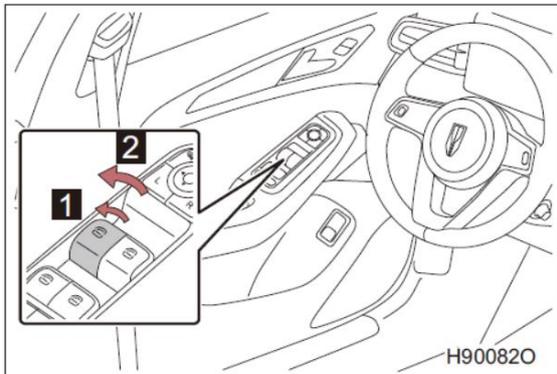
- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Both the driver and front passenger side mirrors must be unfolded and properly adjusted before driving.

Power windows

Opening and closing the power window

■ Power window switch on the driver side

The power window switch on the driver side regulates other windows



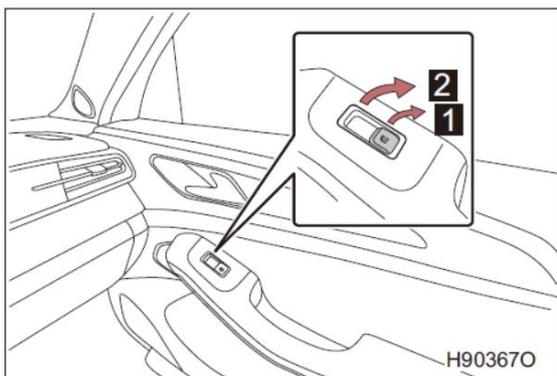
1 Manually up/down

Pull/press the level 1 on the corresponding window switch (keep pulling/pressing), the window will be regulated up/ down manually.

2 Automatically up/down

Pull/press the level 2 on the corresponding window switch (release after pulling/pressing), the window will move up/down automatically.

■ Power window switch on the front passenger side



1 Manually up/down

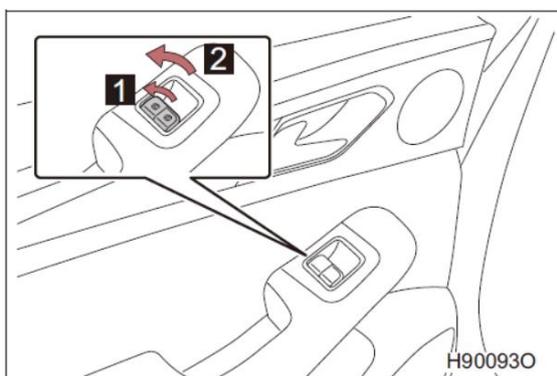
Pull/press the level 1 on the window switch (keep pulling/ pressing), the window will be regulated up/down manually.

2 Automatically up/down

Pull/press the level 2 on the window switch (release after pulling/pressing), the window will move up/down automatically.

■ Power window switches for rear occupants

The power window switch for rear occupants on either side regulates the rear windows on both sides



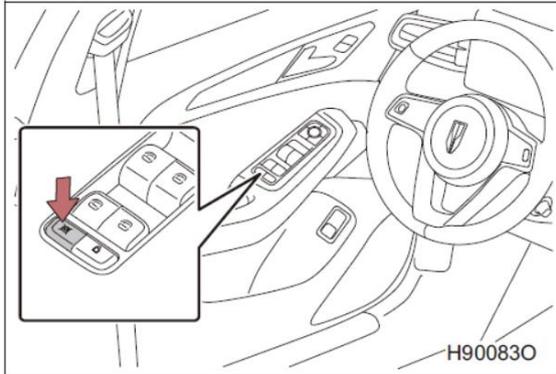
1 Manually up/down

Pull/press the level 1 on the corresponding window switch (keep pulling/pressing), the window will be regulated up/ down manually.

2 Automatically up/down

Pull/press the level 2 on the corresponding window switch (release after pulling/pressing), the window will move up/down automatically.

Power window lock switch



Press this switch to disable the power window switches for rear occupants.

The power window switches on driver and front passenger sides are not regulated by the lock switch.

■ Operating condition for power windows

The engine switch is turned to "IG-ON" mode.

■ Operating power windows after turning off the engine

The power windows can still be operated even after a certain period of time after the engine switch is turned off.

■ Initialization

When the automatic up/down function fails, the window needs to be initialized. The initialization method is as follows:

- With the door window at any position of the anti-pinch effective area (more than 4 mm from the window frame), keep pulling the switch on the window to be initialized until the window is fully closed and keep this pulling for more than 2 seconds, then the initialization process finishes.

Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer if necessary.

■ Jam protection function

When the power window is operated to rise and is interfered by obstacles, the power window will automatically move down to a safe position.

■ Automatic window closing function*

With the engine switch placed in the "IG-OFF" mode and the windows not closed, the light rain sensor judges the amount of rain to automatically close the windows.

The automatic sunroof closing function can be set to turn on and off in the settings of the audio system. (→ P. 226)

■ Remote raising

With all the doors, engine hood and trunk lid closed and the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode, press and hold the lock button on the smart key within the effective range to close all the windows.

■ Smart raising

With all the doors, engine hood and trunk lid closed and the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode and a smart or Bluetooth key carried with you, you can close all the windows by touching and holding the inductive switch on the door handle.

■ **Mechanical key raising**

With all the doors, engine hood and trunk lid closed and the engine switch in “IG-OFF” mode, you can close all the windows by locking the door with the mechanical key and holding the motion.



CAUTIONS

■ **Observe the following precautions when closing windows to avoid serious injury or even death:**

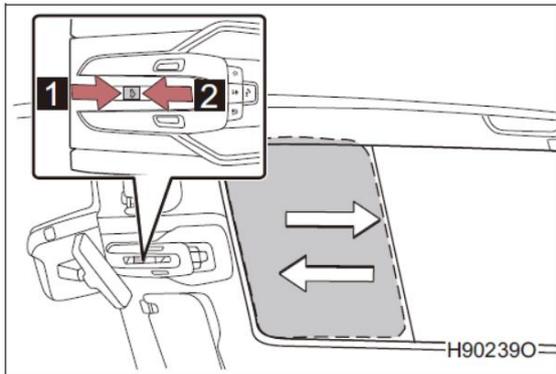
- Check and make sure that all passengers would not have any part of their bodies jammed when a window is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.

■ **Jam protection function**

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets jammed (4 mm) just before the window fully closes.
- The initialization is required if the power window or jam protection function is inoperable.

The sunroof switch can be used to open and close the sunroof.

Opening and closing the sunroof



1 Opening

Press the switch backwards when the sunroof is closed, the rear part of the sunroof is tilted up and the sunshade opens partially.

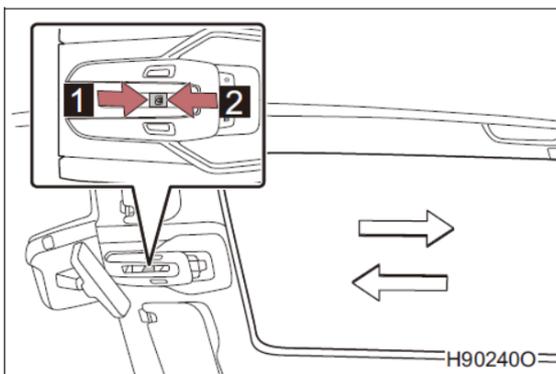
Press the switch backwards when the sunroof is at a tilt-up position, the sunroof opens synchronously with the sunshade.

2 Closing

Press the switch forward when the sunroof is open, the sunroof closes.

Note: When the sunroof is opening or closing automatically, pressing the sunroof switch will stop the movement. Press and hold the sunroof switch to manually open and close the sunroof, and the movement will stop with the switch released.

Opening and closing the sunshade



1 Opening

Press the switch backwards, and the sunshade opens completely.

2 Closing

Press the sunshade switch forward, and the sunshade close completely.

Note: When the sunshade is opening or closing automatically, pressing the sunshade switch will stop the movement. Press and hold the sunshade switch to manually open and close the sunshade, and the movement will stop with the switch released.

With the sunroof not closed, the sunshade cannot be closed completely.

■ **Operating condition for sunroof**

The engine switch is turned to "IG-ON" mode.

■ **Operating sunroof after turning off the engine**

If the driver door is not opened for a period of time after the engine switch is turned off, the sunroof can still be operated at this time.

■ **Initialization**

● Sunroof initialization

When the sunroof is at incorrect positions, or the sunroof automatic function is invalid, or the panorama sunroof and the sunshade-linked function is invalid, initialization is needed. The initialization steps are as follows: set the engine start switch to "IG-ON" mode and fully close the sunroof, then press and hold the sunroof switch and release the switch as the sunroof knocks the mechanism blocking point; re-press and hold the switch immediately until the sunroof completes the tilt-up opening, slide opening and slide closing and release the switch. The initialization is completed.

● The sunshade initialization

When the sunshade is at incorrect positions, or the sunshade automatic function is invalid, initialization is needed. The initialization steps are as follows: set the engine start switch to "IG-ON" mode and fully close the sunshade, then press and hold the sunshade opening switch and release the switch as the sunshade knocks the mechanism blocking point; re-press and hold the switch forward to perform forward closing and backward opening, and release the switch. The initialization is completed.

■ **Jam protection function**

If the sunroof/sunshade encounters obstacles during automatic closing, it will return to a safe position.

■ **Automatic sunroof closing function***

With the engine switch placed in the "IG-OFF" mode and the sunroof not closed, the light rain sensor judges the amount of rain to automatically close the sunroof.

The automatic sunroof closing function can be set to turn on and off in the settings of the audio system. (→ P. 226)

■ **Closing the sunroof with remote control**

With all the doors, engine hood and trunk lid closed and the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode, press and hold the lock button on the smart key within the effective range to close the sunroof.

■ **Closing the sunroof with the smart key**

With all the doors, engine hood and trunk lid closed and the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode and a smart or Bluetooth key carried with you, you can close the sunroof by touching and holding the inductive switch on the door handle.

■ **Closing the sunroof with the mechanical key**

With all the doors, engine hood and trunk lid closed and the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode, you can close the sunroof by locking the door with the mechanical key and holding the motion.

**CAUTIONS****■ Precautions when opening the sunroof**

Observe the following precautions when opening the sunroof to avoid serious injury or death:

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on the sunroof.

■ Precautions when closing the sunroof

Observe the following precautions when closing the sunroof to avoid serious injury or death:

- Check and make sure that all passengers would not have any part of their bodies jammed when the sunroof is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.

■ During the initialization

- If the sunroof switch is released during initialization, then this initialization operation fails and a new initialization operation is needed.
- Confirm all functions of the sunroof after initialization.
- If failed to finish the initialization, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets jammed just before the sunroof/sunshade fully closes.

4-1. Before Driving	
Driving a vehicle	110
Goods and luggage	116
Trailer towing	117
4-2. Driving specifications	
Engine (start) switch	118
Transmission	120
Driving mode	125
Air suspension *	128
Turn signal light control handle ..	132
EPB Electronic Parking Brake ..	133
AUTO HOLD	135
4-3. Operating lights and wipers	
Headlight switch	137
ADB intelligent high beam control system*	139
Fog light switch	141
Front windshield wiper and washer	142
4-4. Fuel filling	
Opening the fuel tank cover	145
4-5. Using other driving systems	
Constant speed cruise control* ..	148
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Function*	151
Super Adaptive Cruise Control (SACC)*	158
Front and rear parking radar	165
Rear view camera system*	170
Panoramic camera system *	174
Tire pressure monitor system (TPMS)	179
LDW/LKA Lane Keeping Assist system*	181
Driver Status Monitor (DSM) system*	184
Forward collision warning (FCW) system*	185
AEB (Autonomous Emergency Braking) system*	188
	BSD (Blind Spot Detection) system *
 191
	TSR (Traffic Sign Recognition) system*
	196
	Idling start/stop system.....
	198
	APA (Auto Parking Assist) system*
 202
	TripREC*
	208
	Driver assistance system
	210
4-6. Driving information	
Key points for driving in winter ..	213

Driving a vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving.

- Starting the engine (→ P.118)

- Driving

STEP 1 Depress the brake pedal and shift the shift lever to D to release the electronic parking brake automatically.

STEP 2 Gradually release the brake pedal and lightly depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

- Stop

STEP 1 When the shift lever is at D, depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2 When necessary, apply the electronic parking brake.
When parking intended for a long time, always shift the shift lever to P or N.

- Parking

STEP 1 When the shift lever is at D, depress the brake pedal.

STEP 2 Press the P button, shift the shift lever to P and the electronic parking brake is automatically applied.

STEP 3 Press the engine switch to turn off the engine.

STEP 4 Lock the door and make sure to carry the keys with you.

Moving off on a steep uphill

- STEP 1** The driver fastened the seat belt, closed the door, firmly depressed the brake pedal and operated the shift lever to D gear.
Make sure that the gear indicator shows D.
- STEP 2** Manually apply the electronic parking brake.
- STEP 3** Release the brake pedal and lightly depress the accelerator pedal.

■ When moving off on a uphill

The Hill Hold Control (HHC) will be automatically activated to prevent the vehicle from rolling off. (→ P. 210)

■ Emergency Stop Signal (ESS) function

When the vehicle is running at a certain speed, if an emergency brake is applied, the brake light flashes quickly to remind the vehicles behind until the brake pedal is released.

■ Driving in the rain

- When it rains, please drive carefully because of poor visibility, foggy windows and slippery roads.
- Do not drive the vehicle at high speed when it is raining, because there may be a layer of water film between the tires and the road surface, hampering the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ Running in your new vehicle

In order to prolong the service life of the vehicle, it is recommended that you observe the following precautions:

- Within the first 1,000 km:
 - Avoid sudden stops.
 - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
 - Avoid sudden acceleration.
 - Do not drive continuously in low gears.
 - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

■ Driving your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant regulations of the country or region and make sure of the availability of the correct fuel.



CAUTIONS

■ When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while the vehicle stops with the engine operating. This prevents the vehicle from creeping accidentally.

■ Precautions while driving

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the locations of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
 - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in serious injury or death.
 - Drive with caution when reversing although the vehicle is equipped with reversing camera system and radar ranging system.
 - When reversing, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
 - Even if you move the vehicle slightly, you must maintain the correct driving posture in order to accurately depress the brake pedal and the accelerator pedal.
 - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. In case of emergency, the response may be delayed if your left foot is used to depress the brake pedal, potentially resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials.
The exhaust system and exhaust gas can be extremely hot, and may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- Do not move the vehicle backward when the shift lever is in the gear D or P or forward when the shift lever is in gear R or P, otherwise it may cause accidents or damage to the vehicle.
- If exhaust gas is smelt inside the vehicle, open the windows.
Large amounts of exhaust gas in the vehicle can result in a serious health hazard, and even cause an accident.
- Do not shift the shift lever to P, R or N while the vehicle is moving forward, otherwise it will seriously damage the transmission and may cause the vehicle out of control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to N while the vehicle is running, otherwise the engine braking function may not work properly, resulting in an accident.
- Do not turn the engine off while driving.
If the engine is not running, the brake booster etc. will not work normally.
- Please use the engine brake (downshift) function to maintain a safe vehicle speed when going down a steep slope. Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and fail.
- When the vehicle is parked on an inclined road surface, please confirm that the slope is suitable for the EPB function, otherwise please depress the brake pedal and apply the electronic parking brake to prevent the vehicle from moving forward or backward and causing an accident.
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the interior or exterior rear view mirrors while driving. Doing so may result in an accident.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their bodies are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in serious injury or death.

**CAUTIONS****■ When driving on slippery road surfaces**

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire spinning and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- A sudden change in the engine speed, such as engine braking caused by down-shifting, may cause the vehicle to slip and cause an accident.
- After driving over a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brake is functioning properly. Wet brake linings may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brake lining on only one side is wet, the control to the vehicle may also be affected.

■ When operating the shift lever

Be careful not to operate the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.

This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident.

■ When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not run the engine at high speeds.
If the vehicle is in a gear other than P or N, the vehicle may suddenly speed up unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.
If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check if exhaust gas enters the interior of the vehicle.
- Make sure the electronic parking brake functions normally. Otherwise always keep the foot on the brake pedal while the engine is operating to prevent an accident caused by the vehicle creeping.

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, lighters, sprayers or soft drink cans in the car at high temperature, otherwise the following accidents may occur.
 - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or sprayer, and may lead to a fire.
 - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
 - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Always apply the electronic parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, turn off the engine, and lock the vehicle.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is operating or immediately after turning the engine off. Doing so may cause burns.
- Do not leave the engine running in a snow pack where it is snowing.
If the vehicle gets stuck in snow pack while the engine is operating, exhaust gas may accumulate and enter the vehicle. This may lead to a serious health hazard.
- Avoid engine idling at a high speed.
Running the engine at a high speed when the vehicle is stopped may lead to overheating of the exhaust system, thus leading to a fire if there are inflammable material near the vehicle.



CAUTIONS

■ Exhaust gas

- Exhaust gas includes harmful carbon monoxide (CO) that is colorless and odorless. Inhaling massive exhaust gas may lead to a serious health hazard or even death.
- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area, stop the engine. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases may accumulate and enter the vehicle. This may lead to serious health hazard or even death.
- The exhaust system should be checked from time to time. If there are small holes or cracks due to corrosion, damaged joints or abnormal exhaust noise, please contact the FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer for check and repair.

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, if you accidentally change the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gas may accumulate and enter the vehicle, which may seriously endanger the health or even result in death.

■ When braking the vehicle

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side, and parking brake may also fail to hold the vehicle firmly.
- If the power brake assist function does not operate properly, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid long downhills or sharp turns.
In this case, depressing the brake pedal requires more force than usual. The braking distance may also increase.
- If the engine stalls, do not pump the brake pedal. Each time you depress it, part of the pressure used for brake assist is consumed.



NOTICES

■ When driving

- Do not simultaneously depress accelerator pedal and the brake pedal, otherwise the engine output might be limited.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or do not simultaneously depress accelerator pedal and the brake pedal to stop the vehicle on a slope.

■ When parking the vehicle

Always apply the electronic parking brake and shift the shift lever to P when parking the vehicle for a long time. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to creep or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and keep it in the utmost positions for a long time, otherwise the power steering system will be damaged.
- When driving on a bumpy road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

■ If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Please hold on to the steering wheel and slowly depress the brake pedal to reduce the vehicle speed:

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal noise.
- The vehicle will behave abnormally.

Replace the flat tire with a new one.

■ When encountering flooded roads

Please do not drive over the roads with deep water, otherwise the vehicle may suffer the following serious damages.

- Engine stalling.
- Short circuit in electrical components.
- Engine damage caused by water immersion.

Please contact the FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible to have your vehicle checked for the following items when water goes into your vehicle after driving over the roads with water.

- Brake function.
- Engine oil and transmission oil.
- Wheel hub bearing, propshaft, drive shaft and suspension, etc.

Goods and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions for goods and luggage.

- Try your best to store the goods and luggage in the trunk.
- Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Place the weight in the front of the vehicle as much as possible to help maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.



CAUTIONS

■ Things that must not be carried in the trunk

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the trunk:

- A container containing petrol.
- Aerosol cans.
- Other flammable and explosive materials.

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions to avoid serious injury or even death:

- Do not put goods or luggage in the following positions, otherwise the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal may not work normally due to the goods jamming, and they may block the driver's view or hit the driver or passengers, thus causing an accident.
 - At the feet of the driver
 - Front passenger seat or rear seat (when stacking items)
 - Instrument panel
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may move and injure someone in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
- Do not store poorly sealed liquid containers in the trunk.

■ Load and distribution

- Do not overload the vehicle.
- Be sure to place the goods evenly.

Improper placement may result in poor steering or brake control performance, resulting in serious personal injury or even death.

- Do not leave the weight in the trunk for a long period of time.

Leaving the weight in the trunk for a long period of time may affect the performance of the suspension system.

FAW recommends you not to tow the trailer by your vehicle, neither install towing device nor tow wheel chair, small motorcycle and bicycles via towing device. Your vehicle is not designed as a towing trailer, or the carrier installing the towing device.

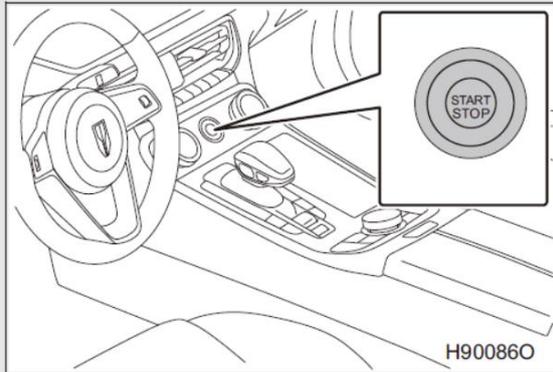


Engine (start) switch

Start the engine or switch the engine (start) switch mode when carrying the smart or Bluetooth key with you.

- Switch the engine (start) switch power supply mode

When the brake pedal is released, the power supply mode can be switched between OFF and IGNITION ON by pressing the engine (start) switch. (each time the switch is pressed, the mode will be switched accordingly)



OFF Mode*1

Light horns, position lights and hazard warning lights can be used.

IGNITION ON Mode

All electrical components can be used.

*1: Please put the gear in P before turning off the engine.

- Start the engine

STEP 1 Check that the gear is in P or N and the electronic parking brake has been applied.

STEP 2 Sit in the driver seat and firmly depress the brake pedal
The indicator light of the engine (start) switch is flashing.

STEP 3 Press the engine (start) switch to start the engine.

- Stopping the engine

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle completely.

STEP 2 Switch the gear to P and confirm that the parking brake has been applied.

STEP 3 Press the engine (start) switch to stop the engine.

- If the engine does not start
The engine immobilizer system may have not been deactivated. (→ P. 48)
- Key battery energy loss
(→ P. 71)
- When the key battery is low
(→ P. 342)
- Conditions affecting operations
(→ P. 84)



CAUTIONS

■ When starting the engine

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver seat. When starting the engine under any circumstances, do not depress the accelerator pedal.

Otherwise it may cause accidents, causing serious injuries or even death.

■ Precautions when driving

When driving, if you want to forcibly stop the engine in an emergency, press and hold the engine switch for more than 3 s, or press the switch 3 times continuously within 2s.

Do not press the engine switch while driving unless in an emergency. If the engine stops while driving, this could lead to an accident.



NOTICES

■ Avoid low battery

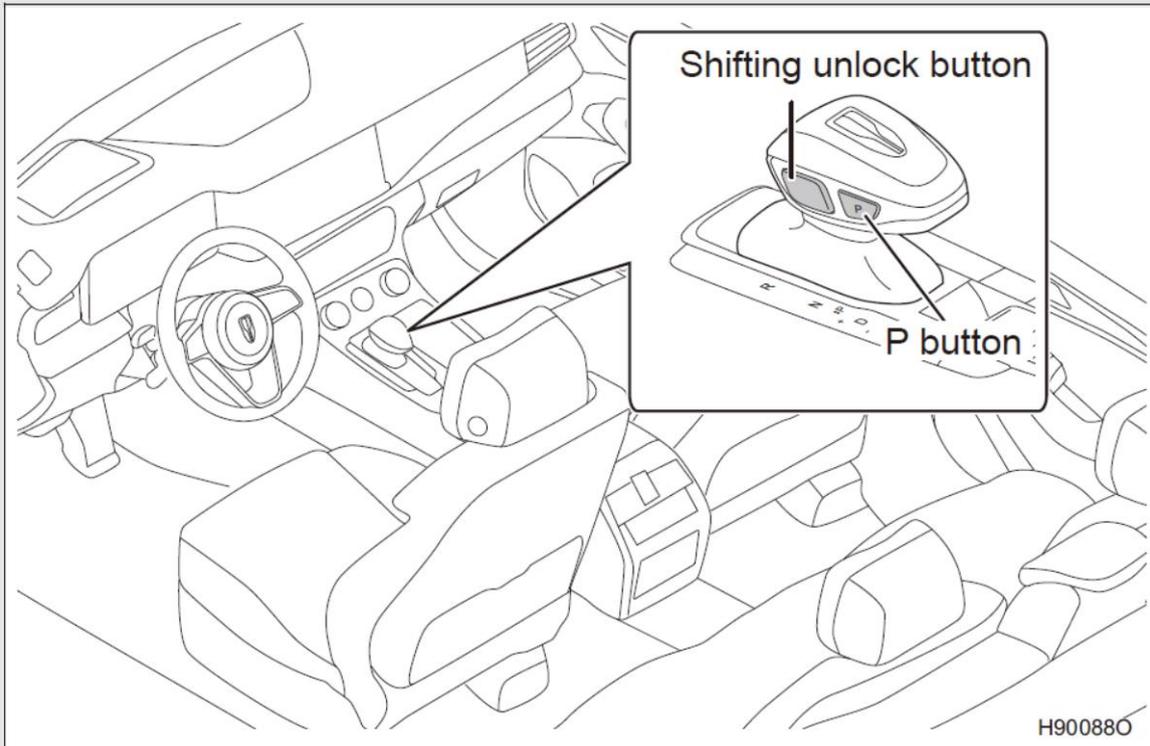
- Do not place the engine switch in "IG-ON" mode for a long time without the engine running.
- When the driver leaves the vehicle, he/she should lock the vehicle and carry the smart key with him/her. Do not leave the keys in the car to prevent the continuous operating of passive entry and the starting system, resulting in low battery power.

■ When starting the engine

- Do not run the cold engine at high speed.
- If the engine is difficult to start or stalls frequently, please contact the FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer to check the vehicle immediately.

Transmission

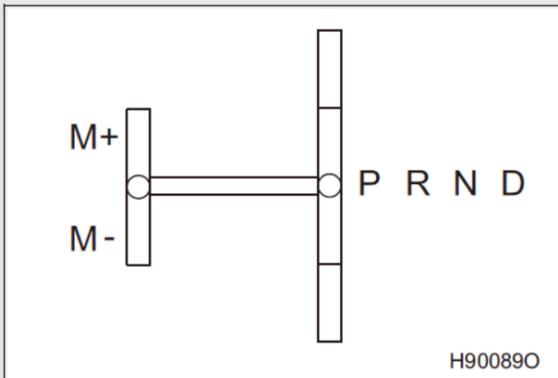
Select a gear position appropriate for driving conditions.



Operate the shift lever gently and make sure that the shifting operation is correct.

After each shift operation, release the shift lever to reset it.

■ Moving the shift lever



The right track is for the automatic mode, with two strokes in each side.

The left track is for the manual mode, with one stroke in each side.

Move the shift lever left and right to switch between the left and right tracks, and only when the gear is in D, can it be switched to manual mode.

Note: If the shift lever is in a gear other than D, it cannot be shifted when the shift lever is in the manual position, you need to move the shift lever to the automatic position as prompted by the instrument cluster.

■ Gear shifting

When the engine started, shift gears as follows.

- P to D: Depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button, and move the shift lever down to the first or second stroke.
- P to N: Depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button, and move the shift lever up to the first stroke.
- P to R: Depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button, and move the shift lever up to the second stroke.
- N to D: When the vehicle is stationary, move the shift lever down to the first or second stroke*.
- N to R: When the vehicle is stationary, press the unlock button and move the shift lever up to the first or second stroke*.

*: If the shift lever stays in N for longer than 1 second, you need to depress the brake pedal to shift gears. And if the shift lever stays in N less than 1 second, you do not need to depress the brake pedal to shift gears.

- D to N: Move the shift lever up to the first stroke.

It cannot shift when the vehicle speed is greater than 50km/h.

- D to R: Depress the brake pedal until the vehicle stops, press the unlock button, and move the shift lever up to the second stroke.
- D to M: Move the shift lever left to the left track. ● M to D: Move the shift lever right to the right track. ● R to N: Move the shift lever down to the first stroke.
- R to D: Depress the brake pedal until the vehicle stops, and move the shift lever down to the second stroke.
- N/D/R to P: Depress the brake pedal until the vehicle stops, and press the P button.

When selecting a gear, make sure that the desired gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.

■ Gear shifting

Gears	Function
P	Parking
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Driving
M+	Manually up-shifting
M-	Manually down-shifting

Gear description

▶ Gear P (parking)

The gear P can lock the transmission and prevent the wheels from turning.



CAUTIONS

■ Operating the shift lever for the first time

The vehicle adopts an electronic shift mechanism, which needs to be operated according to the gear information displayed on the instrument cluster and the information display screen and the above gear operation instructions. Never perform the operations on the basis of sensory awareness to avoid danger.

■ Be sure to shift the gear to gear P and apply the parking brake

It is very dangerous to only shift the gear to P without applying the parking brake. If the gear P fails to completely hold the vehicle, it will move off, causing an accident.

▶ Gear R (reverse)

When the shift lever is in gear R, the vehicle can only move backwards.

▶ Gear N (neutral)

When the shift lever is in gear N, the transmission is not locked. And thus, when parking on a gentle slope, please depress the brake pedal or apply the parking brake, otherwise the vehicle will coast freely.

▶ Gear D (drive)

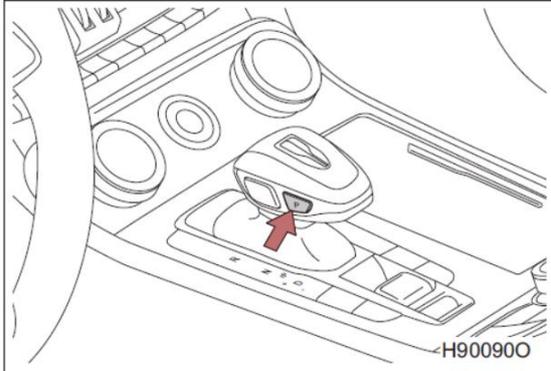
Gear D is the gear usually used when driving, which controls the vehicle to move forward.

▶ Gear M (manual)

Gear M is a manual shift mode. You can shift to M only from gear D. When the gear is in D, move the shift lever left to enter the gear M range. By moving the shift lever, you can shift up or down between M1-M7.

P button

■ When shifting to P



You may shift the gear to P by using the P button.

When the vehicle is stationary, press the P button.

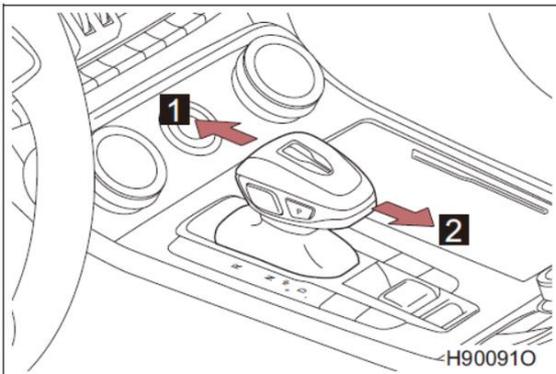
When shifting to P, the gear information is displayed as P on the instrument cluster.

If the vehicle speed is higher than 3km/h, it will not be possible to shift to gear P.

■ When shifting from P to other gears

- Press the unlock button while firmly depressing the brake pedal to operate the shift lever. If the shift lever is operated without depressing the brake pedal, the shift operation is prohibited.
- When shifting gears, make sure that the desired gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Shifting gears in manual mode



1 Up-shifting

2 Down-shifting

The selected gear will be displayed on the multi-function display of the instrument cluster.

- **If the current gear is D/R and the vehicle speed is less than 3km/h, the vehicle will automatically shift to P under the following conditions**
 - When the engine switch is placed in “IG-OFF” mode, the vehicle automatically shifts to gear P.
 - When the driver unfastens the seat belt, releases the brake pedal and opens the door, the vehicle automatically shifts to gear P.
- **In the following cases, the vehicle remains in N gear for towing**

If the current gear is N, place the engine switch in “IG-OFF” mode and the vehicle still stays in N.
- **Gear limit (in manual mode)**

In order to protect the engine and transmission, the gear will be limited during manual shifting according to the engine speed. Therefore, under certain operating conditions, it may not be possible to upshift or downshift even if the shift lever is operated, or automatically upshift or downshift even if the shift lever is not operated.
- **Thermal mode**

When the transmission enters the thermal mode, it will reduce the number of gear shifting to slow down the increase in oil temperature. At this time, the engine speed will increase and the shifting smoothness may change slightly.
- **When stopping the vehicle with the shift lever in M**

Once the vehicle stops, the transmission will automatically downshift to M1.



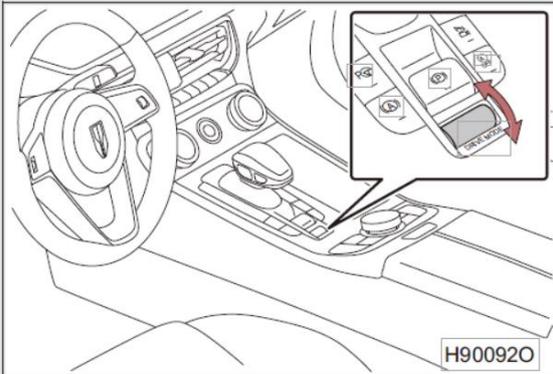
CAUTIONS

- **When driving on slippery roads**

Be careful when accelerating and decelerating suddenly, otherwise it may cause the vehicle to skid or the wheels to spin.

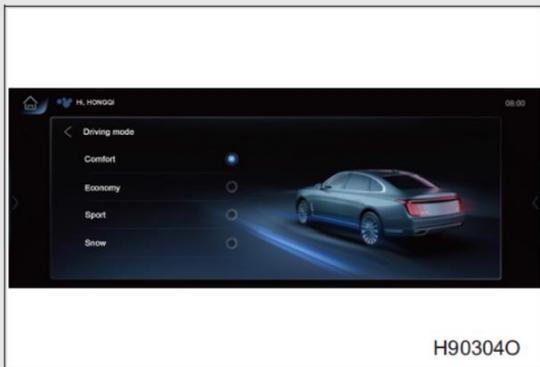
The car is equipped with a driving mode switching system, which can provide different driving modes, under which the vehicle has unique driving performance to meet the drivers' driving needs.

■ Driving mode selection



Method I: Driving mode selection roller

Rolling the driving mode selection roller can cycle through four driving modes: comfort, economy, sports, and snow.



Method II: Multimedia display

Four driving modes: comfort, economy, sports, and snow can be selected in the settings of the audio system.

Comfort mode

In comfort mode, the vehicle has good comfort and is suitable for driving on common urban pavement.

■ Driving characteristics in comfort mode

- Smooth power system output.
- The steering feels light.
- For vehicles equipped with air suspension, the vehicle height is automatically adjusted to [standard].
- For vehicles equipped with CDC shock absorber, the shock absorber is relatively soft with high comfort.

Eco mode

In economy mode, the vehicle has good economy and is suitable for driving on common urban pavement.

- Driving characteristics in Eco mode
 - The transmission adopts a fuel-efficient shift strategy.
 - For vehicles equipped with air suspension, the vehicle height is automatically adjusted to [standard].
 - For vehicles equipped with CDC shock absorber, the shock absorber stiffness is in the default state with relatively balanced road sense.

Sport mode

In sport mode, the vehicle has good power performance and is suitable for driving on expressway or common urban pavement.

- Driving characteristics in sport mode
 - Fast acceleration and strong power output.
 - Strong steering movement.
 - For vehicles equipped with air suspension, the vehicle height is automatically adjusted to [low].
 - For vehicles equipped with CDC shock absorber, the shock absorber is relatively hard with strong road sense.

Snow mode

The snow mode is suitable for driving on the roads with low adhesion after snowing, slippery grass and gravel roads.

- Driving characteristics in snow mode
 - Gentle power output, reducing vehicle skidding.
 - For vehicles equipped with air suspension, the vehicle height is automatically adjusted to [standard].
 - For vehicles equipped with CDC shock absorber, the shock absorber stiffness is in the default state with relatively balanced road sense.

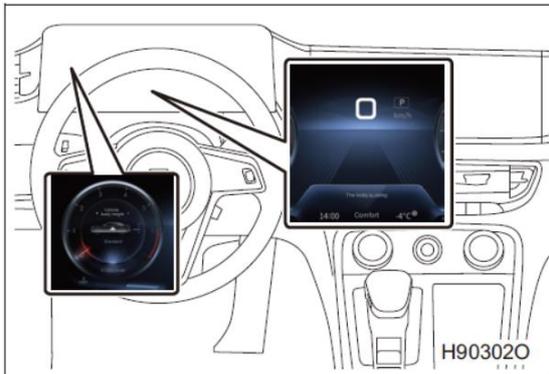
-
- Conditions set for driving mode switching
 - The engine switch is turned to "IG-ON" mode.
 - This system and related systems are fault-free.
 - Working conditions of driving mode system
 - With the driving mode selected, the driver may know the current working status of the driving mode system through the information displayed in the instrument cluster.

**NOTICES**

- **Do not use snow mode on common urban pavement or highways. This type of driving mode is only designed for special road conditions. Long-term use on the above roads may damage the drive train.**
- **Precautions while switching the driving modes**
 - To ensure driving safety, please switch the driving mode when the vehicle is parked or driving at a low speed on a good road.
 - The driving mode switching system has a self-protection function. Activating the driving mode may damage the vehicle and affect driving safety if its working conditions are not met. Failure to switch to the target mode may be caused by the system's self-protection function, and this is normal.
 - When the working conditions are met, and the driving mode system still does not work normally, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi dealer immediately to check the vehicle.
 - The driving mode system cannot replace the driver's judgment on the driving environment. The driver must always control the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.

The vehicle can be maintained at different height levels by adjusting the air suspension, thus making different ground clearances.

Adjusting the air suspension



With the engine started, all doors, trunk lid and hood closed, the vehicle height can be adjusted manually through the settings of the audio system; the vehicle will also be automatically adjusted according to the driving mode and speed during driving.

During the adjustment, the instrument cluster displays the prompt message "The body is rising/lowering", and the prompt message disappears after the adjustment is completed. The air suspension height level can also be adjusted through the buttons on the steering wheel.

Air suspension height level

- [Very high] (+45mm): The height set for the working conditions such as slowly driving over the obstacles, wading driving, etc., and is also the maximum vehicle height that the vehicle can reach. In order to protect the relevant parts of the air suspension, this height should not be used for a long period of time.
 - Entrance mode:
 - When the vehicle speed is less than 5km/h, set the vehicle height to [very high] through the display of the audio system.
 - Exit mode:
 - When the driving mode changes, the vehicle height is automatically adjusted to the default height of the corresponding driving mode (the default height of comfort mode, economy mode, and snow mode is [standard], and the default height of sports mode is [low]).
 - Other heights selected through the audio system display.
 - When the vehicle speed is greater than 20km/h, the vehicle height will drop to [high] height.
 - It will automatically drop to the [standard] height when the vehicle is powered off.
- [High] (+25mm): The height set for the working conditions such as slowly driving over the obstacles, wading driving, etc.
 - Entrance mode:
 - When the vehicle speed is less than 60km/h, set the vehicle height to [high] through the display of the audio system.
 - When the vehicle height is [very high] and the vehicle speed is greater than 20km/h, the vehicle height is automatically adjusted to [high].

- Exit mode:
 - When the driving mode changes, the vehicle height is automatically adjusted to the default height of the corresponding driving mode (the default height of comfort mode, economy mode, and snow mode is [standard], and the default height of sports mode is [low]).
 - Other heights selected through the audio system display (entrance conditions for other heights must be met).
 - When the vehicle speed is greater than 80km/h, the vehicle height will drop to [standard] height.
 - It will automatically drop to the [standard] height when the vehicle is powered off.
- [Standard] (0mm): Standard settings for comfort mode, Eco mode, and snow mode.
 - Entrance mode:
 - Driving mode switched to comfort mode.
 - With the vehicle speed less than 80km/h, switch the driving mode to economy mode or snow mode.
 - With the driving mode in economy mode or snow mode, the vehicle height at [low] height, the vehicle speed less than 70km/h, the vehicle height automatically rises to the [standard] height after a period of time.
 - With the driving mode in economy mode or snow mode, the vehicle height at [low] height, the vehicle speed less than 35km/h, the vehicle height automatically rises to the [standard] height.
 - When the driving mode is in the comfort mode, set the vehicle height to [standard] through the audio system display.
 - When the driving mode is a mode other than comfort mode and the vehicle speed is less than 80km/h, the vehicle height is set to [standard] through the audio system display.
 - Exit mode:
 - Driving mode switched to sport mode.
 - Other heights selected through the audio system display (entrance conditions for other heights must be met).
 - When the driving mode is a mode other than comfort mode, the vehicle speed is greater than 100km/h, the vehicle height will automatically drop to the [low] height after a period of time.
- [Low] (-20mm): Standard setting for sport mode.
 - Entrance mode:
 - Driving mode switched to sport mode.
 - When the driving mode is in sport mode and vehicle height is not at the [low] height, the vehicle height is set to [low] through the audio system display.
 - When the driving mode is a mode other than comfort mode, the vehicle speed is greater than 100km/h, the vehicle height will automatically drop to the [low] height after a period of time.
 - Exit mode:
 - Driving mode switched to comfort mode.
 - With the vehicle speed less than 80 km/h, switch the driving mode to economy mode or snow mode.
 - Other heights selected through the audio system display (entrance conditions for other heights must be met).
 - With the driving mode in economy mode or snow mode, the vehicle speed less than 70km/h, the vehicle height rises to the [standard] height after a period of time.

- With the driving mode in economy mode or snow mode, the vehicle speed less than 35km/h, the vehicle height rises to the [standard] height immediately.

■ **When adjusting the suspension**

- If the engine switch is turned off during the process of adjusting suspension, the adjustment will be interrupted immediately, and the suspension will automatically readjust to the previously set target height after the engine restarted.
- With the height at [high] or [very high], turn off the engine switch, and the suspension will automatically adjust to the [standard] height.
- The height can be adjusted to the selected height level only when the current vehicle speed does not exceed the speed limit for the selected suspension height. For example, if you select [High], the vehicle speed should be less than 5 km/h.



CAUTIONS

- **When the air suspension system fails, the warning light in the combination instrument comes on with corresponding prompt message.**

Ignoring the warning lights and prompt messages may lead to an accident and personal injury.

If the air suspension system fails, please have your vehicle checked by the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.



NOTICES

- **Suspension height level failed to be adjusted normally**

When the a certain driving mode is selected, in order to ensure the safety of the vehicle, the air suspension system will determine whether to respond to the request according to the current driving conditions. When the system determines that the current working conditions do not meet the adjustment conditions, the suspension will not be adjusted, and this is normal.

Lifting mode

The vehicle has a lifting mode. If you need to lift a single wheel or the whole vehicle, you should enter the lifting mode. After entering the lifting mode, all air suspension adjustment functions are disabled. And after the maintenance is completed, you must exit the lifting mode.

■ Entering the lifting mode

With the engine switch placed in the "IG-ON" mode, touch the [lifting mode] button under the vehicle height interface of the audio system, the combination instrument displays the prompt message "air suspension system is in the lifting mode", and then manually enter the lifting mode; also, the system can automatically recognize and enter the lifting mode. When the vehicle is lifted (single wheel or whole vehicle), it will automatically enter the lifting mode.

■ Exiting the lifting mode

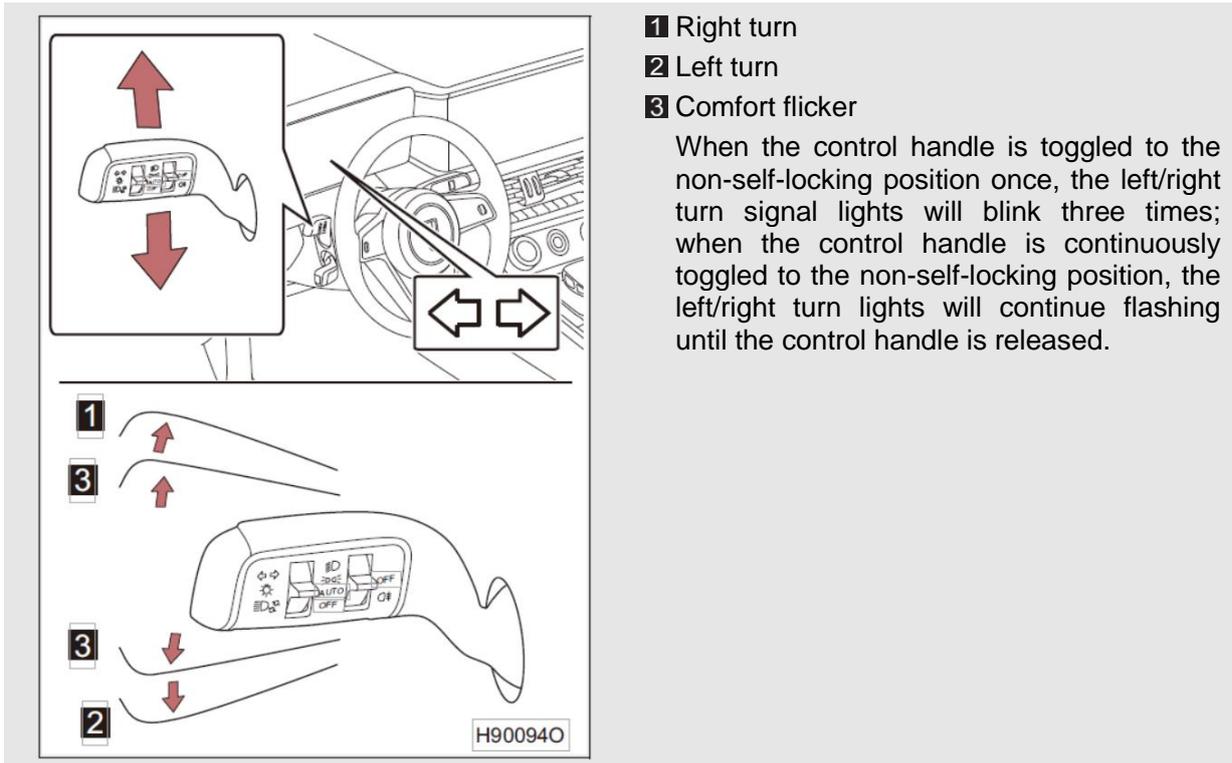
With the engine switch placed in the "IG-ON" mode, and the vehicle in the lifting mode, touch the [Exiting the lifting mode] button under the body height interface of the audio system and then, the vehicle exits the lifting mode, and the prompt message "Air suspension system is in the lifting mode" disappears; when the vehicle speed is higher than 5 km/h, the vehicle automatically exits the lifting mode.



NOTICES

- It is recommended to manually enter and exit the lifting mode.

Turn signal light control handle



- 1 Right turn
- 2 Left turn
- 3 Comfort flicker

When the control handle is toggled to the non-self-locking position once, the left/right turn signal lights will blink three times; when the control handle is continuously toggled to the non-self-locking position, the left/right turn lights will continue flashing until the control handle is released.

- **Turn signals can be operated when**

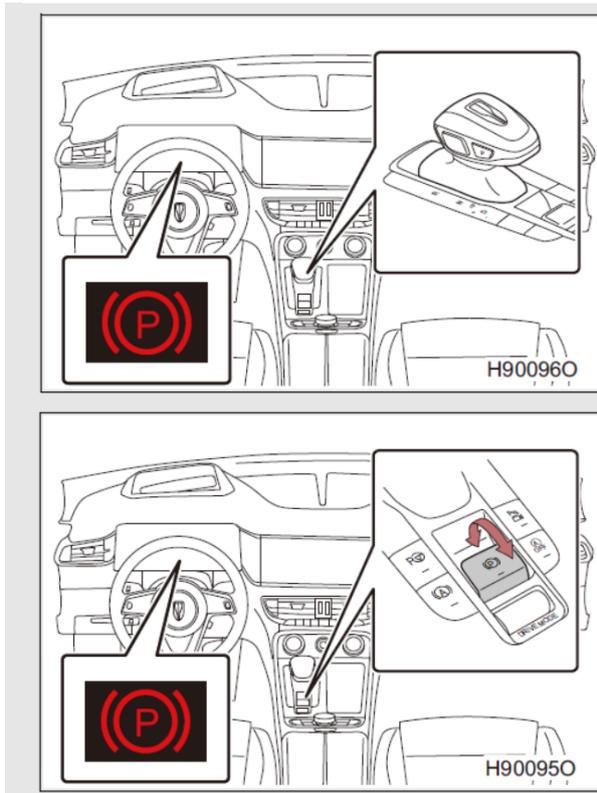
The engine switch is turned to "IG-ON" mode.

- **Turn signal light and hazard warning lamp control**

When the turn signal light is on, press the hazard warning lamp switch and the turn signal lights on the left and right sides will flash at the same time. Press the hazard warning lamp switch again to return to the working state as the turn signal lights.

When the hazard warning lamp is on and the engine switch is placed in the "IG-ON" mode, turn on the turn signal light and the turn signal light will work, and the hazard warning lamp will stop working. Turn off the turn signal lights and return to the working state as the danger alarm lights.

EPB Electronic Parking Brake



Automatically apply/release the electronic parking brake

Depress the brake pedal and shift the shift lever to P, the electronic parking brake applies automatically; and when shifting the gear from P to D/R, the electronic parking brake automatically releases.

Manually apply/release the electronic parking brake

Depress the brake pedal to confirm that the vehicle is at a standstill, lift up the electronic parking brake switch to apply the electronic parking brake; place the engine switch in "IG-ON" mode, depress the brake pedal, and press the electronic parking brake switch to release the electronic parking brake.

■ Other functions of EPB

- Hill Hold Control (HHC): With the seat belt fastened, doors closed, the electronic parking brake applied before the vehicle moves off, the system will automatically release EPB according to the torque balance principle, so that the vehicle will not slide on the slope and start smoothly.
- Electronic deceleration control: When the vehicle is running, lift up the EPB switch continuously and the vehicle will brake until it stops.

■ Power-off AUTO HOLD

- When the driver stops the vehicle and turns off the engine switch, EPB applies automatically.

The power-off AUTO HOLD can be set to turn on and off in the settings of the audio system. (→ P. 228)

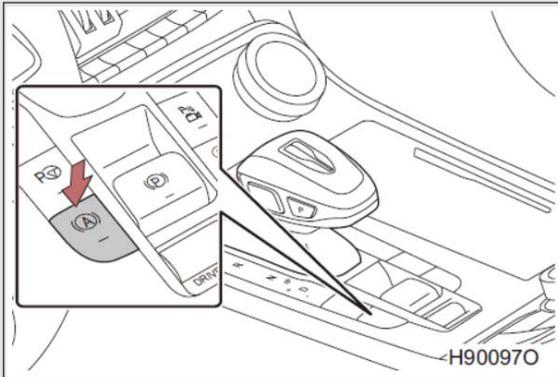


NOTICES

■ Precautions before driving

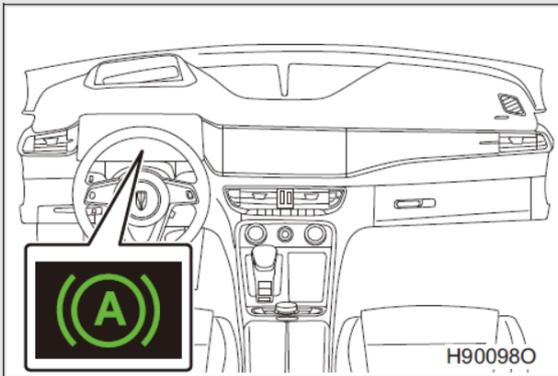
- Release the electronic parking brake completely. In the event of a failure (e.g. an electrical failure), the rear brake disc locked by the EPB can only be unlocked mechanically. It is recommended that you contact the FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer for the operation.
- When the EPB is not released, the red indicator lights up. Driving the vehicle now will cause the brake components to overheat, which will affect the brake performance and aggravate the brake wear.
- If the road condition is not suitable for parking, the multi-function display of the combination instrument will prompt “Too steep to park”.

When the Auto Hold function is ready, the automatic parking function will be activated when the brake pedal is depressed to stop the vehicle. Release the brake pedal, and the vehicle will remain braked. When the accelerator pedal is depressed with the shift lever at D, the system will release the Auto Hold to realize a smooth move-off.



Auto Hold ready state

With the driver door closed, the seat belt fastened, press the Auto Hold button, and the Auto Hold function will be ready and the button indicator will light up.



Activating the Auto Hold

When you depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and release the brake pedal, the Auto Hold will be activated. At this time, the Auto Hold indicator lights up on the multi-function display of the combination instrument.

■ AUTO HOLD function

- Depress the brake pedal and press the Auto Hold button again to turn off the Auto Hold function of the vehicle.
- Auto Hold can also serve as a Hill Hold Control (HHC) function. The Auto Hold function may not hold the vehicle when it is on a steep slope. In that case it is necessary to apply the brake manually.
- After the AUTO HOLD is activated for a period of time, the EPB electronic parking brake will take over the function of AUTO HOLD.

■ Operating conditions

- The driver side door closed.
- The driver fastened his seat belt.
- Start the vehicle and press the Auto Hold button (indicator lights up).
- Driver depresses the brake pedal until the vehicle is stopped, and then releases the brake pedal.



CAUTIONS

■ **When parking on slippery road surfaces**

If the road holding of the tires is exceeded, the AUTO HOLD function cannot hold the vehicle. Do not use this system on slippery roads.

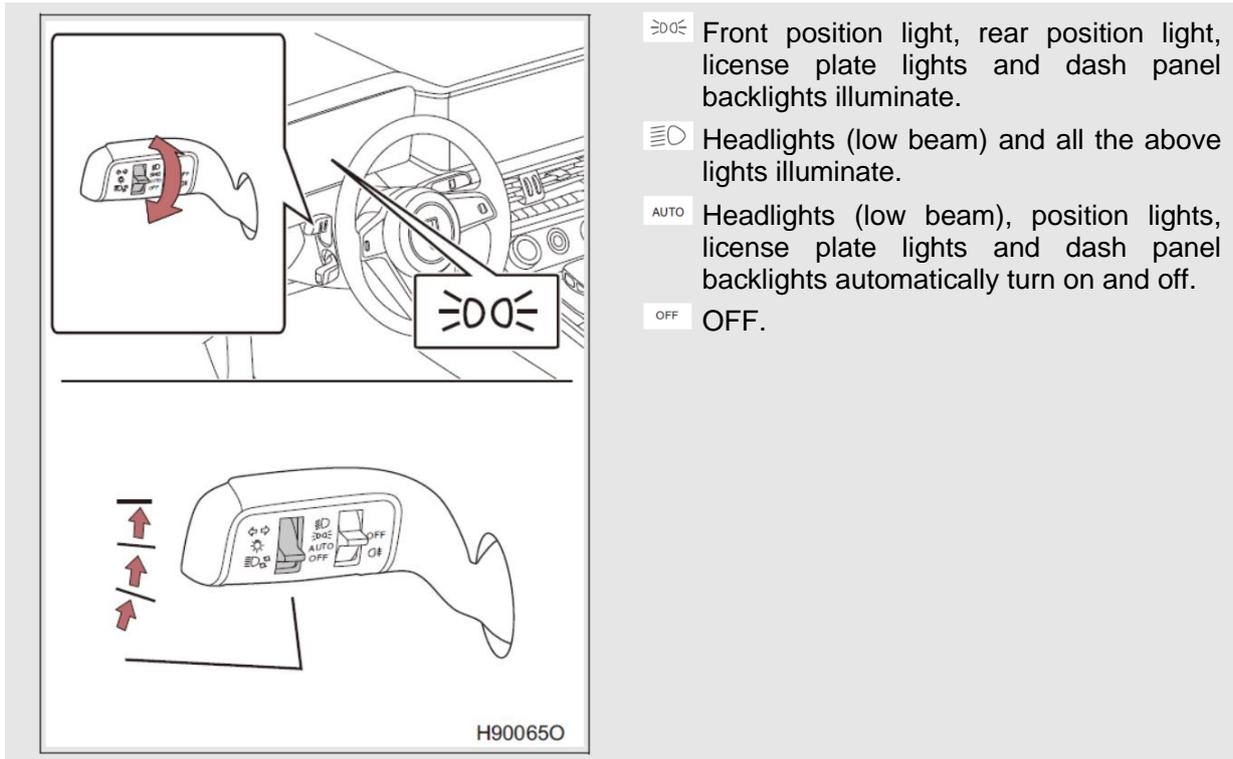


NOTICES

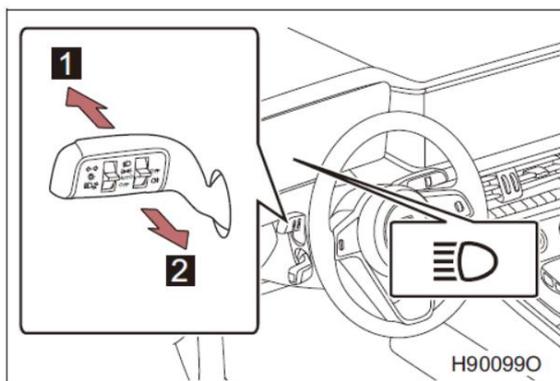
■ **When parking the vehicle**

AUTO HOLD function of the vehicle cannot be used for long-term parking. If you need to park for a long period of time, please apply EPB electronic parking brake. Switching the engine switch to "IG-OFF" mode when the vehicle is automatically parked may release the brakes and cause the vehicle to move. When turning off the engine switch, you should depress the brake pedal, apply the electronic parking brake and shift the gear to P.

4-3. Operating lights and wipers Headlight switch



Turning on the high beam



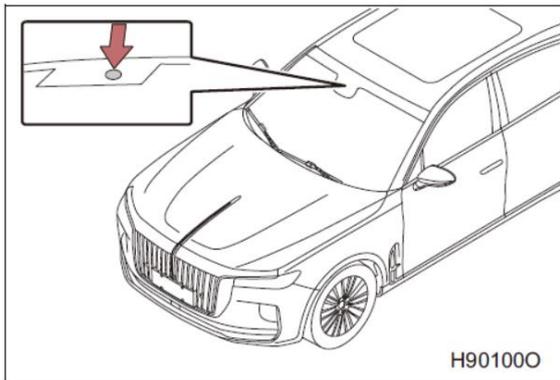
1 When the headlight (low beam) is turned on, push the light control handle forward to turn on the high beam; Pull the handle back to its original position to turn off the high beam.

2 Pull backward the light control handle to turn on the high beam; release the light control handle to turn off the high beam.

■ Daytime running light system

During daytime driving, in order to make it easier for other drivers to see your car, as long as the engine switch is turned to "IG-ON" mode and the position light is turned off, the daytime driving light will automatically turn on.

■ Rain & light sensor



The sensor may not function properly if an object blocks the sensor, or anything affixed to the windshield blocks the sensor.

Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the ambient light intensity and may cause the automatic headlight system and automatic wiper malfunctions.

■ Headlight leveling system

The headlight leveling system can automatically adjust the headlight beam height according to the number of occupants, the load of the vehicle and the road environment to ensure that the headlights will not interfere with other road users.

Follow Me Home*

With the engine switch placed in the IG-ON mode and the low beam illuminated, the lights continue to illuminate for a period of time after the engine switch is switched to the IG-OFF mode and then automatically goes off. The Follow Me Home can be set to turn on and off and with the illuminating time in the settings of the audio system.

(→ P. 227)

Illuminated entry system *

With the engine switch placed in the IG-ON mode and the low beam illuminated, lock the doors after switching to the IG-OFF mode, and the lights will illuminate for a period of time and then automatically goes off when unlocking the doors again. The illuminated entry system can be set to turn on and off and with the illuminating time in the settings of the audio system. (→ P. 227)

Corner lights

When the vehicle is running at low speed with the headlights illuminated, the driver operates the turn signal switch or operates the steering wheel to turn, and the corresponding side corner lights illuminate automatically to assist the driver in driving. When shifting to the R gear, the driver operates the turn signal switch or operates the steering wheel to turn, and the corner lights on both sides of the vehicle illuminate at the same time to improve the lighting effect of the surrounding area when reversing.

The ADB intelligent high-beam control system can automatically control the corresponding LED particles in the high-beam lights to turn on or off according to the surrounding road conditions when the vehicle speed is greater than 80km/h (km/h), providing the best view and ensuring the driving safety.

Intelligent high beam control system indicator

- When the ADB system working indicator  (blue) on the multi-function display of the combination instrument illuminated, it indicates that the intelligent high beam control system is on and working.
- When the ADB system working indicator  (white) on the multi-function display of the combination instrument illuminated, it indicates that the intelligent high beam control system is on, but not met in working conditions, and is standby.

Intelligent high beam control system ON/OFF

The intelligent high beam control system can be set to turn on and off in the settings of the audio system.

(→ P. 227)

Operating conditions of intelligent high beam control system

- Operating conditions of intelligent high beam control system
 - Operating pre-conditions of intelligent high beam control system:
When all of the following conditions are met, the intelligent high beam control system can work normally.
 - The intelligent high beam is set to ON in the audio system.
 - The engine switch is turned to "IG-ON" mode.
 - The headlight switch is placed at AUTO.
 - The high beam handle is in the "high beam off" position.
 - Rain & light sensor is fault-free.
 - ADB system is fault-free.
 - Standby conditions of intelligent high beam control system:
When any of the following conditions is met, the system enters the standby state and the high beam is completely turned off.
 - The vehicle speed is less than 60km/h.
 - There are too many obstacles ahead, and ADB failed to adjust adaptively.
 - The low beam is turned off (automatically turns off at AUTO, not manually turned off).
 - The system recognizes that the environment is foggy.
 - The area in front of the vehicle is not dark.
 - Operating conditions of intelligent high beam control system:
When all the following conditions are met, the system enters the working state, the high beam is turned on, and the lighting area is automatically adjusted.
 - The vehicle speed is higher than 80km/h.
 - The low beam is turned on (automatically turns on at AUTO, not manually turned on);

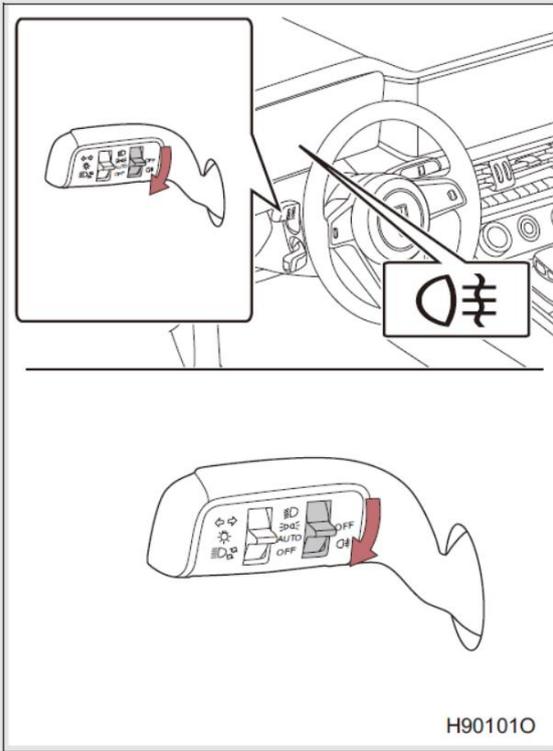
- The system does not recognize that the environment is foggy.
 - The area in front of the vehicle is dark.
 - There is no car ahead with tail lights on and oncoming car with headlights on.
 - There is no traffic sign on the road ahead.
- Under the following circumstances, the system may not be able to accurately detect the ambient brightness level, which may cause the intelligent high-beam control system not to work properly. In this case, please switch between high beam and low beam manually.
- The rain & light sensor or advanced driver assistance system camera is faulty.
 - The windshield is blurred by moisture, ice, dirt, etc.
 - The windshield is cracked or damaged.
 - Due to fog, heavy rain, snow and other reasons, the horizon ahead is not clear.
 - The camera becomes deformed or dirty.
 - The camera temperature is extremely high.
 - The ambient brightness is equivalent to the brightness of the headlight, tail light or fog light.
 - Headlights or taillights of the vehicle ahead are off, dirty, decolored, incorrect in alignment, or there is only one bulb working.
 - When driving through an area with intermittent changes in brightness.
 - Frequent or repeated driving on uphill and downhill roads, bumpy roads or uneven roads (e.g. stone paved roads, gravel roads, etc.).
 - Frequent or repeated turning operations or driving on winding roads.
 - There is a highly reflective object, such as a sign or mirror, in front of the vehicle.
 - The rear end of the vehicle ahead is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck.
 - The headlight of the vehicle is damaged, dirty, or misaligned.
 - When the oncoming car turns off its headlights and turns on the fog lights.
 - The vehicle tilts due to flat tires, towing a trailer, etc.
 - The high beam and the low beam are repeatedly switched in an abnormal way.
 - There is a light in front of the vehicle similar to a headlight or taillight.
 - There is light reflection on the road such as wet, snow and ice roads.



CAUTIONS

- Don't rely on automatic high beam. **Be sure to drive safely and observe the surrounding environment. If necessary, turn the high beam on or off manually.**

The fog lights improve visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in the rain and fog.



Toggle the fog lamp switch down to turn on the rear fog lamp, toggle the switch again to turn off the rear fog lamp

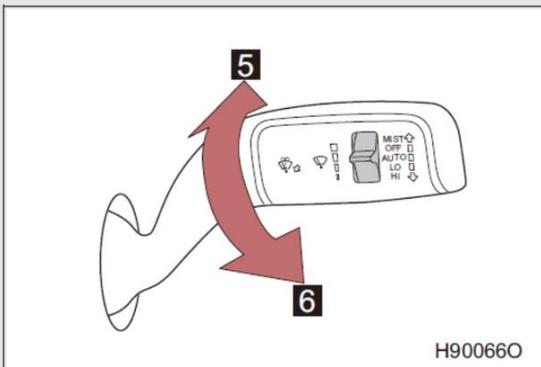
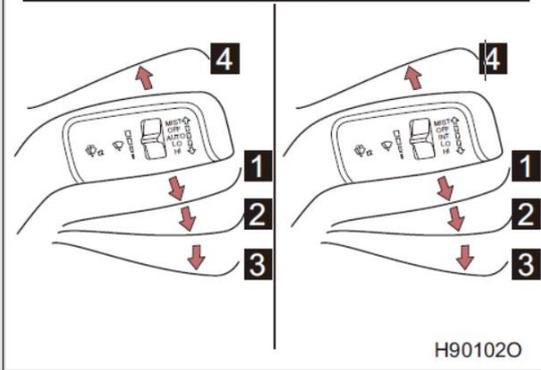
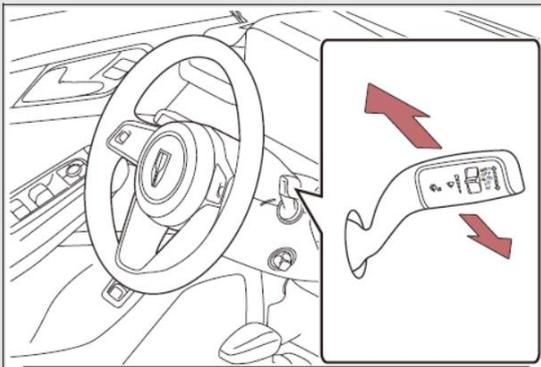
H901010

■ **Operating conditions of fog lights**

The engine switch is placed in the IG-ON mode, and the headlights are turned on.

Front windshield wiper and washer

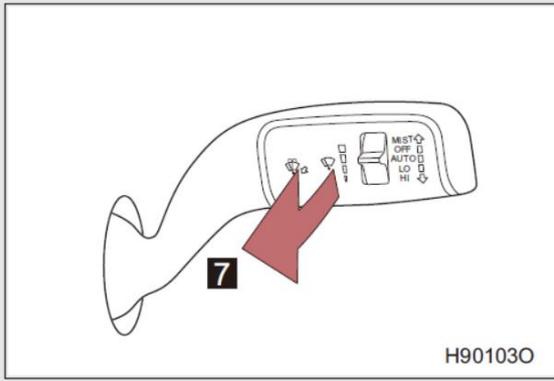
When the wiper control handle is at Auto, if the rain is detected by the light & rain sensor, the wiper will automatically function. The system automatically adjusts the wiper speed according to rainfall and vehicle speed.



- 1** Auto * - automatically adjusts the wiper speed based on rainfall.
(with rain & light sensor)
- INT *- wipe intermittently.
(without rain & light sensor)
- 2** LO — Wipe at low speed.
- 3** HI — Wipe at high speed.
- 4** MIST- one wiping cycle at low speed.

When the hood is opened, the wipers will not operate even if the control lever is pulled manually.

- 5** Rain sensing sensitivity increased/the automatic wiping interval becomes shorter
- 6** Rain sensing sensitivity decreased/the automatic wiping interval becomes longer



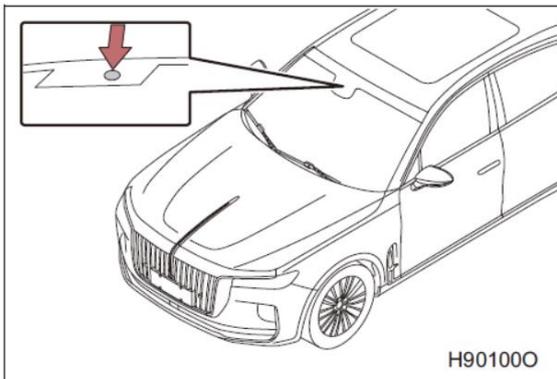
7 Cleaning/wiping operation.

Pull the wiper control lever toward you for cleaning the front windshield.

■ Operating conditions of front windshield wiper and washer

The engine switch is in "IG-ON" mode and the hood is closed.

■ Rain & light sensor



The light & rain sensor judges the size of the rainfall.

■ If no windshield washer fluid sprayed out

Check for washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid tank. Check that the washer nozzle is not blocked.

■ If the front windshield wiper blade needs to be replaced

- The wiper can be set to the maintenance position in the settings of the audio system. (→ P. 226)
- Turn off the engine switch and switch the wiper control handle to MIST position within 10s to set the wiper to the maintenance position.
- When the wiper is at the maintenance position, set the engine switch to IG-ON mode, operate the wiper control handle to a position other than MIST or turn off the wiper maintenance position in the vehicle settings of the audio system to exit the maintenance position.

**CAUTIONS****■ Warnings regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode**

In the AUTO mode, if you touch the sensor, forcibly pull the interior rearview mirror, or the windshield bears strong shake (for example, by forcibly striking the windshield), the windshield wiper may accidentally move. Take care that your fingers or anything else should not become pinched in the windshield wipers.

■ Precautions regarding the use of washer fluid

In cold weather, do not use washer fluid until the front windshield has warmed. The washer fluid may freeze on the front windshield, resulting in the reduced visibility. This may cause an accident, which can lead to serious injury or even death.

■ Only windshield washer liquid filled in the washer liquid tank

It is very dangerous to use the engine coolant as washer fluid. If you spray it on the windshield, it will stain the windshield, obstruct your sight and may cause an accident.

■ In freezing weather, windshield washer fluid mixed with antifreeze protective agent should be used

In freezing weather, it is very dangerous to use windshield washer fluid that does not contain antifreeze protective agent. Because it may freeze on the windshield, obstructing your vision and causing an accident. In addition, make sure to operate the defroster to fully heat the windshield before spraying the washer fluid.

■ The wiper blade should be replaced in time

The use of worn or dirty wiper blades will greatly reduce the clarity of the front view and affect the driving safety. Therefore, wiper blades that are damaged or worn and failed to operate normally must be replaced in time.

**NOTICES****■ When the windshield is dry**

Do not use the wipers, as the wiper blades may be damaged.

■ If no washer fluid sprayed from the nozzle

It may cause damage to the washer fluid pump if the lever is pulled and held toward you.

■ When the windshield is dry

Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object, otherwise the nozzle will be damaged.

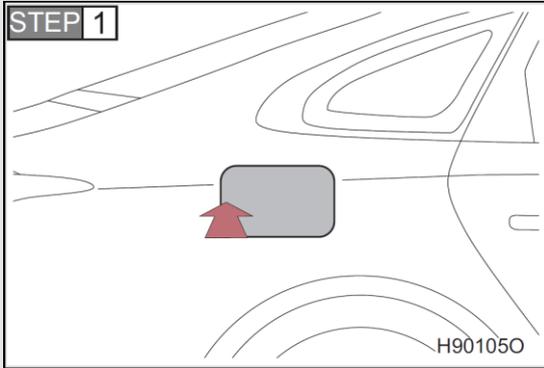
Opening the fuel tank cover

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cover.

- Before filling fuel

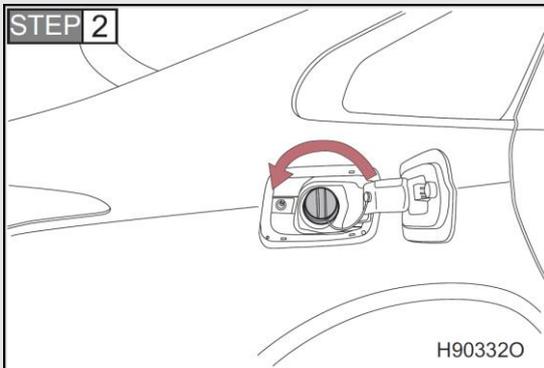
Depress the brake pedal, place the shift lever to P, apply parking brake, turn off the engine switch, and ensure that all doors and windows are closed.

- Opening the filler cap.

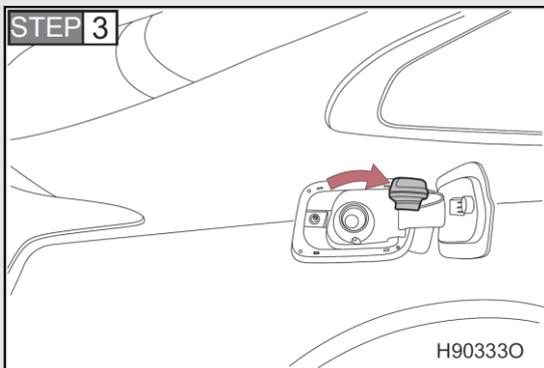


Press the filler cap and open it.

The filler cap can only be opened when the vehicle is unlocked.

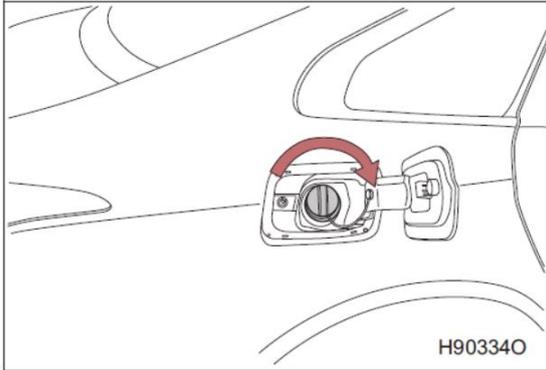


Turn counterclockwise to open the fuel tank cover.



Hang the fuel tank cover on the back of the filler cap.

Closing the fuel tank cover



When reinstalling the fuel tank cover, it should be screwed until you hear a “click” sound.

■ **Fuel type**

Use only RON 95 and above unleaded petrol.

■ **Fuel tank capacity**

About 62L.

■ **When failing to open the filler cap.**

In the event of failure to open the filler cap due to low battery power or other reasons, please contact the FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer.

**CAUTIONS****■ Filling fuel**

Observe the following precautions while refuelling the vehicle:

- Before opening the filler cap and the fuel tank cover, discharge any static electricity from your body. The sparks resulting from static electricity may cause fire resulting in burns.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- When opening the fuel tank lid, hold tight the lid and turn it slowly to remove it. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the tank. If a whooshing sound is heard when the fuel tank cover is loosened, please do not continue. Wait until the sound vanishes before removing the cover.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel because the fuel contains harmful substances.
- Do not smoke or use cell phone while refueling the vehicle, or else it may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not touch other people or objects with static electricity, otherwise it may cause static electricity to accumulate and ignite the fuel.
- Observe all CAUTIONS announced in the gas station.

■ Precautions when replacing the fuel tank cover

Do not use products other than the original fuel tank cover provided by FAW, otherwise it may lead to poor sealing and further resulting in accidents.

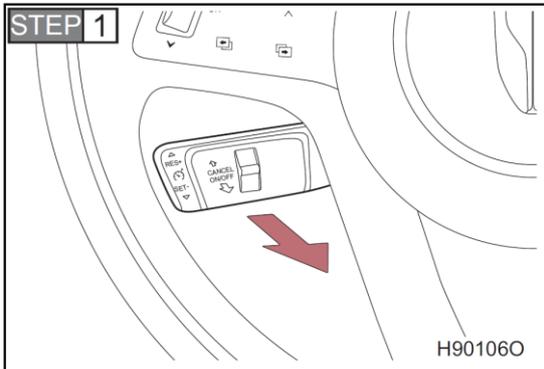
**NOTICES****■ Filling fuel**

When filling, do not spill the fuel, otherwise it may damage the vehicle, for example, causing the exhaust system failure or damaging the fuel system components or body paint.

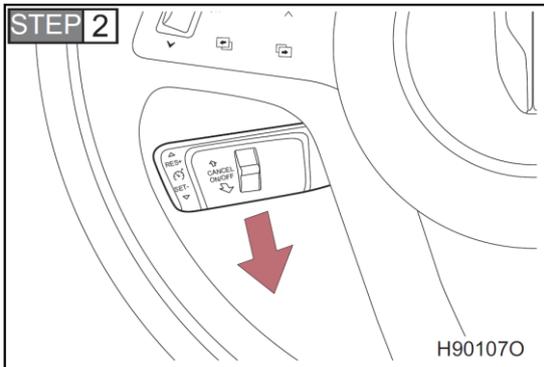
Constant speed cruise control*

Use the constant speed cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal. It is recommended that the set vehicle speed does not exceed the actual road speed limit.

Setting the constant speed cruise control

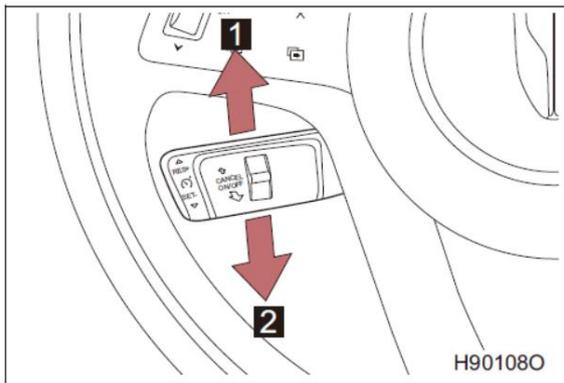


Pull the cruise control handle toward you to the "ON/OFF" position and then release the handle to activate the cruise control.



Accelerate or decelerate to the desired vehicle speed, move the cruise control handle down to the "SET-" position and then release the handle to set the current vehicle speed as the cruise speed.

■ Adjusting the vehicle speed



1 Increasing the speed

Push once to increase the speed by 5km/h; Push and hold the lever to increase the vehicle speed continuously. If the lever is released, the speed shown on the multifunction display screen of the combination instrument is the target speed.

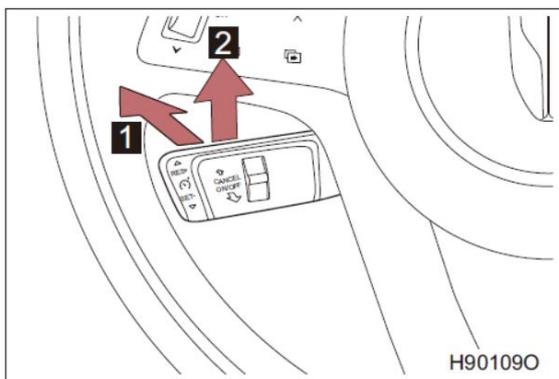
2 Decreasing the speed

Push once to decrease the speed by 5km/h;

Push and hold the lever to decrease the vehicle speed continuously. If the lever is released, the speed shown on the multifunction display screen of the combination instrument is the target speed.

Note: If the current set speed is not the multiple of 5, it automatically becomes a multiple of 5 first when adjusting.

Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



1 Cancel

Push the cruise control handle from you to the "CANCEL" position.

The cruise control could also be canceled when

- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The shift lever is switched to N.

2 Resume

To resume the cruise control and return to the set speed, push the handle up to "RES+" position and then release it.

- Cruise control can be set when
 - The shift lever is in D.
 - The vehicle speed is higher than 30 km/h.
- Cruise control can be suspended when
 - The vehicle needs to overtake, depress the accelerator pedal deeply for no more than 1 min to suspend the cruise control, and resume it after releasing the accelerator pedal.
- If the cruise control indicator light flashes
Deactivate the constant speed cruise function, and then reactivate it again. If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Please have your vehicle checked by the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.



CAUTIONS

- **When setting the cruise speed, in order to ensure driving safety, it is recommended not to set a speed higher than 130km/h. It is very dangerous to use the cruise function when the vehicle is driving at high speed. The driver is recommended to drive the vehicle actively.**
- **To avoid activating the cruise control by mistake**
If this function is disabled, the cruise control system (CCS) is deactivated.
- **When adjusting the speed**
Drive with caution when pressing and holding the cruise control handle to adjust the speed.
- **Situations unsuitable for cruise control**
Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.
 - In heavy traffic
 - On roads with sharp bends
 - On winding roads
 - On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
 - On steep hills, such as using cruise control on steep slope may cause the vehicle speed to exceed the target speed of cruise control.
- **The driver is the leading operator of the vehicle, who is superior to the constant speed cruise control system. When the driver depresses the accelerator and brake pedals while in constant speed cruise state, the driver will control the vehicle. The driver must always control the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.**
- **The constant speed cruise control system is only a driving assist system. Do not rely on it more than necessary. Drive with caution if necessary.**

ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) can comprehensively control speed and distance to the target vehicle to alleviate the burdens and increase the comfortableness of the driver within a speed range of 0~140km/h. In addition, the system can also automatically switch between CCS and ACC depending on whether there is a moving vehicle ahead. Due to complicated actual driving environments, under certain circumstances, the driver can intervene at any time as required, actively control the distance to the target vehicle. If necessary, ACC will remind the driver by sound and light warning.

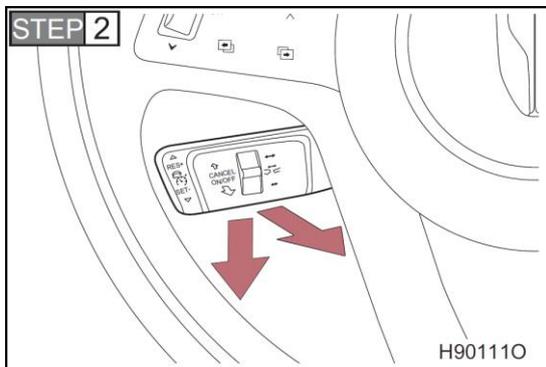
When ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) detects that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance becomes shorter than the set value, the vehicle automatically decelerates; when the vehicles ahead accelerate or drive away, the vehicle accelerates to the set cruise speed.

Setting the adaptive cruise control



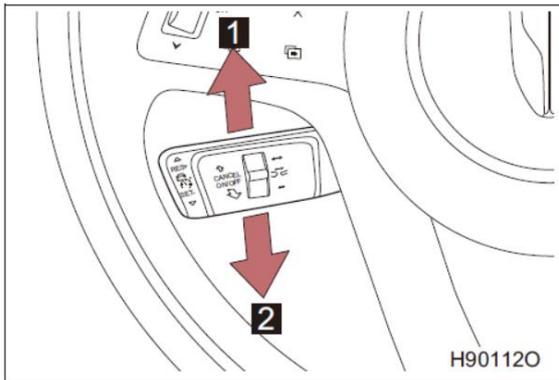
Turn on the cruise function and set it to adaptive cruise in the settings of the audio system.

The cruise mode can only be set when the system is inactive.



When the indicator light of the adaptive cruise control in the combination instrument illuminates in white, accelerate or decelerate to the required speed, and move the cruise control handle down to the "SET-" position or pull the cruise control handle toward you to the "ON/OFF" position and release the handle, the adaptive cruise control indicator light illuminates in green, and the current vehicle speed is set as the cruise speed.

■ Adjusting the vehicle speed



1 Increasing the speed

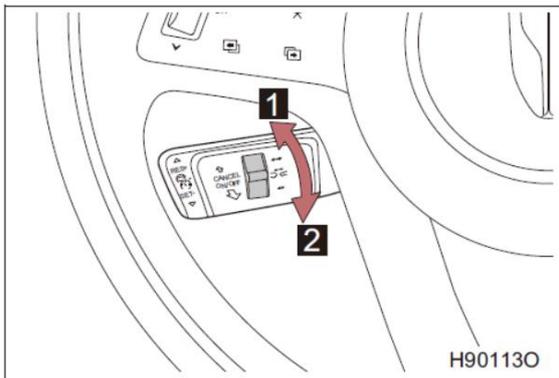
Push once to increase the speed by 5km/h;
When it is confirmed to be valid to push and hold by the system, it will increase continuously by 1km/h.

2 Decreasing the speed

Push once to decrease the speed by 5km/h;
When it is confirmed to be valid to push and hold by the system, it will decrease continuously by 1km/h.

Note: If the current set speed is not the multiple of 5, it automatically becomes a multiple of 5 first when adjusting.

■ Setting the vehicle-to-vehicle distance



1 Increasing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance

2 Decreasing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance

The system provides 4 distance modes.
The mode changes each time the lever is pulled.



1 The set cruise speed

2 ACC indicator lamp

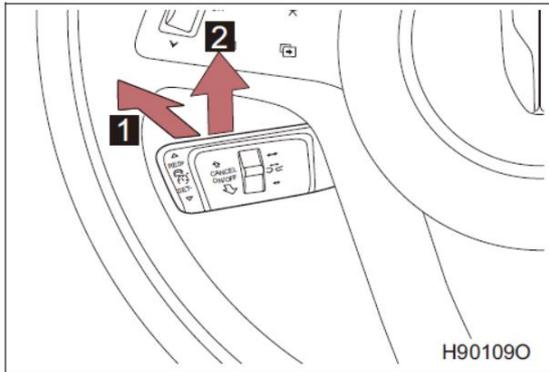
White: The system is turned on, the set conditions are met, and the cruise setting can be performed.

Green: The system is working and enters the cruise state.

3 The set vehicle-to-vehicle distance

The default vehicle-to-vehicle distance is "Distance 4".

Canceling and resuming ACC



1 Cancel

Depress the brake pedal or push the cruise control handle from you to the "CANCEL" position and then release it to cancel ACC.

2 Resume

To resume the cruise control and return to the set speed, push the handle up to "RES+" position and then release.

■ Noise of ACC automatic deceleration

It is normal that noise will be made when the ACC is applying automatic deceleration.

■ Vehicle-to-vehicle distance

The default vehicle-to-vehicle distance is "Distance 4".

■ Cruise control can be set when

- ESC function is activated.
- All the doors, hood closed.
- The driver fastened his seat belt.
- The shift lever is in D.
- The brake pedal is not depressed by the driver.
- The advanced driver assistance system camera is not covered and fault-free.
- ACC/ESC/AEB/TCS/ABS/EMS and other functions are not faulty.
- The AEB/APA function is not activated.
- The driving mode is not in the snow mode.

■ ACC is canceled when

- The cruise control handle moved to "CANCEL".
- The brake pedal depressed or the electronic parking brake applied.
- Any door or hood opened.
- The driver unfastened his seat belt.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed for more than 1 min.
- The shift lever is switched to the position other than D.
- ABS/TCS/ESC is activated.
- The AEB/APA function is activated.
- The driving mode is switched to snow mode.
- System related functions are faulty.

■ **ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) malfunctions**

Have the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer check the vehicle if a malfunction has occurred.

■ **After turning the engine switch OFF**

When turning the engine switch OFF, the set cruise speed or vehicle-to-vehicle distance will be deleted.

■ **Adjusting or calibrating ACC system**

Adjust or calibrate the ACC in the following situations. Otherwise ACC may not function properly.

- Front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- Remove and install the advanced driver assistance system camera unit or forward millimeter wave radar positioning bracket.
- After adjusting wheel alignment.
- The front bumper is hit or deformed.

Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.



CAUTIONS

■ **When setting the cruise speed, in order to ensure driving safety, it is recommended not to set a speed higher than 140km/h. It is very dangerous to use the cruise function when the vehicle is driving at high speed. The driver is recommended to drive the vehicle actively.**

■ **To avoid activating the ACC system by mistake**

If this function is disabled, the ACC system is deactivated.

■ **Situations unsuitable for adaptive cruise control**

Do not use ACC in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic.
- When in more complex road conditions.
- On roads with sharp bends.
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow.
- On steep hills.
- Stationary obstacle is in the front of the driving vehicle.
- In snow, rain, ice, fog and other weather.
- When the road lighting is insufficient at night.

■ **Driver is the leading operator of the vehicle, who is superior to the adaptive cruise control. When the driver depresses the accelerator and brake pedals in ACC state, the driver will control the vehicle. The driver shall maintain the control to the vehicle and bear full responsibility.**

■ **ACC is only a driving assist system. If necessary, the driver shall immediately cancel ACC and drive independently. Observe local laws and regulations, and adapt to the traffic, road and weather conditions when using ACC.**

**CAUTIONS**

- ACC may malfunction if the front windshield is modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment.
- Make sure to turn ACC OFF if leaving the driver seat for an extended period of time to avoid an accident.
- When following the target vehicle, ACC mainly controls the following distance. The actual speed may be lower than the set cruise speed.
- If ACC is activated, when your vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead (for example, due to emergency braking of the vehicle ahead), the system will send an audible and visual alarm message to you through the combination instrument. As a result, you should pay attention to the following distance and control your vehicle.
- It is normal that the cruise speed icon displayed on the combination instrument multifunction display (MFD) flashes when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal.
- ACC may lose or misrecognize the target vehicle when the vehicle is in bends, lane-changing or when the vehicle ahead stops.
- Exercise greater caution to drive since the ACC cannot detect other sides, children, pedestrians, animals or other objects but rear of the vehicle or apply the brakes.
- Due to the ACC's limited braking capacity, there may be no time to decelerate to avoid collision with the vehicle ahead. This may happen when the vehicle ahead suddenly slows down, stops or enters your lane. In case of danger, depress the brake pedal for braking actively.
- Focus all of your attention on driving and get ready to take actions and to apply the brakes.
- You need to adjust the safe interval and set the ACC system reasonably according to the front traffic volume and the current weather conditions (e.g., rain and snow). Whenever, you need to ensure that your vehicle can be decelerated to standstill within your field of vision.
- ACC can only recognize the motor vehicles (such as cars and trucks) that are installed with legal license plates and allowed to travel on highways. If the vehicle ahead is irregular in shape, modified and/or covered by painting, it may not be recognized by the ACC, and the pedestrians and narrow vehicles (such as bicycles and motorcycles) may not be recognized, either. In this case, you should get ready to control your vehicle according to the actual situation.
- The ACC system may not be able to accurately recognize large trailers, and the driver should control the vehicle at any time according to the actual situation.
- The ACC system cannot accurately determine the width of the front lane that can be passed. Therefore, when the lane in front of your vehicle's moving direction becomes narrow and you feel your vehicle cannot pass it normally, you should deactivate the ACC system immediately through braking intervention and control the vehicle by yourself.



CAUTIONS

- Do not activate ACC on a long steep slope. ACC may not detect the vehicle ahead in the same lane on a long steep slope. You usually need to control the acceleration and braking of your vehicle by yourself on a long steep slope. If the brakes are applied, ACC is canceled.
- The vehicle ahead icon on the combination instrument will be displayed if the vehicle traveling in the same direction on the same lane is detected. If the icon display does not match the actually observed situation, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle and driving it based on the actual situation.
- If you rest your foot on the accelerator pedal, ACC may not automatically apply the brakes, resulting in a collision with the vehicle ahead. In this case, exercise extreme caution.
- The front bumper shall not be painted, modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment, otherwise it may cause the performance of the forward millimeter wave radar sensor to decline or fail!
- Extreme weather such as severe snow, rain, ice, and dense fog may cause the performance of the forward millimeter wave radar sensor to decline or fail. In this case, please turn off the ACC system.
- The displacement of the forward millimeter-wave radar sensor due to a collision may cause the ACC function to decline or malfunction. Please calibrate the forward millimeter-wave radar sensor in time.
- Do not use a forward millimeter wave radar sensor that is not properly calibrated.
- If a vehicle in the adjacent lanes enters the front of the direction in which your vehicle moving but it is not covered by the sensor monitoring area, the sensor may not detect it, resulting in sluggish response of ACC. Pay close attention to the vehicle movement in the adjacent lanes. Control your vehicle actively if necessary.
- If the vehicle ahead is braked suddenly (emergency stop), the ACC may not respond at all or may respond slowly to the vehicle ahead, resulting in a risk of late braking. In this case, you may not receive a request of controlling your vehicle. Exercise extreme caution and control your vehicle actively if necessary.
- When the ACC follows the target vehicle to a stop, the vehicle may start off suddenly because the target vehicle is blocked or pedestrians pass by. Exercise extreme caution and control your vehicle actively if necessary.

**NOTICES**

- **ACC will maintain the preset distance to follow the target object. ACC will automatically decelerate, stop the vehicle if the target vehicle decelerates or stops.**
- **The vehicle will automatically start under the control of ACC if the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane within 3s after stopping.**
- **If the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane after 3s yet within 3 min after stopping, the combination instrument MFD will remind the driver to resume cruise. The driver can gently depress the accelerator pedal or pull cruise control lever to RES+ to resume ACC function, so as to achieve the vehicle automatic starting. At this time, the driver should pay attention to judge whether it is safe to start off.**
- **ACC will automatically deactivate if the vehicle stops for over 3 min.**
- **The ACC cannot stop your vehicle for a long time. Do not leave your vehicle while the ACC keeps the vehicle stopped. Be sure to shift the selector lever to P before leaving your vehicle.**
- **Observe the following precautions when cornering with the ACC activated:**
 - In a sharp corner, the ACC may be canceled or limited in the vehicle speed.
 - On a curve, the ACC may respond to the vehicle in another lane or may not have time to respond to the vehicle in the same lane. Your vehicle may collide with the vehicle ahead or may be uncontrolled. Especially when driving in a ramp, the vehicle may be accelerated since the sensor loses its target due to an excessive curve. Exercise extreme caution on a curve and get ready to apply the brakes if necessary. When driving on a curve, select the right vehicle speed.
- **When your vehicle follows the vehicle ahead to pass through the intersection with traffic lights, observe the change of the traffic lights and intervene actively if necessary to avoid violating the traffic rules.**
- **When driving in heavy fog, rain, snow or other weather conditions, or there is frost and/or dirty trace in the advanced driver assistance system camera window area, or when your vehicle is moving in the direction toward the sun (or strong light source), the "The camera of the advanced driver assistance system is blocked, please clean the windshield" prompt may appear on the combination instrument due to limited visual field of the camera. As a result, the ACC cannot work.**

Super Adaptive Cruise Control (SACC)*

Super Adaptive Cruise Control (SACC) is based on the ACC. It can not only perform cruise and follow-up functions, but also recognize the lane line through the advanced driver assistance system camera, and control the vehicle to drive along the center line of the lane, improving driving comfort and safety.

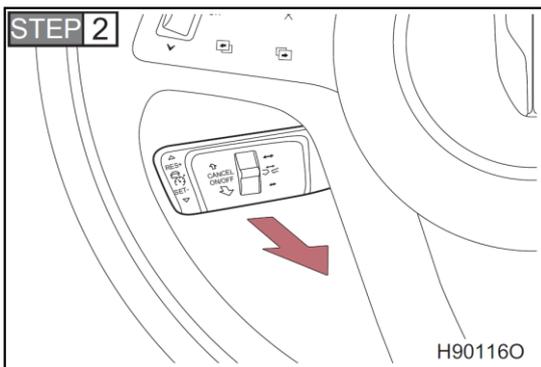
When SACC detects that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance becomes shorter than the set value, the vehicle automatically decelerates; when the vehicles ahead accelerate or drive away, the vehicle accelerates to the set cruise speed.

Setting SACC



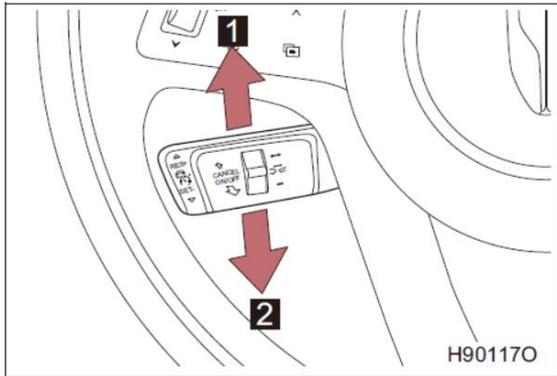
Turn on the cruise function and set it to SACC in the settings of the audio system.

The cruise mode can only be set when the system is inactive.



When the SACC indicator light in the combination instrument illuminates in white, accelerate or decelerate to the required speed, and pull the cruise control handle toward you to the "ON/OFF" position and release the handle continuously for two times, the SACC indicator light illuminates in green, and the current vehicle speed is set as the cruise speed.

■ Adjusting the vehicle speed



1 Increasing the speed

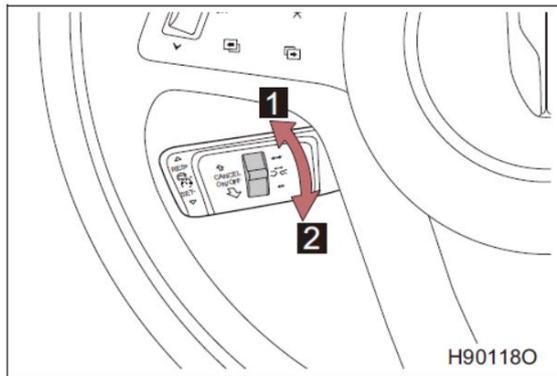
Push once to increase the speed by 5km/h; When it is confirmed to be valid to push and hold by the system, it will increase continuously by 1km/h.

2 Decreasing the speed

Push once to decrease the speed by 5km/h; When it is confirmed to be valid to push and hold by the system, it will decrease continuously by 1km/h.

Note: If the current set speed is not the multiple of 5, it automatically becomes a multiple of 5 first when adjusting.

■ Setting the vehicle-to-vehicle distance



1 Increasing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance

2 Decreasing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance

The system provides 4 distance modes. The mode changes each time the lever is pulled.



1 The set cruise speed

2 SACC indicator lamp

(Off)(off): (off): The system is in standby and does not meet the set conditions.

(Off) (white): The system is activated and the adaptive cruise setting can be performed.

(White) (white): The system is activated and the SACC setting can be performed.

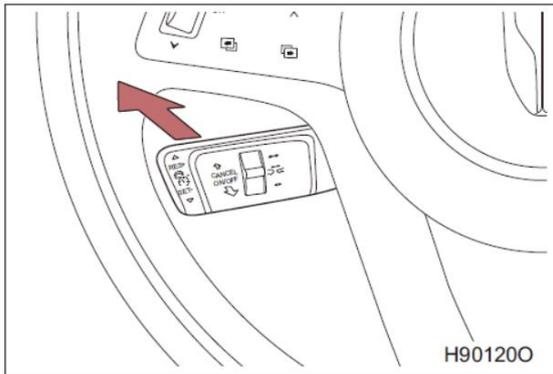
(Off) (green): The system is working and enters the adaptive cruise state.

(Green) (green): The system is working and enters the SACC state.

3 The set vehicle-to-vehicle distance

The default vehicle-to-vehicle distance is "Distance 4".

Canceling SACC



Depress the brake pedal or push the cruise control handle from you to the “CANCEL” position and then release it to cancel SACC.

■ Switching between SACC and ACC

When ACC is working and the SACC set conditions are met, pull the cruise control handle toward you continuously for two times to the "ON/OFF" position to switch to SACC mode.

When SACC is working, the driver operates the steering wheel or turn signal light switch to automatically switch to ACC mode.

When SACC is working, if the camera failed to recognize the lane line ahead, it will automatically switch to ACC mode.

When SACC is working, if a sharp curve suddenly appears and it will automatically switch to ACC mode.

When SACC is working, if the camera detects that the lane line is too wide or too narrow, it will automatically switch to ACC mode.

■ Noise of SACC automatic deceleration

It is normal that noise will be made when the **SACC** is applying automatic deceleration.

■ Vehicle-to-vehicle distance

The default vehicle-to-vehicle distance is “Distance 4”.

■ SACC can be set when

- The cruise mode is set to **SACC** in the audio system.
- All the doors, hood closed.
- The driver fastened his seat belt.
- The shift lever is in D.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The advanced driver assistance system camera is not covered and fault-free.
- The lane lines are clear and meet the requirements of national standards.
- SACC/ESC/AEB/TCS/ABS/EPS/EMS and other functions are not faulty.
- The AEB/APA function is not activated.
- The driving mode is not in the snow mode.

■ SACC can be suspended when

- The vehicle needs to overtake, depress the accelerator pedal deeply for no more than 1 min and resume it after releasing the accelerator pedal.

■ SACC is canceled when

- The cruise control handle moved to "CANCEL".
- The brake pedal depressed or the electronic parking brake applied.
- Any door or hood opened.
- The driver unfastened his seat belt.
- The system judges that both hands are off the steering wheel for a certain period of time.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed for more than 1 min.
- The shift lever is switched to the position other than D. • ABS/TCS/ESC is activated.
- The AEB/APA function is activated.
- The driving mode is switched to snow mode.
- System related functions are faulty.

■ SACC malfunctions

Have the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer check the vehicle if a malfunction has occurred.

■ After turning the engine switch OFF

When turning the engine switch OFF, the set cruise speed or vehicle-to-vehicle distance will be deleted.

■ Adjusting or calibrating SACC system

Adjust or calibrate the SACC in the following situations. Otherwise SACC may not function properly.

- Front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- Remove and install the advanced driver assistance system camera unit or forward millimeter wave radar positioning bracket.
- After adjusting wheel alignment.
- The front bumper is hit or deformed.

Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.



CAUTIONS

■ To avoid activating the SACC by mistake

If this function is disabled, the cruise control function is deactivated.

■ Situations unsuitable for SACC

Do not use SACC in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic.
 - When in more complex road conditions.
 - On roads with sharp bends.
 - On winding roads
 - On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow.
 - On steep hills.
 - Stationary obstacle is in the front of the driving vehicle.
 - In snow, rain, ice, fog and other weather.
 - When the road lighting is insufficient at night.
 - When the lane line is not clear.
- **Driver is the leading operator of the vehicle, who is superior to the SACC. When the driver depresses the accelerator, brake pedals or operates the steering wheel in SACC state, the driver will control the vehicle. The driver shall maintain the control to the vehicle and bear full responsibility.**
- **When driving on a repaired asphalt road or a road with strong light reflection, the vehicle may deviate from the driving lane. Exercise extreme caution and control your vehicle actively if necessary.**
- **When SACC is working, the driver should hold the steering wheel firmly with both hands to ensure driving safety.**
- **SACC is only a driving assist system. If necessary, the driver shall immediately cancel SACC and drive independently. Observe local laws and regulations, and adapt to the traffic, road and weather conditions when using SACC.**
- **SACC may malfunction if the front windshield is modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment.**
- **Make sure to turn SACC OFF if leaving the driver seat for an extended period of time to avoid an accident.**
- **When following the target vehicle, SACC mainly controls the following distance. The actual speed may be lower than the set cruise speed.**
- **If SACC is activated, when your vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead (for example, due to emergency braking of the vehicle ahead), the system will send an audible and visual alarm message to you through the combination instrument. As a result, you should pay attention to the following distance and control your vehicle.**
- **When the driver controls the steering wheel for a short time or the lane line disappears for a short time, the steering assist indicator on the multi-function display of the combination instrument will flash, which is normal.**

**CAUTIONS**

- It is normal that the cruise speed icon displayed on the combination instrument multifunction display (MFD) flashes when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal.
- SACC may lose or misrecognize the target vehicle when the vehicle is in bends, lane-changing or when the vehicle ahead stops.
- Exercise greater caution to drive since the SACC cannot detect other sides, children, pedestrians, animals or other objects but rear of the vehicle or apply the brakes.
- Due to the SACC's limited braking capacity, there may be no time to decelerate to avoid collision with the vehicle ahead. This may happen when the vehicle ahead suddenly slows down, stops or enters your lane. In case of danger, depress the brake pedal for braking actively.
- Focus all of your attention on driving and get ready to take actions and to apply the brakes.
- You need to adjust the safe interval and set the SACC system reasonably according to the front traffic volume and the current weather conditions (e.g., rain and snow). Whenever, you need to ensure that your vehicle can be decelerated to standstill within your field of vision.
- SACC can only recognize the motor vehicles (such as cars and trucks) that are installed with legal license plates and allowed to travel on highways. If the vehicle ahead is irregular in shape, modified and/or covered by painting, it may not be recognized by the ACC, and the pedestrians and narrow vehicles (such as bicycles and motorcycles) may not be recognized, either. In this case, you should get ready to control your vehicle according to the actual situation.
- The SACC system may not be able to accurately recognize large trailers, and the driver should control the vehicle at any time according to the actual situation.
- The SACC system cannot accurately determine the width of the front lane that can be passed. Therefore, when the lane in front of your vehicle's moving direction becomes narrow and you feel your vehicle cannot pass it normally, you should deactivate the SACC system immediately through braking intervention and control the vehicle by yourself.
- Do not activate SACC on a long steep slope. SACC may not detect the vehicle ahead in the same lane on a long steep slope. You usually need to control the acceleration and braking of your vehicle by yourself on a long steep slope. If the brakes are applied, SACC is canceled.
- The vehicle ahead icon on the combination instrument will be displayed if the vehicle traveling in the same direction on the same lane is detected. If the icon display does not match the actually observed situation, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle and driving it based on the actual situation.
- If you rest your foot on the accelerator pedal, SACC may not automatically apply the brakes, resulting in a collision with the vehicle ahead. In this case, exercise extreme caution.
- The front bumper shall not be painted, modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment, otherwise it may cause the performance of the forward millimeter wave radar sensor to decline or fail!
- Extreme weather such as severe snow, rain, ice, and dense fog may cause the performance of the forward millimeter wave radar sensor to decline or fail. In this case, please turn off the SACC system.
- The displacement of the forward millimeter-wave radar sensor due to a collision may cause the SACC function to decline or malfunction. Please calibrate the forward millimeter-wave radar sensor in time.
- Do not use a forward millimeter wave radar sensor that is not properly calibrated.

**CAUTIONS**

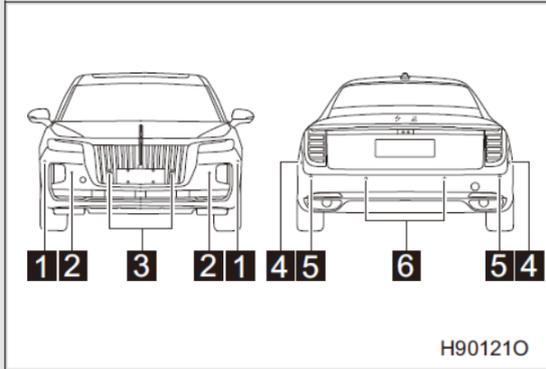
- If a vehicle in the adjacent lanes enters the front of the direction in which your vehicle moving but it is not covered by the sensor monitoring area, the sensor may not detect it, resulting in sluggish response of SACC. Pay close attention to the vehicle movement in the adjacent lanes. Control your vehicle actively if necessary.
- If the vehicle ahead is braked suddenly (emergency stop), the SACC may not respond at all or may respond slowly to the vehicle ahead, resulting in a risk of late braking. In this case, you may not receive a request of controlling your vehicle. Exercise extreme caution and control your vehicle actively if necessary.
- When the SACC follows the target vehicle to a stop, the vehicle may start off suddenly because the target vehicle is blocked or pedestrians pass by. Exercise extreme caution and control your vehicle actively if necessary.

**NOTICES**

- SACC will maintain the preset distance to follow the target object. SACC will automatically decelerate, stop the vehicle if the target vehicle decelerates or stops.
- The vehicle will automatically start under the control of SACC if the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane within 3s after stopping.
- If the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane after 3s yet within 3 min after stopping, the combination instrument MFD will remind the driver to resume cruise. The driver can gently depress the accelerator pedal or pull cruise control lever to RES+ to resume SACC function, so as to achieve the vehicle automatic starting. At this time, the driver should pay attention to judge whether it is safe to start off.
- SACC will automatically deactivate if the vehicle stops for over 3 min.
- The SACC cannot stop your vehicle for a long time. Do not leave your vehicle while the SACC keeps the vehicle stopped. Be sure to shift the selector lever to P before leaving your vehicle.
- Observe the following precautions when cornering with the SACC activated:
 - In a sharp corner, the SACC may be canceled or limited in the vehicle speed.
 - On a curve, the SACC may respond to the vehicle in another lane or may not have time to respond to the vehicle in the same lane. Your vehicle may collide with the vehicle ahead or may be uncontrolled. Especially when driving in a ramp, the vehicle may be accelerated since the sensor loses its target due to an excessive curve. Exercise extreme caution on a curve and get ready to apply the brakes if necessary. When driving on a curve, select the right vehicle speed.
 - In a curve, too small road radius may affect the judgment of SACC on the lane lines. Drive with caution on curves.
- When your vehicle follows the vehicle ahead to pass through the intersection with traffic lights, observe the change of the traffic lights and intervene actively if necessary to avoid violating the traffic rules.
- When driving in heavy fog, rain, snow or other weather conditions, or there is frost and/or dirty trace in the advanced driver assistance system camera window area, or when your vehicle is moving in the direction toward the sun (or strong light source), the "The camera of the advanced driver assistance system is blocked, please clean the windshield" prompt may appear on the combination instrument due to limited visual field of the camera. As a result, the SACC cannot work.

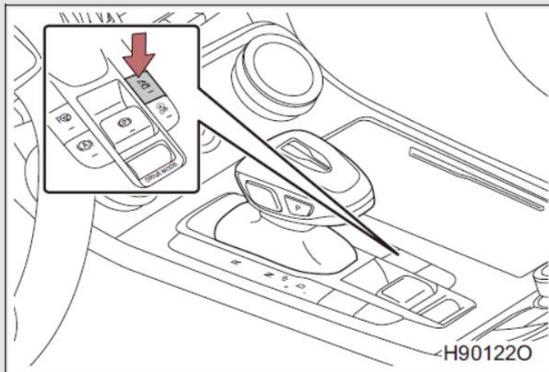
The front and rear parking radar system is composed of controller and ultrasonic sensor. The ultrasonic sensor can measure the distance between the vehicle and the obstacles. The audio speaker sounds with various frequencies according to the distance changes to the obstacles in the detection area. Meanwhile, the audio multimedia display will display the distance to and direction of the obstacles. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

■ Sensor types



- 1 Front side long-range radar sensor*
- 2 Front side short-range radar sensor
- 3 Front center radar sensor
- 4 Rear side long-range radar sensor*
- 5 Rear side short-range radar sensor
- 6 Rear center radar sensor

■ Switching on and off parking radar



When the vehicle speed is less than 15km/h, press the radar/image switch button, the indicator on the button illuminates, and the parking radar is switched on; press the radar/image switch button again, the indicator goes out, and the parking radar is switched off.

Radar setting



The radar alarm volume and the auto ON of the front radar can be set on the reversing/panoramic camera interface of the audio system.

■ **When the automatic radar is set to ON**

- With the gear placed in D/N and the vehicle speed less than 15 km/h, if there is an obstacle within 80cm, the audio display will pop up a radar warning screen. Press the Return button to exit the radar warning. At this time, the radar auto-on function is turned off during this ignition cycle.

Note: The radar does not alarm when the gear is in N and the vehicle is stationary.

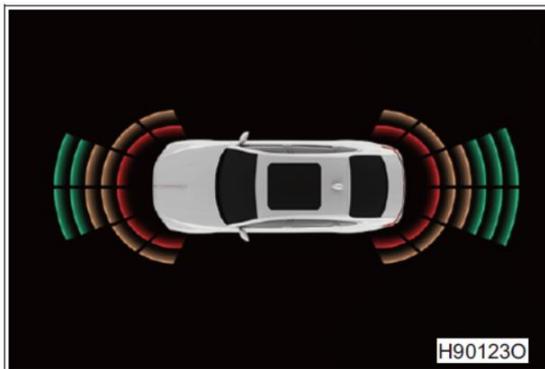
- With the gear switched to R, the parking radar system ON, press the radar/camera switch button can switch off the parking radar system.
- With the parking radar system switched on, when the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, the system exits, and when the vehicle speed is less than 10km/h, the parking radar system works again.

■ **When the automatic radar is set to OFF**

- With the gear switched to R, the parking radar system ON, press the radar/camera switch button can switch off the parking radar system.
- With the parking radar system switched on, gear in R, when the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, the system exits, and when the vehicle speed is less than 10 km/h, the parking radar system works again; with the gear in D, when the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, the system exits and does not automatically resume.

Display

■ When an obstacle is detected



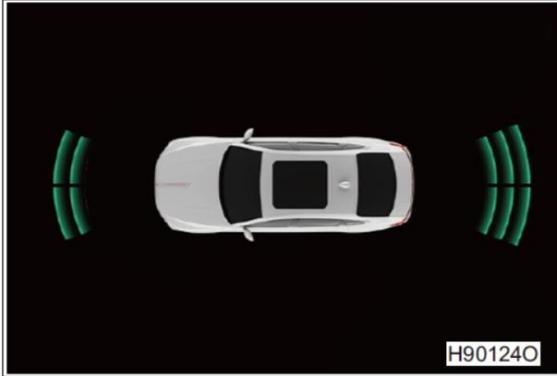
If the radar sensor detects an obstacle, an image is displayed on the multimedia display screen according to the obstacle position and the distance from the obstacle.

The slow-driving zone, warning zone and danger zone are displayed in green, yellow and red, respectively.

Obstacle distance detection

If an obstacle is detected, the color bar corresponding to the sensor will be always on.

■ Information display on parking slow-driving zone for center radar sensor



Front center radar sensor

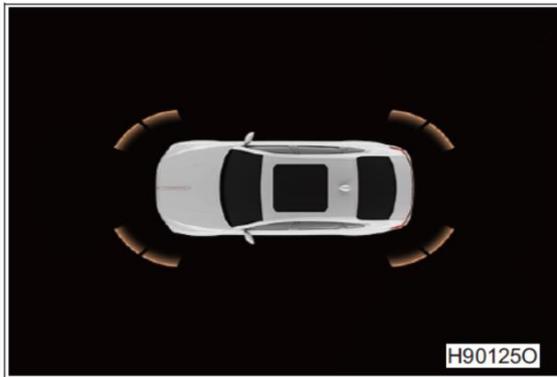
Distance to obstacles 80 ~ 120cm

Rear center radar sensor

Distance to obstacles 80 ~ 150cm

If an obstacle is detected within this range, a green indicator bar will be displayed on the multimedia display screen and the speaker will sound to warn the driver.

■ Information display on parking warning zone for side radar sensor



Side short-range radar sensor

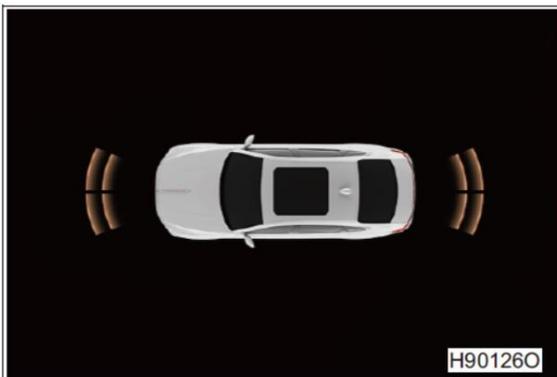
Distance to obstacles 40 ~ 60cm

Side long-range radar sensor

Distance to obstacles 30 ~ 60cm

If an obstacle is detected within this range, a yellow indicator bar will be displayed on the multimedia display screen and the speaker will sound to warn the driver.

■ Information display on parking warning zone for center radar sensor



Center radar sensor

Distance to obstacles 40 ~ 80cm

If an obstacle is detected within this range, a yellow indicator bar will be displayed on the multimedia display screen and the speaker will sound to warn the driver.

■ Information display on parking danger zone for radar sensor



Center/side short-range radar sensor

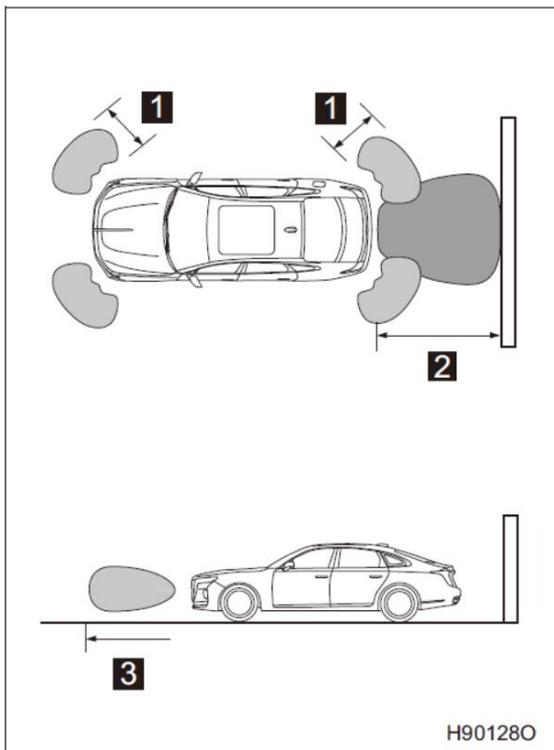
Distance to obstacles 1 ~ 40cm

Side long-range radar sensor

Distance to obstacles 1 ~ 30cm

If an obstacle is detected within this range, a red indicator bar will be displayed on the multimedia display screen and the speaker will sound continuously to warn the driver.

Longest distance detected by the sensor



1 About 60cm

2 About 150cm

3 About 120cm

The diagram shows the longest distance detected by the radar sensor. (Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.)

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the obstacle.

■ Sensor detection information

- Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect an obstacle. For example:
 - There is dirt, snow or ice on a sensor.
 - A sensor is covered in any way.
 - The vehicle is rolling considerably to one side.
 - On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
 - The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.

- There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity, and the sensor of this vehicle is in working.
- The vehicle is equipped with fender antenna pole or wireless antenna.
- Towing eyelets are installed.
- A bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or bended curb.
- In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shapes, traffic signs and other objects may be judged by a sensor to be closer than they are.

- The shape of the obstacle may prevent a sensor from detecting it. Watch out the following obstacles especially.
 - Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
 - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb radio waves.
 - Sharply-angled objects.
 - Low obstacles.
 - Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle.



CAUTIONS

■ Precautions when using the front and rear parking radar

Observe the following cautions to avoid accidents:

- Do not attach any accessories within the sensor range.
- The parking radar system is only a driving assist system. Do not rely on it more than necessary. Drive with caution. If necessary, intervene actively to avoid danger.
- Driver is the leading operator of the vehicle, and shall always maintain the control to the vehicle and bear full responsibility.
- When the vehicle speed is too fast, the system will quit working, and the driver should drive with caution.



NOTICES

■ Notes when washing the vehicle

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area. Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

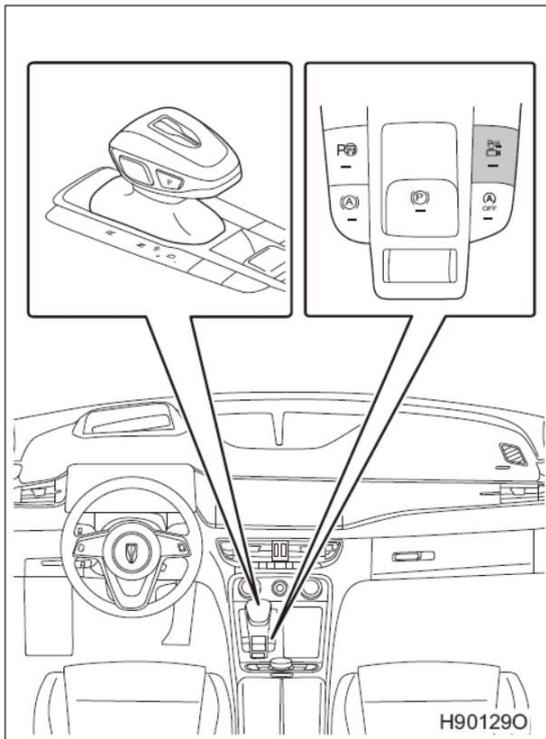
Rear view camera system*

When reversing (for example, parking), the rear view camera system assists you by displaying the vehicle rear view image on the audio multimedia display.

Activating/deactivating the rear view camera system

■ Activating

There are two methods to activate the rear view camera system:



Method A: Setting the selector lever in R activates the rear view camera system.

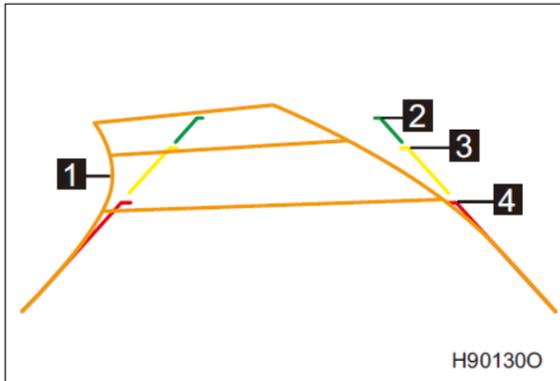
Method B: When the vehicle speed is less than 15km/h, pressing the radar/camera switch button activates the rear view camera system.

■ Deactivating

Pressing the radar/camera switch button, or setting the gear to D with the vehicle speed higher than 15km/h deactivates the rear view camera system.

Reversing information display

To assist the driver to complete the parking by the screen, and dynamically adjust the parking guide line according to the angles of the vehicle.



1 Parking guide line

Represents the predicted vehicle trajectory as the steering wheel rotates.

2 Distance guide line (green)

Indicating the distance line 200cm from the rear edge of the bumper.

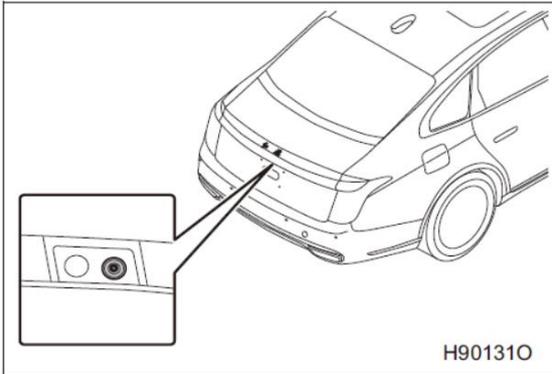
3 Distance guide line (yellow)

Indicating the distance line 100cm from the rear edge of the bumper.

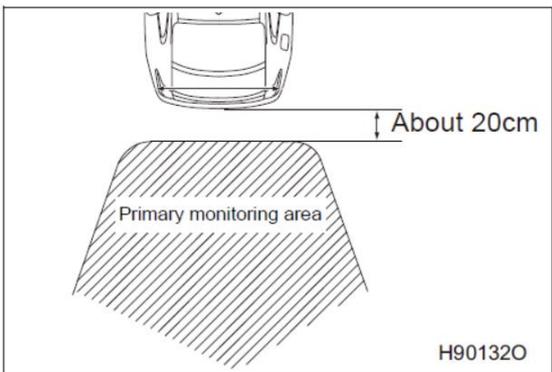
4 Distance guide line (red)

Indicating the distance line 50cm from the rear edge of the bumper.

Reverse camera

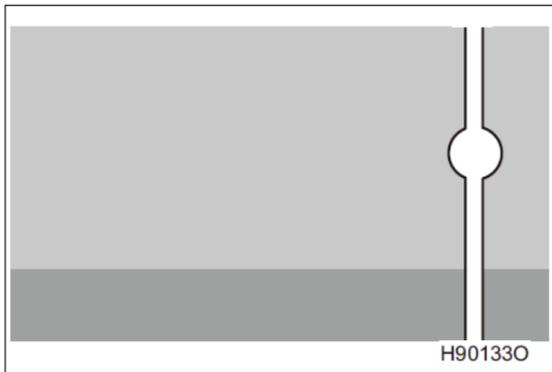


The vehicle reverse camera is located in the illustrated position.



The area that the camera can monitor is limited. Objects near the corner of the bumper (within about 20 cm) or under the bumper are not displayed on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary with the orientation of the vehicle or road conditions.



If the reverse camera is subject to the bright light (for example: sunlight reflected by the vehicle body), it may produce the smearing effect*¹ characteristic to the reverse camera.

*¹: The light source appears to have a vertical stripe extending up and down when the image is transmitted through the reverse camera.

**CAUTIONS**

- **Rear view camera system is only one of the driving assist systems. Do not depend on it more than necessary.**
 - Driver is the leading operator of the vehicle, and shall always maintain the control to the vehicle and bear full responsibility.
 - Be sure to drive carefully and visually confirm the conditions behind and around the vehicle. It is very dangerous to back up by observing the display screen only. This may cause an accident or a collision with the object. The rear view camera system is only a visual parking assist system. The image on the display may differ from the actual situation.
- **When using the rear view camera system**

Please observe the following notes. Otherwise it will lead to serious personal injury, even death.

 - Never depend solely on the rear view camera system when reversing.
 - Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
 - Displayed distance between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distance.
 - Do not use this system when the trunk lid is not fully closed.
- **Conditions which may affect the rear view camera system**
 - If the back of the vehicle has been hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may have changed. Please have your vehicle checked by the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.
 - Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
 - If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and wipe it.
 - The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.
 - Do not use the rear view camera system when it is:
 - On slippery road surfaces covered by ice or snow.
 - Using tire chain or emergency spare tire.
 - On uneven or rough road, such as bends or steep hills.
 - If the tires are replaced, the guide line position displayed on the display screen may be deviated. When replacing the tire, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.
 - The guide line position on the display screen may vary according to the vehicle conditions, such as passenger and luggage number. Be sure to visually check the area behind and around the vehicle before operating.

Panoramic camera system *

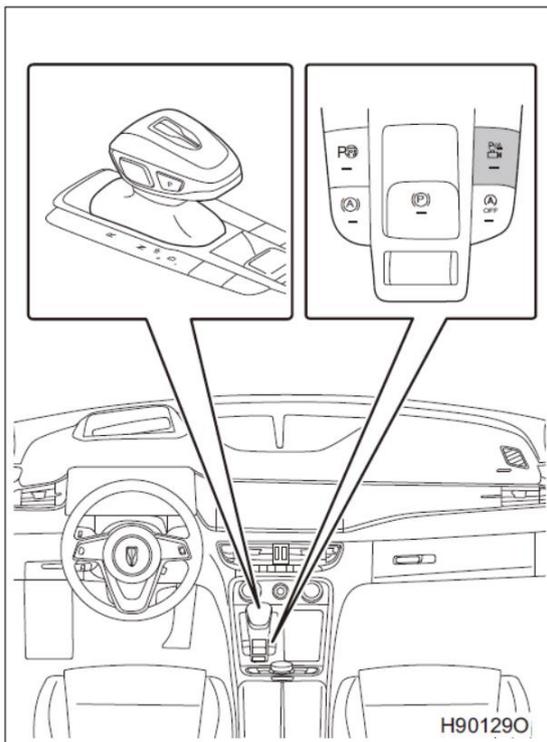
The panoramic camera system is displayed through the audio system display screen, which enables the driver to clearly view and know the surrounding conditions of the vehicle, and also make judgments on the relative position and distance of obstacles, so as to realize safe and easy parking.

The image used in this section is only an example and may differ from the actual image displayed on the screen.

Activating and deactivating the panoramic camera system

■ Activating

Panoramic camera system can be activated through the following two methods:



Method A: Shifting to gear R activates the panoramic camera system.

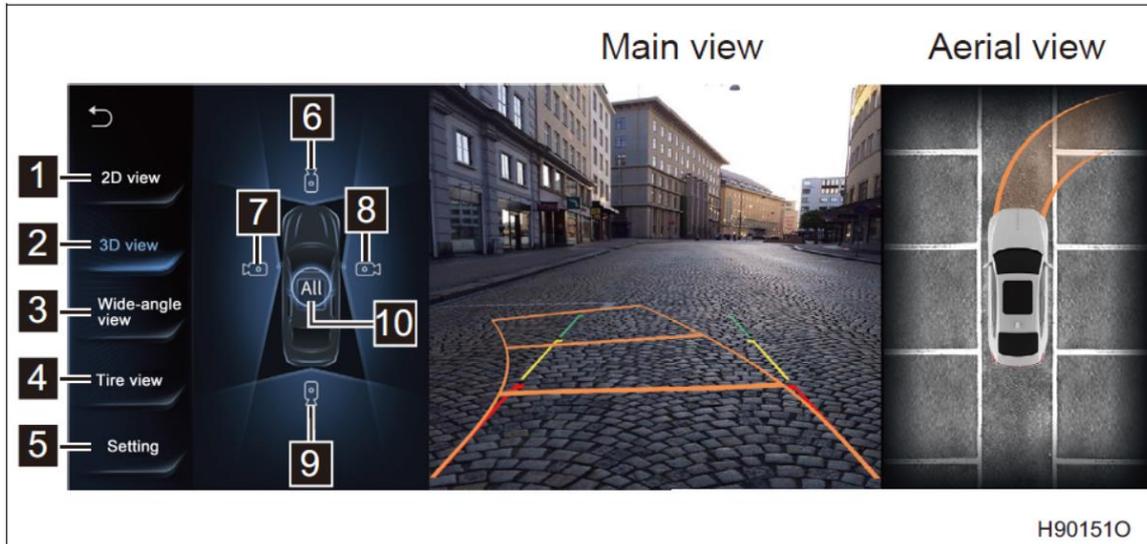
Method B: When the vehicle speed is less than 30km/h, pressing the radar/camera switch button activates the panoramic camera system.

■ Deactivating

Pressing the radar/camera switch button or tapping the screen button  or setting the gear to D with the vehicle speed higher than 30km/h deactivates the panoramic camera system.

View modes of panoramic camera system

The panoramic camera system has a variety of view modes, which enables the driver to choose the corresponding mode according to his(her) needs.



1 2D view

Displays plane images that in 2D mode, you can view front view, rear view, left view, right view, and big aerial view.

2 3D view

Shows the three-dimensional 360° image around the vehicle, which can be dragged and displayed.

3 Wide-angle view

It is optional in the front and rear view modes and after selecting, switch the main view and small aerial view to wide-angle view, in which you can see a nearly 180° picture.

4 Tire view

It is optional in front and rear view modes, after selecting, the left view, right view and small aerial view can be displayed.

5 Setting

The alarm sound switch, dynamic track route, object detection, blind spot assist, automatic radar setting and radar alarm volume can be set.

- Alarm sound switch: You can choose the radar alarm sound at the time of turning on or off the camera.
- Dynamic track route: the parking assist lines will be displayed after selected.
- Object detection: After turning on, it can detect the dynamic objects within 3m in the front and rear of the vehicle and 5m to the left and right.
- Blind spot assist: After turning on, as the vehicle moves, the blind spot at the underside of the vehicle is filled with visual images to achieve the effect of visual underside.
- Automatic radar setting: you can set whether the front radar automatically turns on the alarm when driving.
- Radar alarm volume: you can drag to adjust the volume of the radar alarm sound.

6 Front view

Shows the front view and small aerial view;

7 Left view

Shows the left view and small aerial view;

8 Right view

Shows the right view and small aerial view;

9 Rear view

Shows the rear view and small aerial view;

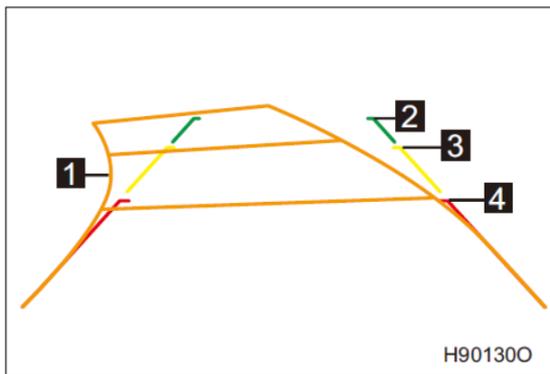
10 Big aerial view

To switch the main view and the small aerial view to the big aerial view.

When the turn signal is turned on, the picture mode is automatically converted to the corresponding left and right view and the small aerial view. When the turn signal is turned off, it returns to the previously selected picture mode.

Parking assist guideline

To assist the driver to complete the parking by the screen, and dynamically adjust the parking guide line according to the angles of the vehicle.



1 Parking guide line

Represents the predicted vehicle trajectory as the steering wheel rotates.

2 Distance guide line (green)

Indicating the distance line 300cm from the rear edge of the bumper.

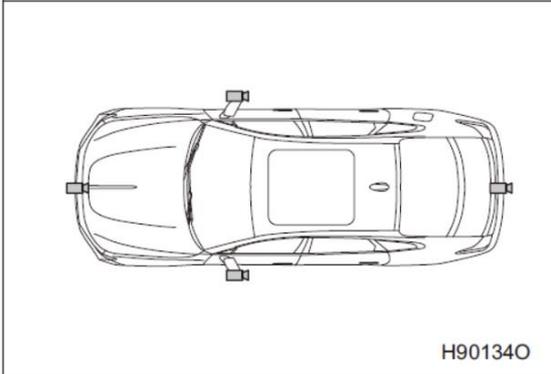
3 Distance guide line (yellow)

Indicating the distance line 150cm from the rear edge of the bumper.

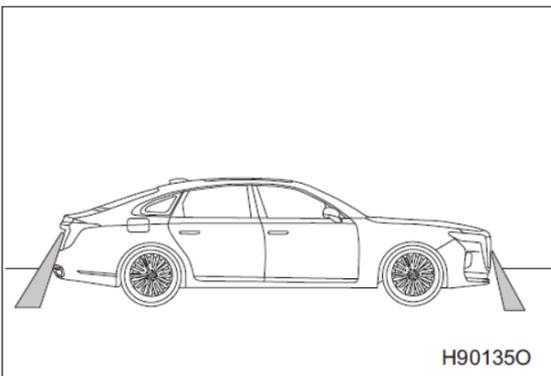
4 Distance guide line (red)

Indicating the distance line 50cm from the rear edge of the bumper.

Parking assist guideline

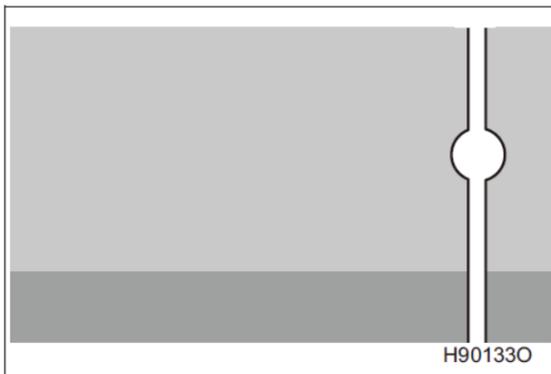


The panoramic cameras are mounted on the front grille, trunk lid, left and right outside rear-view mirrors.



The area that the camera can monitor is limited. Objects near the corner of the bumper or under the bumper are not displayed on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary with the orientation of the vehicle or road conditions.



If the camera is subject to the bright light (for example: sunlight reflected by the vehicle body), it may produce the smearing effect^{*1} characteristic to the camera.

^{*1}: The light source appears to have a vertical stripe extending up and down when the image is transmitted through the camera.



CAUTIONS

- **Panoramic camera system is only one of the driving assist systems. Do not depend on it more than necessary.**
 - Driver is the leading operator of the vehicle, and shall always maintain the control to the vehicle and bear full responsibility.
 - Be sure to drive carefully and visually confirm the conditions around the vehicle. It is very dangerous to back up by observing the display screen only. This may cause an accident or a collision with the object. The panoramic camera system is only a visual parking assist system. The image on the display may differ from the actual situation.
- **When using the panoramic camera system**

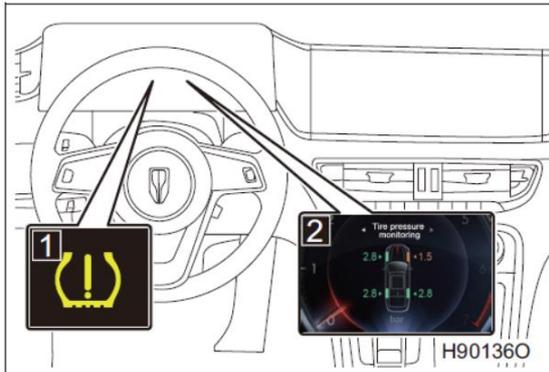
Please observe the following notes. Otherwise it will lead to serious personal injury or even death.

 - Never depend solely on the panoramic camera system when reversing.
 - Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
 - Displayed distance between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distance.
 - The aerial view of the panoramic camera system can only show the close objects, and the camera will not show objects outside the field of view.
 - The moving object/pedestrian monitoring function only detects low-speed moving objects. There is a possibility of missed detection. Please stay alert during driving.
 - Do not use this system when the camera cannot work normally.
- **Conditions which may affect the panoramic camera system**
 - If the vehicle has been hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may have changed. Please have your vehicle checked by the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.
 - Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
 - If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and wipe it.
 - The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.
 - The image may not be clear if it is rainy, snowy, foggy and low in visibility.
 - Do not use the panoramic camera system when it is:
 - On slippery road surfaces covered by ice or snow.
 - Using tire chain or emergency spare tire.
 - On uneven or rough road, such as bends or steep hills.
 - If the tires are replaced, the guide line position displayed on the display screen may be deviated. When replacing the tire, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.
 - The guide line position on the display screen may vary according to the vehicle conditions, such as passenger and luggage number. Be sure to visually check the area behind and around the vehicle before operating.

Tire pressure monitor system (TPMS)

The panoramic camera system is displayed through the audio system display screen, which enables the driver to clearly view and know the surrounding conditions of the vehicle, and also make judgments on the relative position and distance of obstacles, so as to realize safe and easy parking.

The image used in this section is only an example and may differ from the actual image displayed on the screen.



1 Abnormal tire pressure/system malfunction warning light

2 Tire pressure information

System working conditions

Vehicle state	Alarm
When the tire pressure is abnormal	System malfunction warning light makes an alarm
When the tire pressure monitoring system is not working	The system malfunction warning light illuminates, and meanwhile prompts that the tire pressure monitoring function failed in text form.

■ Matching of tire pressure sensor

The tire pressure monitoring system needs to be configured after changing wheels or performing the tire rotation. Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.



CAUTIONS

■ Precautions for TPMS

- The TPMS cannot prevent tire leakage and bursting. Its main purpose is to give an alarm when it detects that the tire pressure is lower than the set value.
- In winter, adjust the pressure in the tires in time. Because the winter temperature drops, the tire pressure may drop or drop below the alarm value. If the tire pressure drops below the alarm value, it will cause an alarm.

■ Conditions in which the TPMS won't work properly

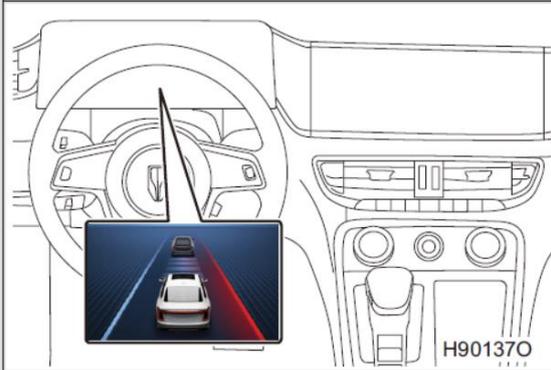
The TPMS can judge based on the subtle changes in the tires and may not work properly if one of the following conditions occurs.

- When the four tires are not of the same size, the same manufacturer, the same brand or the same pattern, or when the installed tires are markedly different in wear (the same applies to winter tires).
- When emergency tires and/or snow tires are used, and when tire chains are mounted.
- If the tire with a pressure significantly higher than the specified pressure is installed, or if the tire loses pressure suddenly due to tire bursting (puncture).

4-5. Using other driving systems
LDW/LKA Lane Keeping Assist system*

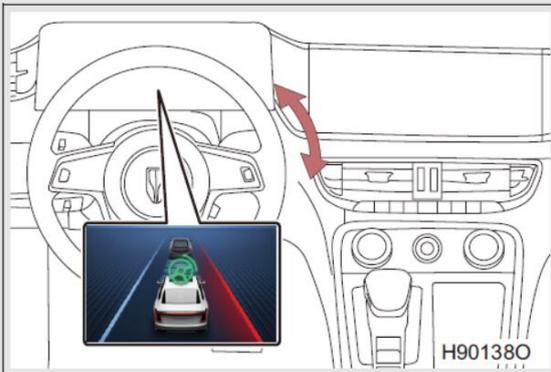
The lane keeping assist system can detect the status of the driver and the driving status of the vehicle when the vehicle speed is higher than 60km/h, and will give an alarm or an alarm plus a correction prompt to prevent danger and violations if it judged that the vehicle departed the lane due to non-subjective intentions of the driver, such as chatting, being distracted, or operating the audio system.

■ Lane Departure Warning (LDW)



When the system detects that the vehicle is departing from the lane, the corresponding side line turns red and flashes and sounds a warning.

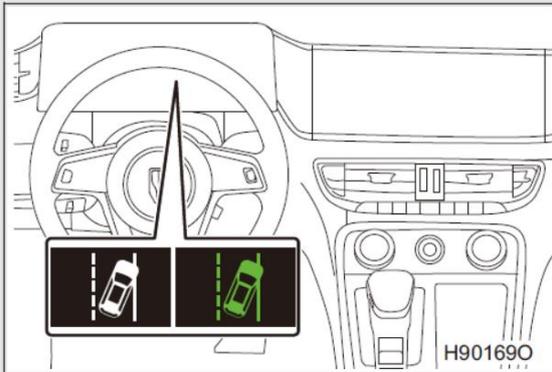
■ Lane Keeping Assist (LKA)



When the system detects that the vehicle is departing from the lane, the corresponding side line turns red and flashes and sounds a warning, then the steering wheel corrects it automatically.

■ **LDW/LKA Lane Keeping Assist system settings**

The lane keeping assist system can be set to turn on and off in the vehicle settings of the audio system. After the system is turned on, the alarm mode can be selected as alarm only, alarm + lane keeping, and the LDW sensitivity can be set. (→ P. 229)



When the system is turned on, the lane keeping assist indicator (white) on the combination instrument illuminates. When the system is off, the indicator light goes out.

When the system is turned on, the vehicle speed is higher than 60km/h, and the system recognizes a valid lane line, the LKA indicator (green) on the combination instrument illuminates.

■ **Working conditions for LDW/LKA system:**

- The vehicle speed is higher than 60 km/h.
- The lane lines are clear and meet the requirements of national standards.
- The system camera is not covered.

■ **The LDW/LKA is deactivated even if your vehicle is departing from the lane when one of the following conditions occurs:**

- When the driver operates the steering wheel to turn.
- Your vehicle has been driving on the lane line.
- Within 3 seconds of the previous warning.
- Within 3S (seconds) after turning on the turn signal light switch or returning the turn signal light switch.

■ **The system will not automatically correct even if your vehicle is departing from the lane when one of the following conditions occurs:**

- When the driver operates the turn signal and steering wheel.
- When the lane lines on one or both sides of the road disappears.

■ **The LDW/LKA may not work properly if one of the following conditions occurs:**

- When snow, ice or dust stains on the windshield block the sensor.
- Low-visibility weather, such as heavy fog, heavy rain, or heavy snow.
- The road is covered by vehicles or other obstacles.
- The road width is narrow or the curvature of the curve is excessive.
- When the system camera is covered.
- When heading for strong light.

- Lane line diverging, intersections or construction areas and other complex lane line conditions.
 - When there are shadows of bridge cables or trees on the road surface, which may cause mis-recognitions.
 - When the light is weak or the lane lines are blurry at night.
 - The vehicle speed is lower than 60 km/h.
 - Lane line is not in conformity to national standards.
 - The external environment of the vehicle suddenly changes in brightness, such as entering a tunnel.
- **The system shall be calibrated when replacing the advanced driver assistance system camera unit, front windshield or after four-wheel alignment. Otherwise, the system can not be used normally. Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.**

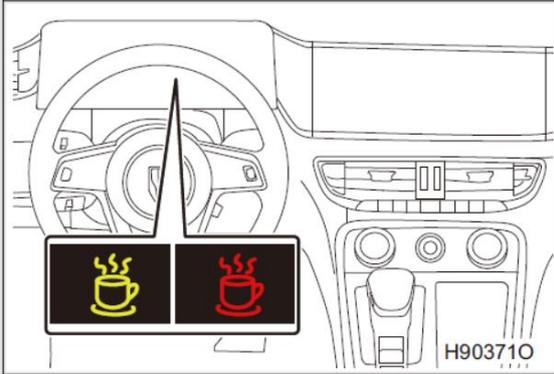


CAUTIONS

- **The LDW/LKA system is only a driver assist system. Do not rely on it more than necessary. Drive with caution.**
- **Driver is the leading operator of the vehicle, who is superior to the LDW/LKA system and shall always maintain the control to the vehicle and bear full responsibility.**
- **The system may malfunction due to road and environment factors. Stop using this system in that case.**
- **To avoid interfering with the driver, the system will not raise an alarm when the LDW/LKA system activation conditions are not met.**
- **The LDW/LKA system without correct calibration may recognize other lanes by mistake, resulting in accidents.**
- **The LDW/LKA system can recognize the lane lines and curbs with a certain contrast. It may recognize the blurry, dirty lane lines inaccurately or cannot recognize them. It may mis-recognize some vehicle traces, watermarks or shadows with large color contrast on road surfaces.**

Driver Status Monitor (DSM) system*

Driver Status Monitor (DSM) system estimates the driver's status (such as fatigue) by analyzing the vehicle's movement in the lane, and gives an early warning based on the driver's state to remind the driver that his current state is not suitable for driving and needs to have a rest.



When the system determines that the driver may be in a relatively light abnormal driving status, the yellow indicator light on the combination instrument illuminates, and a sound and text alerts are given at the same time.

When the system determines that the driver may be in a serious abnormal driving status, the red indicator light on the combination instrument flashes, and a sound and text alerts are given at the same time.

■ Driver Status Monitor (DSM) system ON/OFF

The DSM can be set to turn on and off in the settings of the audio system. (→ P. 228)

- The system shall be calibrated when replacing the advanced driver assistance system camera unit, front windshield or after four-wheel alignment. Otherwise, the system can not be used normally. Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

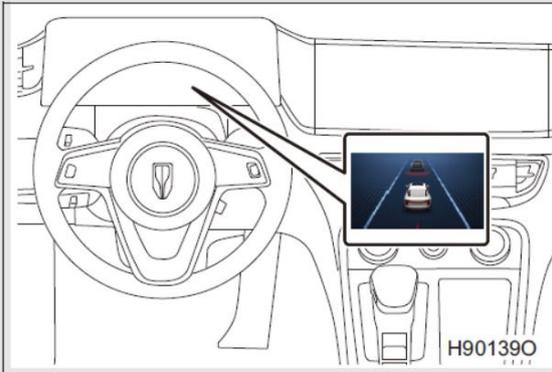


CAUTIONS

- DSM system is only a driver assistance system, which can only give alarm for the abnormal driving status of the driver, and cannot directly intervene in the vehicle. The driver must control the steering wheel by himself according to the alarm to ensure the normal driving of the vehicle.
- DSM system may not be able to normally judge the abnormal driving status of the driver due to road and environmental factors. The driver must abide by the traffic laws, stop and have a rest in time to ensure driving safety according to his own situation.
- The DSM system without correct calibration may make a mis-judgment, resulting in accidents.

Forward collision warning (FCW) system*

The system automatically judges the collision risk level based on the relative distance, relative speed, and relative acceleration between the vehicle and the target vehicle. The system will sound an alarm if the conditions are met.

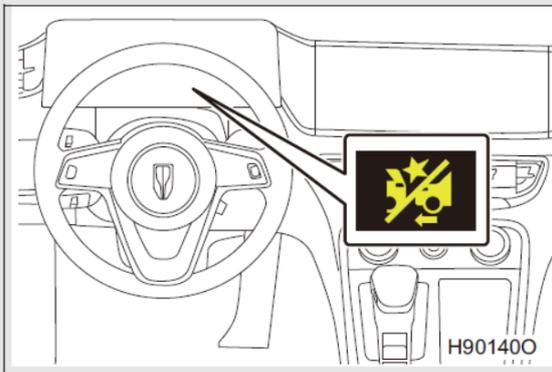


When the system judges that there may be a collision, alarm information appears on the combination instrument, giving an audible and visual alarm.

For the vehicle target, when the collision risk escalates, the system will give a braking warning similar to the effect of cadence braking.

■ Forward collision warning (FCW) ON/OFF

The FCW system can be set to turn on and off in the settings of the audio system, and is turned on by default. (→ P. 229)



If the system is turned off, the indicator light for the FCW OFF is illuminated on the combination instrument.

■ Adjusting or calibrating FCW system

Adjust or calibrate the FCW in the following situations. Otherwise FCW may not function properly.

- Front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- Remove and install the advanced driver assistance system camera unit or radar positioning bracket.
- After adjusting wheel alignment.
- The front bumper is hit or deformed.

Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

**CAUTIONS**

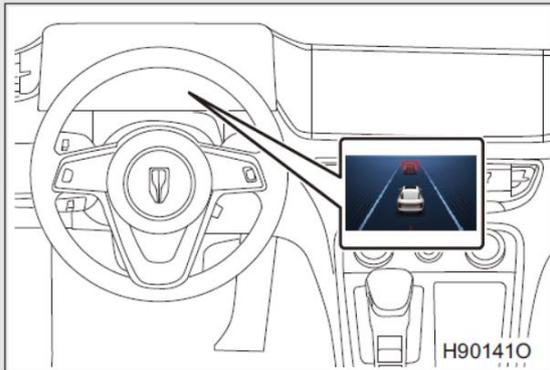
- For the sake of safety, the occupants must wear seat belts properly.
- FCW is only one of the driving assist systems. Do not rely on it more than necessary. Driver shall drive with caution.
- FCW only makes warning for collision danger. Driver must operate the brake pedal or the steering wheel to avoid collision.
- FCW may not be able to identify the modified or decorated vehicles with special appearance.
- The FCW obtains the vehicle information by recognizing the rear of the vehicle, so no warning is given to the oncoming vehicle and the horizontally crossing vehicle ahead.
- Complex traffic conditions may cause the FCW to delay the recognition of the vehicle, resulting in lagged alarm.
- Curved, hilly or unusual bumpy roads may cause the FCW not to detect the vehicle ahead. Exercise greater caution to drive.
- The FCW is an alarm system, but it cannot detect the vehicles in all situations. For example, the vehicles with a largely-covered rear, strange shape (such as overloaded vehicles transporting trees), seriously-damaged rear and other.
- FCW may not recognize the narrow objects such as pedestrians or bicycles.
- When the sensor is obstructed by rain, snow, ice, fog or dust, the FCW performance may be degraded or invalidated. Exercise greater caution to drive.
- Make sure the front windshield is not modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. The modified or covered windshield may cause the FCW to deteriorate or fail.
- If the camera is displaced due to a collision, the FCW function may be degraded or failed. Have the FCW calibrated in time.
- Do not use the improperly-calibrated FCW.
- The FCW may not work properly in the scenes with strong backward lighting, road reflection and insufficient ambient lighting. Exercise greater caution to drive.
- The high chassis of the vehicles ahead or the cargo protruding from the rear of the vehicle ahead may increase the risk of danger.
- The FCW may not be able to recognize such targets as riders.
- The front bumper shall not be painted, modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment, otherwise it may cause the performance of the forward millimeter wave radar sensor to decline or fail!
- Extreme weather such as severe snow, rain, ice, and dense fog may cause the performance of the forward millimeter wave radar sensor to decline or fail. In this case, please use FCW system carefully.
- The displacement of the forward millimeter-wave radar sensor due to a collision may cause the FCW function to decline or malfunction. Please calibrate the forward millimeter-wave radar sensor in time.
- Do not use a forward millimeter wave radar sensor that is not properly calibrated.

**NOTICES**

- **To avoid interfering with the driver by false alarm, the system will not alarm when:**
 - Front windshield is damaged or replaced.
 - The vehicle speed is lower than 8km/h.
 - Within 3 seconds of the previous warning.
 - The steering wheel is turned fast or to an excessive angle.
 - The accelerator pedal is pressed suddenly, resulting in a large pedal displacement.

AEB (Autonomous Emergency Braking) system*

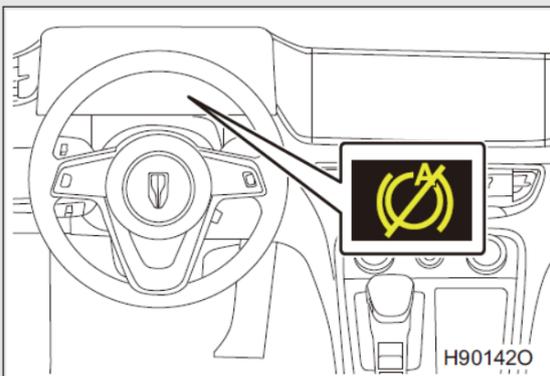
The AEB (Autonomous Emergency Braking) is activated between 8km/h and 80km/h. When in an emergency, your vehicle may collide with the vehicle ahead and you do not apply emergency braking or make emergency steering in time, the AEB will assist you in applying a braking force to avoid or mitigate the collision.



If the AEB is activated, the alarm information appears on the combination instrument and an alarm sound is heard.

■ AEB ON/OFF

The AEB can be set to turn on and off in the settings of the audio system. (→ P. 229)



If the system is turned off, the indicator light for the AEB OFF is illuminated on the combination instrument.

■ Adjusting or calibrating AEB system

Adjust or calibrate the AEB in the following situations. Otherwise AEB may not function properly.

- Front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- Remove and install the advanced driver assistance system camera unit or radar positioning bracket.
- After adjusting wheel alignment.
- The front bumper is hit or deformed.

Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

**CAUTIONS**

- For the sake of safety, the occupants must wear seat belts properly.
- AEB is only one of the driving assist systems. Do not rely on it more than necessary. Driver shall drive with caution.
- AEB may not be able to identify the modified or decorated vehicles with special appearance.
- Curved, hilly or unusual bumpy roads may cause the FCW not to detect the vehicle ahead. Exercise greater caution to drive.
- The AEB may not be able to recognize such targets as riders.
- When the electronic stability control (ESC) is turned off or failed, the braking function of the AEB will not be activated.
- The system may not work properly if there is heavy snow or rain
- The AEB may not work properly in the scenes with strong backward lighting, road reflection and insufficient ambient lighting. Exercise greater caution to drive.
- If your vehicle is needed to tow a disabled vehicle or a trailer, deactivate the AEB. When the brakes are controlled under towing conditions, the safety of the vehicle deteriorates.
- The high chassis of the vehicles ahead or the cargo protruding from the rear of the vehicle ahead may increase the risk of danger.
- Make sure the front windshield is not modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. The modified or covered windshield may cause the AEB to deteriorate or fail.
- If the camera is displaced due to a collision, the AEB function may be degraded or failed. Have the AEB calibrated in time.
- Do not use the improperly-calibrated AEB.
- The AEB obtains the vehicle information by recognizing the rear of the vehicle, so no warning is given to the oncoming vehicle and the horizontally crossing vehicle ahead.
- The AEB is an assistance system, but it cannot detect the vehicles in all situations. For example, the vehicles with a largely-covered rear, strange shape (such as overloaded vehicles transporting trees), seriously-damaged rear and other.
- When your vehicle is driving on a curve, the AEB may not be able to accurately determine the state of a stationary object in the direction of traveling. Therefore, the AEB may not perform active emergency brake assistance.
- The AEB cannot help you in all circumstances, so you should not rely entirely on it but focus on observing the road conditions to ensure driving safety.
- The AEB system is an active auxiliary safety system, but it cannot completely prevent your vehicle from colliding with the vehicle ahead in all circumstances. It is your responsibilities to know how to drive and how to avoid dangerous situations. You should apply the brakes as soon as possible in an emergency.
- If the AEB system is activated, when the vehicle is stopped, the driver must control the vehicle in time to prevent the vehicle from starting again and causing the vehicle to roll backwards.



CAUTIONS

- **The front bumper shall not be painted, modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment, otherwise it may cause the performance of the forward millimeter wave radar sensor to decline or fail!**
- **Extreme weather such as severe snow, rain, ice, and dense fog may cause the performance of the forward millimeter wave radar sensor to decline or fail. In this case, please use AEB system carefully.**
- **The displacement of the forward millimeter-wave radar sensor due to a collision may cause the AEB function to decline or malfunction. Please calibrate the forward millimeter-wave radar sensor in time.**
- **Do not use a forward millimeter wave radar sensor that is not properly calibrated.**

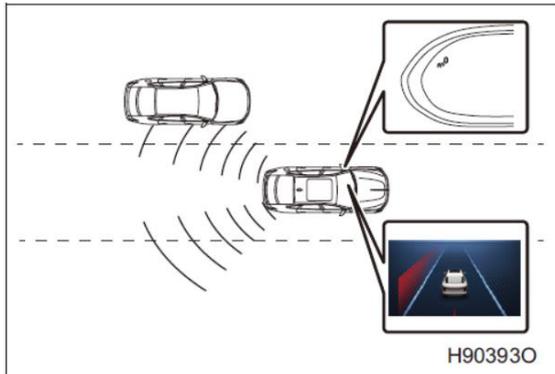


NOTICES

- **To avoid interfering with the driver by false alarm, the system will not alarm when:**
 - The vehicle speed is lower than 8km/h.
 - Within 20s of the previous warning.
- **When the AEB system is activated, if one of the following conditions occurs, the AEB will be deactivated to stop braking immediately:**
 - The steering wheel is turned fast or to an excessive angle.
 - The accelerator pedal is pressed suddenly, resulting in a large pedal displacement.
 - When the vehicle speed falls below the threshold of 45 km/h.
- **If one of the following conditions occurs, the AEB will not be activated. It is intended to allow you to control your vehicle by yourself without disturbing:**
 - ESC/TCS/ABS are activated.
 - The shift lever is in R.
 - Any door is not closed.
 - Engine hood is not closed.
 - The driver unfastened his seat belt.
 - Auto Hold function is activated.
 - Within 20s of the previous warning.
 - The vehicle speed is lower than about 8km/h.
 - The steering wheel is turned fast or to an excessive angle.
 - The accelerator pedal is pressed suddenly, resulting in a large pedal displacement.

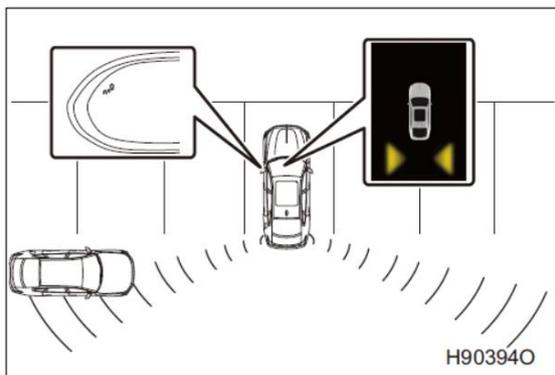
The system has the functions of blind spot detection, lane change assist, rear crossing traffic alert, door opening warning, and rear collision warning, which provide assistance to the driver when driving.

Blind spot detection and lane change assist



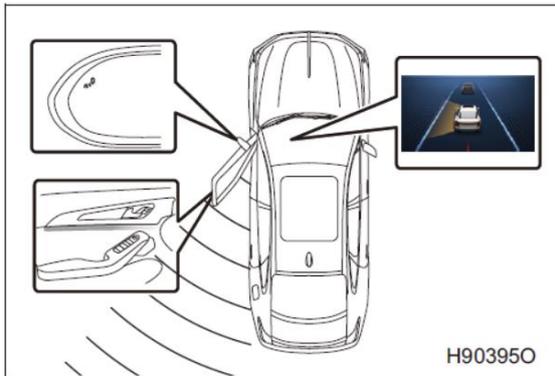
When the shift lever is at a gear other than R and the vehicle speed is greater than 20km/h, if the lateral vehicle behind is in the 7m blind zone or 7~70m behind the vehicle and meets the collision conditions, the corresponding side exterior rear-view mirror warning indicator will be illuminated, and alarm information appears on the combination instrument. If the corresponding side turn signal light switch is turned on at this time, the warning indicator will flash and a warning tone will sound to remind the driver that it is dangerous to change lanes at this time. When the vehicle speed is less than 15km/h, the function is turned off.

Rear crossing traffic alert(RCTA)



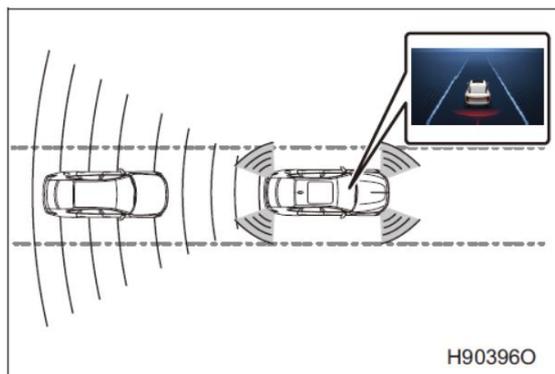
When the gear is in the R and the vehicle speed is 0~10km/h, if there are crossing vehicles, electric vehicles, bicycles and other targets in the range of 30m in the lateral direction and 7m in the longitudinal direction behind the vehicle, the indicator light in the corresponding side rear-mirror illuminates, and the audio system display shows an alarm message, prompting the driver that reversing may be dangerous at this time.

Door opening warning



When the gear is in a position other than R and the vehicle speed is 0~3km/h, if there is a vehicle approaching within the range of 2m in the lateral direction and 30m in the longitudinal direction behind the vehicle, the warning indicator in the corresponding side rear-view mirror illuminates and the corresponding side door mood light is always on, the combination instrument displays an alarm message. At this time, when the door is opened, the indicator light flashes. When the corresponding side door mood light flashes, the system sounds warning tone to remind the driver that it is dangerous to open the door. When the vehicle speed is higher than 3km/h, the function is turned off.

Rear-end collision warning



When the gear is in a position other than R, the vehicle speed is higher than 0km/h and the vehicle is locked, if the vehicle behind is within 55m of the vehicle, the sensor will monitor the driving status of the following vehicle behind the vehicle to determine the risk level of rear-end collision. According to this risk level, the instrument will display an alarm message, and meanwhile trigger the emergency flasher to flash, reminding the driver and the vehicle behind that there is a risk of collision.

BSD ON/OFF

The BSD functions can be set to turn on and off respectively in the settings of the audio system. (→ P.228,229)

■ **The BSD and lane change assist may not alarm or delay the alarm if one of the following conditions occurs:**

- When driving on a steep slope.
- When driving through a mountain top or mountain road.
- When there is a height difference between the driving lane and the adjacent lane.
- The turning radius is small.
- Long-term driving on snow-covered roads.

- A large amount of snow or ice gathered near the radar sensor.
- **The BSD and lane change assist may advance or expand the alarm range if one of the following conditions occurs:**
 - If the two lanes are too narrow, an alarm will occur in the other lane.
 - Driving on roads with fixed obstacles (such as tunnel walls, viaduct concrete barriers, metal billboards, etc.) near the side of the vehicle for a long period of time.
- **RCTA may not be able to make alarm or expand the alarm range if one of the following conditions occurs:**
 - Vehicle parked at an angle.
 - Reversing speed is higher than 10km/h.
 - A large amount of snow or ice gathered near the radar sensor.
 - The target vehicle speed and yaw angle keep changing in the detection area.
 - A vehicle is approaching the vehicle directly from behind.
- **Door opening warning may not be able to make alarm or expand the alarm range if one of the following conditions occurs:**
 - A large amount of snow or ice gathered near the radar sensor.
 - Driving on roads with fixed obstacles (such as tunnel walls, viaduct concrete barriers, metal billboards, etc.) near the side of the vehicle.
- **Rear-end collision warning may not be able to make alarm or expand the alarm range if one of the following conditions occurs:**
 - A large amount of snow or ice gathered near the radar sensor.
 - The target vehicle speed and yaw angle keep changing in the detection area.



NOTICES

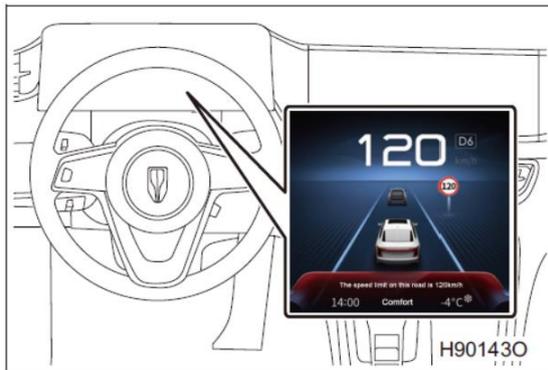
- **Be careful not to bump the rear bumper when parking, otherwise the sensor in the bumper may be displaced or damaged, causing the system to automatically deactivate or have its function affected.**
- **To ensure the normal operation of the system, the sensors in the bumper must be kept clean and must not be covered by other objects.**
- **The rear bumper can only be sprayed with paint approved by the company. Sprayed with other types of paint may cause BSD to be restricted or malfunctioning.**
- **If BSD does not work normally, you should deactivate the system immediately, and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for maintenance.**
- **Repaired BSD needs to be calibrated. For details, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.**
- **BSD system only serves as an auxiliary reminder and cannot completely avoid vehicle collisions in the blind spot. Before changing lanes, be sure to check the rearview mirror, glance backwards and use the turn signal.**
- **BSD system may make false alarms or omissions under special working conditions, such as wet weather and high vehicle speed, which is normal.**
- **When the blind spot detection radar behind the vehicle is blocked, the system will not work, and it needs to be cleaned up in time.**
- **BSD system is subject to the physical laws and system conditions, and may not be able to correctly recognize the traffic conditions under certain driving conditions. For example:**
 - On roads with sharp bends.
 - On the lanes with different widths.
 - On the undulating roads in the mountains.
 - In severe weather conditions.
 - At some special buildings on the roadside, such as high or indented highway guardrails.

**CAUTIONS**

- **BSD is only one of the driving assist systems. Do not rely on it more than necessary. Driver shall drive with caution.**
- **Driver is the leading operator of the vehicle while BSD system only serves as an auxiliary reminder, and the driver shall always maintain the control to the vehicle and bear full responsibility.**
- **When towing a vehicle or installed with accessories (such as bicycle brackets) at the rear, turn off the radar detection system. Otherwise, the radio waves emitted by the radar will be blocked and the system will not work properly.**
- **BSD can detect targets such as automobiles, electric bicycles, bicycles, etc. If the target vehicle is featured with irregular shape, modification, and coating coverage, its recognition effect cannot be guaranteed, and the recognition of pedestrians, animals or other objects cannot be guaranteed. Drive carefully at this time.**
- **The intelligent technology of BSD cannot violate the laws of physics and has certain system limitation. It can only work within the limits of the system. Therefore, the driver still needs to focus on observing the road and traffic conditions to prevent accidents.**
 - Be sure to adjust the speed and safety distance from the vehicle ahead according to the visibility, weather conditions, road and traffic conditions at the time.
 - Always hold the steering wheel with both hands when driving, and be ready to turn at any time.
 - Be sure to pay attention to the exterior rearview mirror indicator and the message displayed on the multi-function display of the combination instrument, and operate the vehicle correctly according to the instructions.
 - BSD system may respond to specific roadside buildings (such as taller or offset guardrails), and therefore make false alarms.
 - You should always pay attention to the road and surrounding conditions of the vehicle.
 - When the sensor is dirty or damaged, do not use the BSD system, in this case the system function may be affected.
 - When exposed to direct sunlight, the field of view through the exterior rear-view mirror may be restricted.
 - When driving, be sure to strictly follow the warning lights/indicators and the related text message, otherwise, it is liable to cause accidents, leading to serious personal injury.

TSR (Traffic Sign Recognition) system*

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) system can accurately recognize the speed limit sign and speed limit removal sign in front of the vehicle during the driving.



When the system recognizes the speed limit sign, if the vehicle speed is lower than the speed limit value, the combination instrument will only display the current speed limit requirement through the indicator light; and if the vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit value, the combination instrument will remind the driver by sound/icon/text message, etc.

When the system recognizes the speed limit removal sign, the indicator light goes out and the speed limit reminder is canceled.

TSR system ON/OFF

The TSR can be set to turn on and off in the settings of the audio system. (→ P. 229)

■ The system will cancel the speed limit alarm if one of the following conditions occurs:

- The vehicle passed the speed limit sign for a certain distance.
- Turn on the turn signal and make a turn.
- U-turn at low speed.

■ Adjusting or calibrating TSR system

Adjust or calibrate the TSR in the following situations. Otherwise TSR may not function properly.

- Front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- After performing four-wheel alignment.
- The advanced driver assistance system camera unit replaced.

Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for calibration.

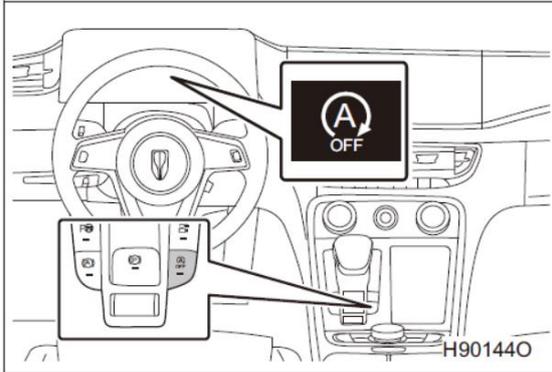
**CAUTIONS**

- **TSR is only one of the driving assist systems. Do not rely on it more than necessary. Driver shall drive with caution.**
- **Driver is the leading operator of the vehicle, and shall always maintain the control to the vehicle and bear full responsibility.**
- **The system may not work properly if there is heavy snow or rain**
- **The TSR may not work properly in the scenes with strong backward lighting, road reflection and insufficient ambient lighting. Exercise greater caution to drive.**
- **Make sure the front windshield is not modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. The modified or covered windshield may cause the TSR to deteriorate or fail.**
- **If the camera is displaced due to a collision, the TSR function may be degraded or failed. Have the TSR calibrated in time.**
- **When the sign is not in a style that conforms to regulations, or is not placed in a position that conforms to regulations, the system will not be able to recognize it normally.**

Idling start/stop system

The purpose of the ISSS (Idling Start/Stop System) is to control the engine idle start and stop based on the driving operation and system requirements during a short stop.

Idling start/stop system ON/OFF



If the ISSS OFF button is pressed, the button indicator light is lit and the ISSS is deactivated. If the button is pressed again, the button indicator light goes out and the ISSS is activated.

- If the ISSS OFF button is pressed while parking
 - When the engine is stopped by the ISSS, pressing the ISSS OFF button restarts the engine. Meanwhile, the ISSS is deactivated and the indicator light on the combination instrument is lit.
 - When the ISSS is in the OFF state, pressing the ISSS OFF button resumes the ISSS without stopping the engine.

Working process of the idling start/stop system

- Stopping the engine
 - With your vehicle traveling in D position, depressing the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero and holding the brake pedal there stops the engine automatically. The ISSS working indicator light on the combination instrument is lit.
 - With your vehicle traveling in D position, depressing the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero, shifting to P/N from D and holding the brake pedal there stops the engine automatically. The ISSS working indicator light on the combination instrument is lit.
 - With your vehicle traveling in D position, depressing the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero, shifting to P from D and releasing the brake pedal there stops the engine automatically. The ISSS working indicator light on the combination instrument is lit.
 - With your vehicle traveling in D position, depressing the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero and EPB/AUTO HOLD works to stop the engine automatically. The ISSS working indicator light on the combination instrument is lit.

- Start the engine
 - With your vehicle in D/N, the engine stopped and the brake pedal depressed, releasing the brake pedal starts the engine automatically.
 - With your vehicle in P, the engine stopped, depressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal again starts the engine automatically.
 - With EPB/AUTO HOLD activated, depressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal again starts the engine automatically.
 - Shifting the gear to R starts the engine automatically.
 - Turning the steering wheel may start the engine automatically.
 - Turning on the air conditioner or the front windshield forced defrosting/defogging function may start the engine automatically.

Idling start/stop system indicator light

- If the ISSS working indicator light (green) on the combination instrument is lit, it indicates that the ISSS is activated and in working.
- If the ISSS limited indicator light (white) on the combination instrument is lit, it indicates that the ISSS is activated but does not meet the operating conditions.
- If the ISSS malfunction indicator light (yellow) on the combination instrument is lit, it indicates that the ISSS is malfunctioning.

Working conditions of the idling start/stop system

- Working conditions of the idling start/stop system
 - Pre-conditions for automatic engine stop

The engine stops automatically if all the following conditions are met:

 - No-idling start/stop system corresponding fault.
 - The ISSS is activated.
 - The driver door is closed.
 - Driver side seat belt is fastened.
 - Engine hood is closed.
 - Air conditioning system meets the requirements.
 - Auto parking assist is OFF.
 - The battery has good performance and is high.
 - The current working conditions of the vehicle meet the set ISSS conditions.
 - The selector lever is set in a position other than R.
 - The steering wheel angle is not excessive.
 - Driving mode is in comfort or Eco mode.

- Pre-conditions for automatic engine start
The engine starts automatically if all the following conditions are met:
 - No-idling start/stop system corresponding fault.
 - The driver door is closed.
 - Engine hood is closed.
 - Driver side seat belt is fastened.
- The engine starts again itself without your operation (one of the conditions is met).
 - The battery status does not meet the conditions.
 - Coolant temperature does not meet the conditions.
 - The brake vacuum is low.
 - Air conditioning system does not meet the working conditions.



CAUTIONS

■ When idling start/stop system is in working

- Vehicles equipped with a 48V system have a variety of start-stop methods. The system will make judgments based on the 48V battery status, ambient temperature and other conditions and automatically select the optimal start-stop method.
- Do not leave the vehicle when the ISSS stops the engine. Accidents may occur due to the engine's automatic starting function.
- Do not use the ISSS to stop the engine if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated place. Due to the engine's automatic starting function, the engine may restart, causing the exhaust gas to gather and enter the vehicle, which may seriously endanger the health or even result in death.
- To ensure safety, it is necessary to ensure that the door is closed, the driver seat belt is fastened, the hood is closed, and the steering wheel is corrected, otherwise ISSS cannot be activated, and the automatic stop or automatic start cannot be entered.
- To prevent frequent start and stop following the vehicle ahead under severe congestions, the vehicle speed needs to be higher than 3km/h after stopping to activate ISSS again; when shifted to the gear D for the first time from R, the vehicle speed needs to be higher than 10km/h to activate ISSS.
- In the idling stop state, if the system detects that the relevant conditions are not met, the engine may start automatically even if the driver does not depress the brake pedal.
- In the idling stop state, the instrument will prompt the manual start of the engine in case that the driver performs operations such as unfastening the seat belt or opening the door, and triggering the start-up operation, then the driver needs to resume these operations or manually start the vehicle through the engine switch.

- **To ensure the driveability, comfort and protection of the systems of the vehicle, many preconditions are made for activating the ISSS, and it will be prohibited under the conditions such as low battery or temperature, unsuitable air conditioning system, low engine coolant temperature, high altitude, non-comfort or Eco driving mode, steep slope, low brake vacuum, high transmission temperature, and the related system malfunctions. After braking to stop the vehicle, if the engine cannot be stopped due to the above conditions, the ISSS limited indicator lamp will appear on the combination instrument. Therefore, you do not need to concern about whether to stop during the driving process. The ISSS has integrated the driveability, safety, and comfort factors to provide comprehensive protection.**

**NOTICES**

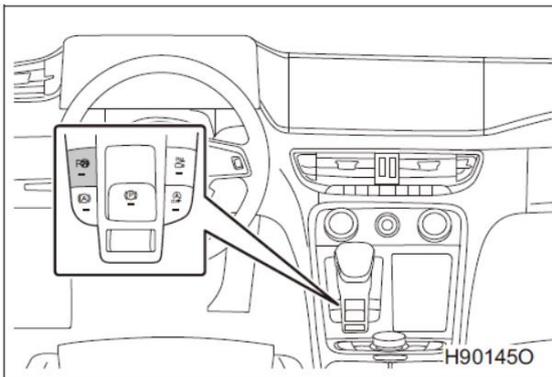
- **After the engine stops automatically, if the engine switch is pressed, the vehicle will not be started.**
- **When the vehicle is in the idle-stop state, the start-stop function is terminated if one of the following conditions occurs. If you trigger the start-up operation, the instrument reminds you of starting the engine manually.**
 - The hood is opened or the transmission sends a signal to disable start-up.
 - The seat belt is unfastened and the door is opened.
 - The seatbelt is still unfastened or the door is still opened after a period of time.
- **When the A/C system is in one of the following states, the ISSS is not allowed to be activated:**
 - The A/C system is in defrosting/defogging mode.
 - The temperature in the vehicle has not reached the target comfort temperature range.
 - Outdoor temperature is high or low.
- **When the transmission sends a disabled start/stop signal, the ISSS is not allowed to be activated.**
 - Prevent the risk of dragging caused by the engagement of drive chains when starting after stopping.
- **You are the most important controller of your vehicle. The idling start/stop system is only a driving assistance system. You should control your vehicle based on the actual road conditions and drive it with caution and bear full responsibility.**

APA (Auto Parking Assist) system*

Auto Parking Assist(APA)system measures the length of the parking spaces on both sides of the road through ultrasonic waves and cameras. If the appropriate parking space is selected, the system automatically controls the vehicle to perform auto parking and parks the vehicle in the selected parking space. APA includes automatic parking-in and automatic parking-out. They can be selected through the multimedia display.

Before using the automatic parking function, be sure to check the automatic parking steps, precautions and warnings described in this section to prevent accidents.

Activating APA system



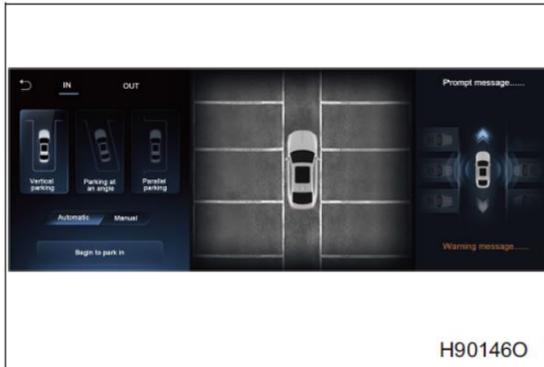
Press the APA button to enter the automatic parking selection interface.



You may select the parking mode of parking-in or parking-out in the parking selection interface.

Auto parking-in

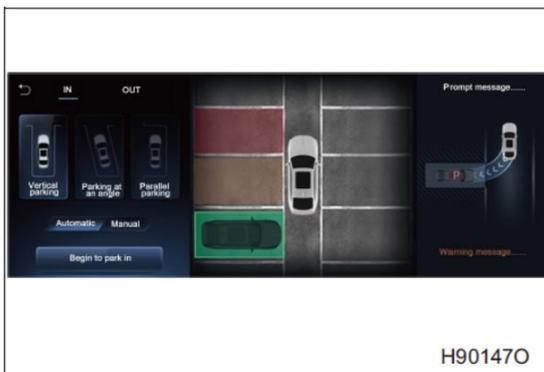
■ Select the parking space type



You may search parking spaces through automatic mode and manual mode. And each mode has three types of parking spaces: vertical parking, inclined parking, and horizontal parking.

When the vehicle speed is not zero, the system defaults to automatic mode. Only when the vehicle speed is zero, the manual mode can be selected.

■ Select parking space



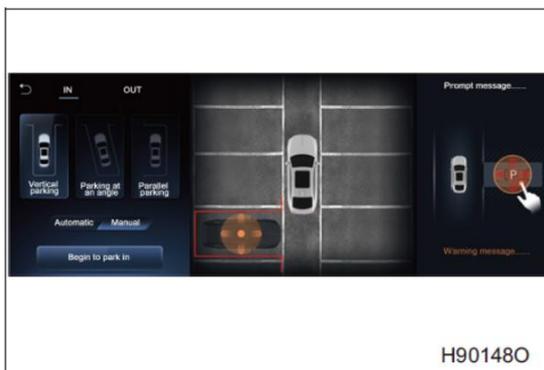
Method A: Automatic mode selection

When the automatic mode is selected, it defaults to full parking space type, and all parking space types can be searched. If the user has selected a type, the search success rate of the single parking space type can be improved. The system will recognize the parking spaces of the same type as that selected by the user on both sides in the driving direction during driving. The system defaults the preferred parking space as the target parking space; and you can also touch other optional parking spaces on the display screen as the target parking space.

Red: unavailable parking spaces

Yellow: available parking spaces

Green: preferred parking space

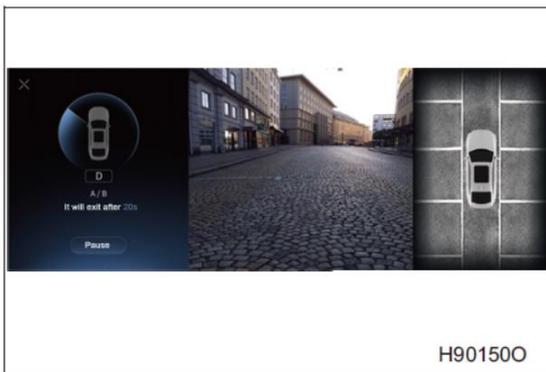


Method B: Manual mode selection

After selecting the manual mode and the parking space type, the corresponding target parking space frame will appear on the screen, which can be dragged and rotated. When the vehicle in the parking space frame is shown in red, it means that the vehicle cannot be parked in the area, the position and posture of the target parking space frame on the screen needs to be adjusted.

■ Parking control

With the target parking space selected, depress the brake pedal, touch the "Start Parking-in" button, and release the brake pedal to start parking.

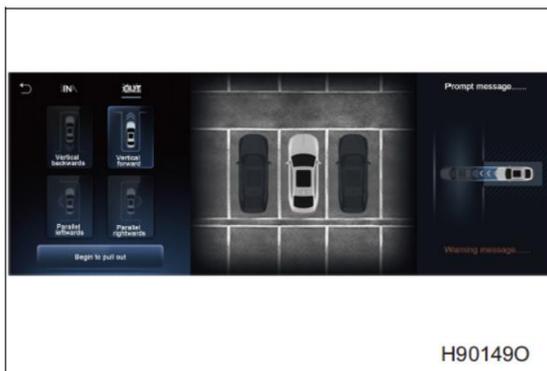


The parking process can be controlled through the display screen during parking.

When parking, the screen will show the parking steps, the current vehicle operating state and the surrounding images of the vehicle.

Auto parking-out

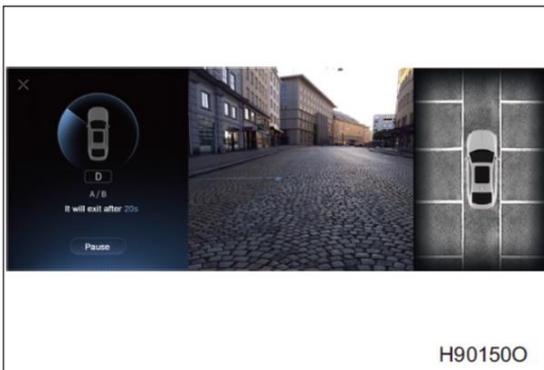
■ Select the parking-out type



Four types of parking-out can be selected: vertical backwards, vertical forward, parallel leftwards, and parallel rightwards through the audio system display screen.

■ Parking-out control

With the parking-out type selected, depress the brake pedal, touch the "Start Parking-out" button, and release the brake pedal to start parking out.



The parking process can be controlled through the display screen during parking out.

■ Operating conditions for parking:

- In the process of searching a parking space, the vehicle speed should be lower than 20km/h, and when the vehicle speed is higher than 20km/h, it prompts to slow down.
- There is no manual operation of the steering wheel in the process of parking.
- The ESC OFF switch is not activated.
- The ESC/ABS/TCS function is not activated.
- The APA/ESC/ABS/TCS/EPS functions properly.

■ Conditions to deactivate parking:

- The vehicle speed is higher than 30km/h during the process of searching a parking space.
- The driver operates the steering wheel.
- Any door opened.
- Touch the parking canceling button.
- Parking is still uncompleted beyond the maximum number of movements after the automatic parking is activated.
- The SACC function is activated.
- The ESC OFF switch is activated.
- The ESC/ABS/TCS function intervenes.
- The APA/ESC/ABS/TCS/EPS fails.

- **During the automatic parking process, it is necessary to observe the surrounding conditions of the vehicle throughout the entire process. When an emergency situation occurs and braking is required, the driver needs to touch the parking canceling button or depress the brake pedal or pull the EPB switch to stop the vehicle.**



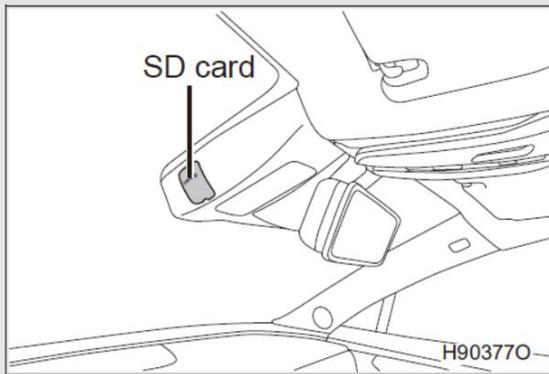
NOTICES

- **You are the most important controller of the vehicle. The APA is only a driving assistance system. Although the system can provide assistance to the driver when parking, it cannot replace the driver for parking, and you must bear the parking responsibility. In the process of parking, the driver should pay attention to the surrounding environment of the vehicle and control the vehicle if necessary to avoid danger.**
- **To ensure the success rate and safety, the system needs to be used in the following environmental conditions:**
 - The road surface is flat, the obstacle is less than 5cm high, and the slope does not exceed 4 degrees.
 - The parking space lines are clear and the parking space is large enough.
 - The weather is good, and the driver can see the environment near the parking space clearly and unobstructed.
 - The driving road is dry and non-slip.
- **In the process of automatically searching for parking spaces, the following situations should be paid attention to:**
 - The vehicle needs to move close to the parking space. Failure to do so may cause the parking space not to be recognized.
 - The steering angle of the vehicle should not be excessive, otherwise it may cause failure of the parking space recognition.
 - The vehicle speed should not be higher than 20km/h, higher than which may cause failure of the parking space recognition.
 - Rain, snow, fog or dark light may reduce the recognition rate of parking spaces.
 - When the parking space is too small, the parking space lines are not clear, or the parking space is irregular, it may cause failure to search a parking space.
 - In the process of searching a parking space, the image can only assist the driver, and the driver needs to pay attention to the surrounding environment in real time.
- **In the process of automatically parking, the following situations should be paid attention to:**
 - The distance prompting function may have blind spots, and the driver needs to pay attention to the surrounding environment in real time.
 - Insufficient parking space may cause failure of parking.
 - Steep slope may cause failure of parking. ● Slippery roads may cause failure of parking.
 - Uneven road surface, steps or low obstacles may cause failure of parking.
 - In the process of parking, the driver should not operate the pedals, shift lever and steering wheel, otherwise the parking will be terminated.
- **If you need to replace a tire, make sure that the size and type of the tire for replacement is exactly the same as those of the original tire and check it via the wheel alignment.**

**CAUTIONS**

- Pay special attention to the people, animals, and various obstacles around the vehicle. The sensors have undetectable blind spots.
- When searching for parking space or during parking, make sure there are no obstacles, such as stones, fine columns or draw bars, in the parking space before parking your vehicle in it, as the system may not detect such obstacles.
- The system may not be able to recognize the surface or structure of some objects (such as barbed wire fences, fluffy snow, angular pillar, etc.). Therefore, check whether there is enough space in the parking space before parking your vehicle.
- If the parking distance warning system detects an obstacle, the obstacle may get out of the detection range of the sensor when the vehicle gets close to the obstacle (the case extremely easily occurs when too high and too low obstacles are detected), therefore, these objects are not detected. Do not ignore the alarm from the parking distance warning system. Otherwise, the vehicle may be at risk of collision.
- Due to the influences of various external sound fields and electromagnetic fields (e.g., other vehicles using ultrasonic ranging, air pressure, engine noise, electronically controlled gears and induction coils), the system cannot achieve absolute anti-interference.
- The immunity from interference and detection performance of the ultrasonic ranging system may be degraded due to environmental conditions and obstacle reflection characteristics, and this is determined by the physical properties of ultrasonic propagation.
- The mounting position of the sensor has an important influence on the system performance. This is reflected in the reflection of the bumper surface, the reflection of the ground echo and the detection range.
- Avoid cleaning the sensor with high-pressure cleaner or steam cleaner, so as to avoid damage to the sensor. Adopt small water stream to wash the sensor surface for a short time during vehicle cleaning, and maintain a distance over 10 cm.
- The sound waves transmitting in the air is refracted and diffracted based on the physical properties. The difference in temperature in the air is one of the most important factors in the generation of nonuniform propagation media, thereby leading to acoustic diffraction.
- The detection performance of ultrasonic detection equipment can be affected by the following factors:
 - Hot exhaust gas.
 - High-temperature asphalt pavement.
 - Summer breeze.
 - Temperature stratification.
- When the bumper temperature is different from the ambient air temperature (usually occurring in winter), temperature stratification occurs, resulting in acoustic wave diffraction. Echoes are generated in some bumper structures, so that there is a risk of false alarms.
- Some important factors that can lead to a reduced detection range or no detection:
 - The bumper surface is covered with snow or sludge.
 - The sensor surface is covered with lime mud or ice.
 - High acoustic attenuation (for example, in a dry and hot environment).
 - In heavy rain or foam.
 - Obstacles with absorbing materials.
 - Edge of flat obstacle facing the sensor, and echoes only occur within a specific range of angle.

TripREC automatically records the videos, sounds and driving information during driving.



Turning the engine switch to "IG-ON" automatically activates the TripREC.

Turning the engine switch to "IG-OFF" automatically deactivates the TripREC.

Auto deactivation can be set to immediate or delayed deactivation.

Emergency recording

The emergency recording function is divided into automatic emergency recording and manual emergency recording.

Automatic emergency recording: when the system determines that the vehicle is about to collide, the vehicle has already collided, etc., the emergency recording automatically activates to record the video and audio information before and after triggering for a period of time.

Manual emergency recording: pressing and holding the multi-function button on the steering wheel to manually activate the emergency recording to record the video and audio information before and after the button is pressed for a period of time.

Note: manual emergency recording and snapshot operations can only be performed after the multi-function button is set to the driving record.

(→ P.232)

TripREC setting

The TripREC can be set in the settings of the audio system. (→ P.235)

■ Storage of video

Common video and emergency video are stored separately and do not occupy storage space for each other.

- Common recording is a loop recording. When the storage space is insufficient, the previous recording is automatically overwritten.
- When the emergency recording storage space is insufficient, it needs to be deleted manually.

■ Reading of video

The video can be played through the audio system or Hong Qi Smart Connect APP.

■ Storage medium

The system supports 8G-128G MicroSD card formatted as exFAT.

**CAUTIONS**

- The TripREC only has a recording function and will not interfere with the normal driving. The driver must drive with caution.
- Low-visibility weather, such as heavy fog, heavy rain, or heavy snow may cause the failure of TripREC in recording the video clearly.
- The TripREC may not be able to record the video clearly in the scenes with strong backward lighting or insufficient ambient lighting.
- When snow, ice or dust stains on the windshield block the camera, please clean up in time.

**NOTICES**

- When a new MicroSD card is used, the MicroSD card must be formatted in the settings of the audio system to convert the MicroSD card format to exFAT file system format. (→ P. 235)
- When replacing the MicroSD card, please use a MicroSD card with a transmission rate of class10 and above.
- Do not remove the memory card while recording, as this may damage the video file and/or the memory card.

Driver assistance system

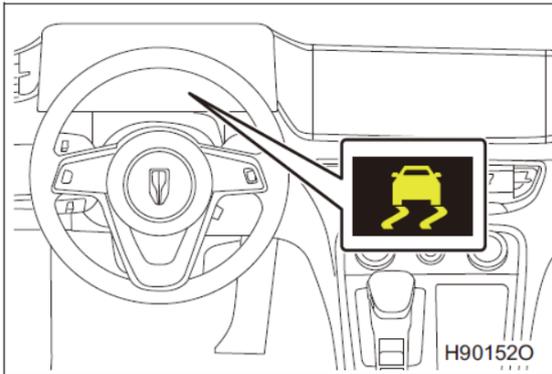
Functions integrated by ESC (Electronic Stability Control), which may be different according to different vehicle models. To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

- Antilock Braking System (ABS)
Help to prevent skidding or deviation due to wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface.
- Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD)
Distribute dynamic brake force of front and rear wheels in proportion according to vehicle load, road conditions and brake force changes to improve the vehicle braking stability and handling.
- Traction Control System (TCS)
Maintains drive power and help prevent any of the drive wheels from spinning when the vehicle is started or accelerated on a slippery road surface.
- Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)
To compensate the brake force in case of depressing the brake pedal quickly and increase the brake force effectively.
- Hydraulic Brake Boost (HBB)
To compensate the brake force in case of low brake vacuum and increase the brake force effectively.
- Hill Hold Control (HHC)
When the vehicle starts on a slope, this function will properly maintain the brake pressure applied by the driver to prevent the vehicle from rolling within a certain period of time that the driver moves his(her) foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC)
Help to prevent skidding and guarantee the correct running track of vehicle when turn suddenly, or turn while driving on a slippery road surface.
- Controlled Deceleration for ACC-Stop & Go (CDD-S)*
Assist ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) system to realize controlled deceleration for vehicle adaptive cruise.
- Controlled Deceleration for Parking Brake (CDP)
Long pull EPB button to enter the deceleration state adaptively.
- AUTO HOLD
A function that when the vehicle is still, the parking brake is applied by the hydraulic system and the parking is briefly maintained. After that, the parking is performed by the electronic parking system, which can be turned off/on by the button.
- Automatic Brake Prefill (ABP)*
The ESC system actively prefills the brake system according to the request from the relevant controller to improve the response speed of the brake.

Electrical power steering system (EPS)

It uses motor to reduce the required force of turning steering wheel.

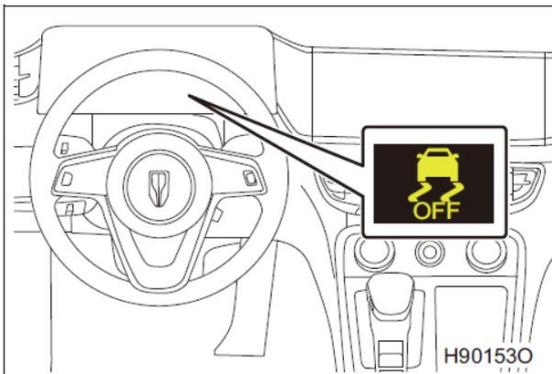
When TCS/ESC are operating



If the vehicle is in danger of wheelslip or front wheels spin, the slip indicator flashes to indicate that the TCS/ESC systems are in working.

Disabling ESC

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, the ESC may reduce the power from the engine to the wheels. Turning the system off helps the vehicle move back and forth to free it.



The ESC function can be set to turn on and off in the settings of the audio system; and when the function is turned off, the ESC OFF indicator lamp on combination instrument is lit. (→ P. 229)

■ The ESC responds automatically

Turning off the ESC/TCS and starting the engine again or the vehicle moving at a speed higher than 70km/h will activate the system automatically.

■ Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS/HBA/TCS/ESC/CDP/CDD-S/HBB and AUTO HOLD

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. The sound does not mean that the system has fault.
- Any of the following normal conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. These conditions do not mean any fault.
 - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering wheel.
 - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.



CAUTIONS

■ Handling of tires and suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driver assistance systems, and may cause a system malfunction.

■ The ABS does not operate effectively when

- Tires with inadequate gripping capability are used.
- The vehicle slips while driving at high speed on a wet or slick road.

■ Stopping distance of ABS when operating on special road surfaces

ABS is not designed for shortening the brake distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads.
- When driving with tire chains.
- When driving over bumps in the road.
- When driving over roads with potholes or roads with uneven surfaces.

■ TCS may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TCS system is operating normally. Do not drive under out-of-control or out-of-power conditions.

■ When the ESC is activated

If the indicator light flashes, always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident.

■ When ESC is off

Exercise extreme caution and drive the vehicle at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. The ESC can ensure the stability and driving force of the vehicle. Do not disable it unless there is no need to use it.

■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level. The ABS and EPS systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle. Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for further information on replacing tires and/or wheels.

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Be sure to drive in a way that is suitable for the main weather conditions in winter.

■ Preparations for driving in winter

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the outside temperatures.
 - Engine oil
 - Engine coolant
 - Washer fluid
- Make sure the battery performance is favorable.
- If necessary, have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the driving tires.

Ensure that all tires are of the same size and brand, and that the chains match the size of the tires.

■ Before driving the vehicle

Perform the followings according to the driving conditions:

- Do not forcibly open the frozen window or move the frozen wipers. Always use warm water to melt the frozen parts. Wipe the melt water immediately to prevent icing again.
- To ensure proper operation of the fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the the air intake grille.
- Remove any ice that has accumulated on the vehicle chassis.
- Periodically check for and remove any ice or snow that may have accumulated in the wheel housing or on the brakes.
- Before getting on, remove snow or mud from the soles.

■ When driving

Accelerate the vehicle slowly and drive at a reduced speed according to the road conditions.

Selecting tire chains

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains. Chain size should be regulated for each tire size.

Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on locations and types of roads. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

Install the chain on the driving tire.

Re-tighten the chain after driving 0.5 - 1.0 km.

■ **Tire chains**

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install the chain on the driving tire.
- Install tire chains following the instructions in the user manual of the tire chains.



CAUTIONS

■ **Driving when equipped with snow tires**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause serious injury or even death:

- Use tires with the specified models for your vehicle.
- Maintain the recommended air pressure.
- Do not drive in excess of the speed limits or the speed limits specified for the snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all wheels.

■ **Driving when equipped with tire chains**

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in a failure of vehicle to run safely and cause serious injury or even death:

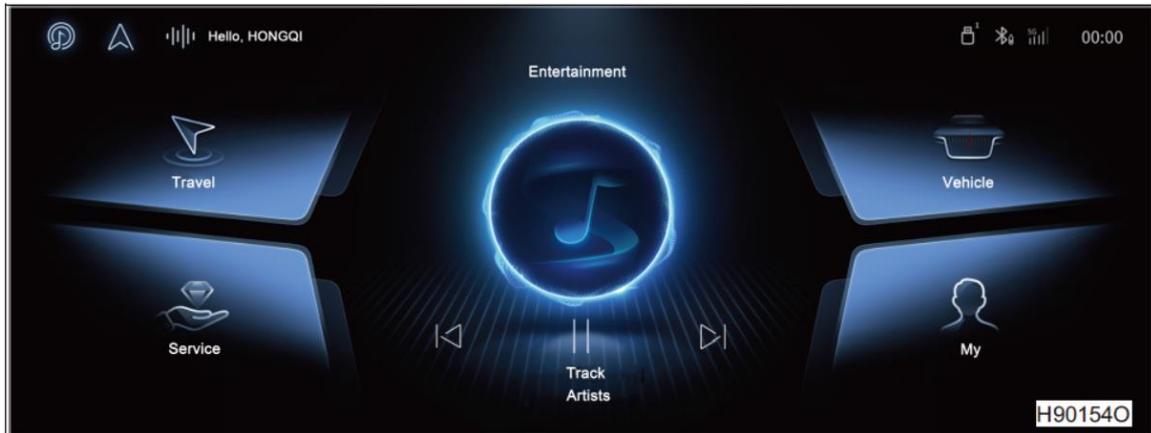
- Do not exceed the prescribed speed limits for the tire chain.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden turning and braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a bend to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.

5-1. Basic operations	
Multimedia display	216
Buttons on the audio system panel	222
USB port.....	223
5-2. Using audio system*	
Vehicle	225
Travel	237
Entertainment	243
My	246
Service	250
5-3. Using the Bluetooth® telephone	
Hands-free system	255
Bluetooth® telephone	258
5-4. Using the voice recognition function *	
Voice recognition	262
5-5. Using the mobile APP *	
Hong Qi Smar Connect APP ...	264

Multimedia display

Users can operate navigation, telephone, radio, music, vehicle settings, air conditioning and other functions through the multimedia display.

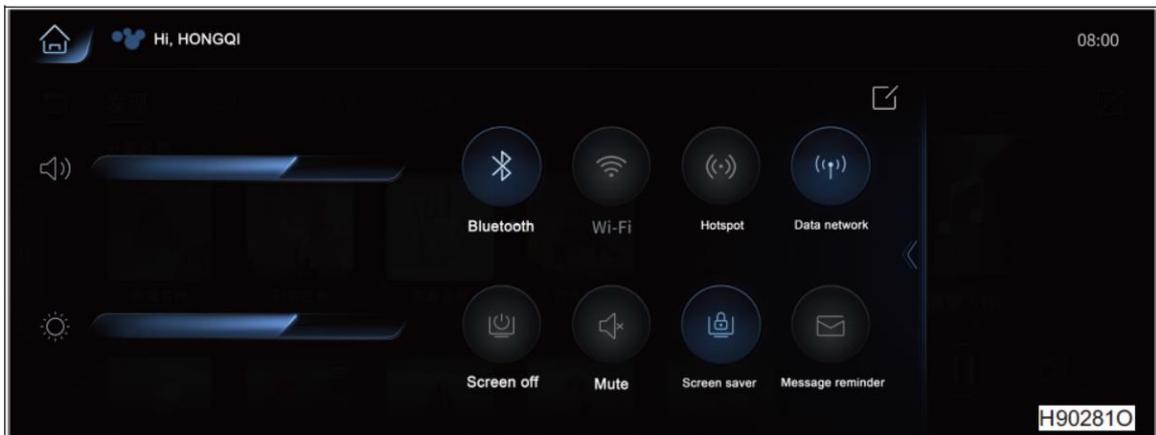
Front entertainment display



No.	Name	Function
1	My	Enter [My] interface You can view and operate the functions such as account login, driving assistant, wallet, and account settings.
2	Entertainment	Enter [Entertainment] interface You can use the Entertainment functions such as music, radio, news, and video.
3	Vehicle	Enter [Vehicle] interface You can view and operate the functions such as air conditioning settings, vehicle settings, system settings, recorder, maintenance, and electronic manuals.
4	Travel	Enter [Travel] interface You can use on-board navigation system.
5	Service	Enter [Service] interface You can view and operate the functions such as store, traffic management, and HONGQI VIP special line.

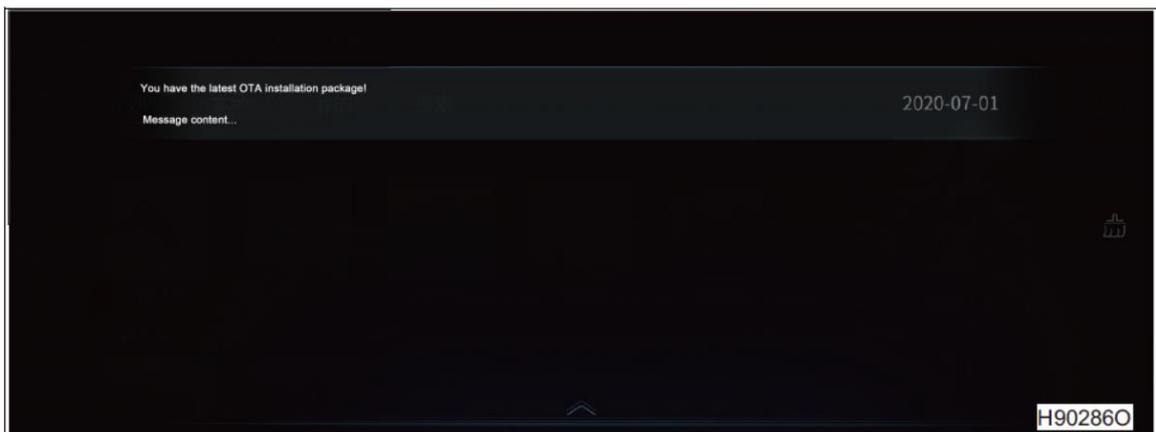
■ Shortcut menu on front entertainment display

When the audio system is on, swipe right on the left side of the screen to pull out the shortcut menu, you can perform shortcut operations to view some functions, and touch  to set the shortcut menu.



■ Message menu on front entertainment display

When the audio system is on, swipe down on the top of the screen to pull out the message menu, you can view the system messages, and touch  to delete the messages.



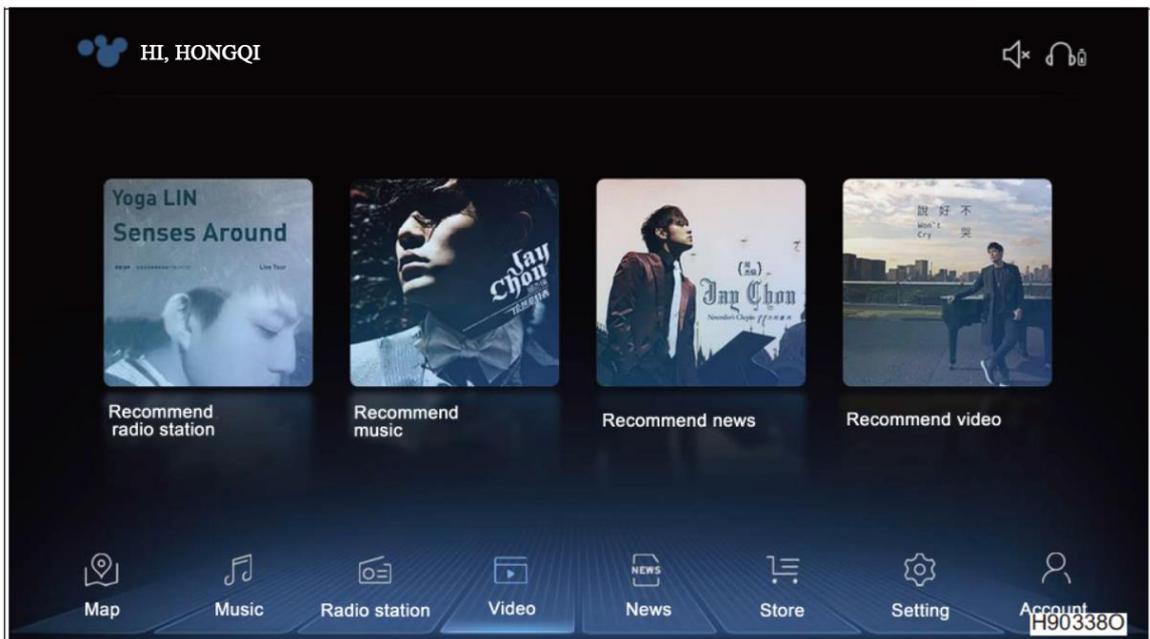
■ **Scene mode control menu on front entertainment display**

When the audio system is on, swipe left on the right side of the screen to pull out the scene mode control menu, and you can manually select the scene mode. After the selection is completed, the vehicle will automatically sets the air conditioning, audio, seat and other comfort systems for the selected scene mode. Touch  to view the description of scene function.



Rear entertainment display*

Users can view maps, music, radio stations, videos, news, store, settings, and account login on the rear entertainment display.



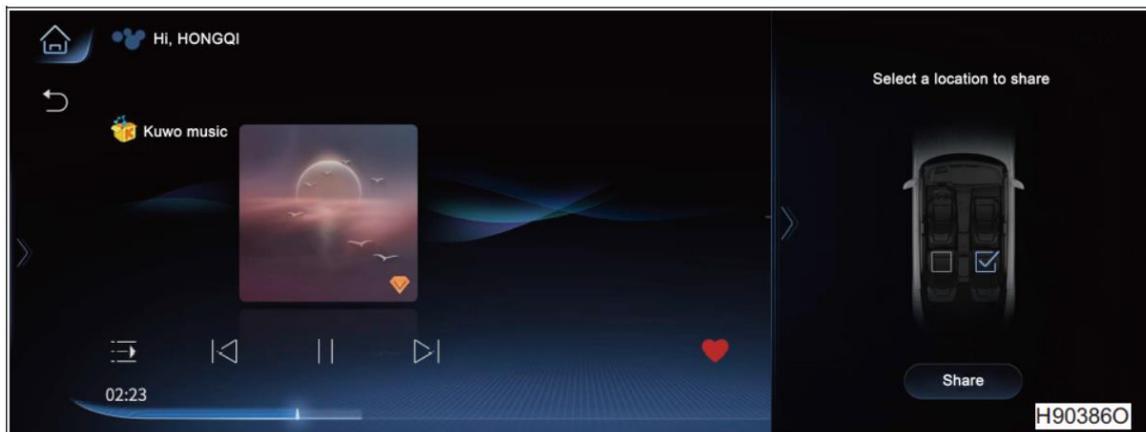
■ Shortcut menu on rear entertainment display

When the audio system is on, swipe down at the top of the screen to display the shortcut menu to view some functions.



Three-screen linkage*

When the display screen is playing music, online radio stations, videos, or searching for a destination in the navigation interface, you can tap to share to the other two screens.



■ To prevent damage to the multimedia display

- To operate it, just touch the multimedia display screen lightly with your fingers. If the content displayed on the multimedia display screen cannot be called out, it means that the content may not be called currently. Do not press the screen buttons excessively to avoid damage to the device.
- Do not use sharp or angular hard objects to touch the multimedia display, otherwise it may be damaged.
- Do not spray liquid directly on the multimedia display. And the electronic components will be damaged if liquid leaks into the device.
- When cleaning the surface of the multimedia display, please set the engine switch to "IG-OFF" mode and wipe it with a soft dry cloth. Do not use rough rags, chemical rags or organic reagents (alcohol, benzene, disinfectant, etc.), as they may damage or deteriorate the panel.

■ When using multimedia display

- If the multimedia screen is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
- The display might be dark or hard to watch clearly when you wear a pair of sunglasses, please change the angle of watching the multimedia screen or take off your sunglasses.
- Do not expose the multimedia screen under the blazing sun for quite a long time.
- Do not expose the multimedia screen under moisture, dusts, fumes or other pollution.



CAUTIONS

■ When using the audio system

- Please do not operate this system as much as possible during driving.
- The volume should be adjusted so that the situation outside the vehicle can be heard during driving. If the volume is adjusted so that the situation outside the vehicle cannot be heard, an accident may occur.
- Do not use it in a faulty state where no screen is displayed or no sound is produced. This may cause an accident, fire, electric shock, or fatal injury.
- Do not operate the system in a no-parking area, as this may cause a traffic accident.
- For safety, please do not distract or hinder safe driving because of using this function. Ignoring road and traffic conditions can lead to an accident.

■ Do not disassemble or modify this product without permission, as this behavior may cause traffic accidents, fire, electric shock, etc.

- If any abnormality occurs with the system due to intrusion of the foreign matter or water, please stop using it immediately and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer. It may lead to malfunctions if you continue to use it.

**NOTICES****■ Avoid low battery**

After the engine is stopped, turn off the audio system when it is not needed.

■ Noise from audio system

- The system is highly sensitive, so there might be noises when it is near television towers, broadcasting stations, power plants or other places transmitting strong radio wave or electrical noise interference.
- Interfering noises may be heard if a mobile phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

■ To avoid damaging the audio system

Take care not to spill drinks or other liquids over the audio system. If fluid or other items enters into this system, cut off the power immediately and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

■ To prevent the battery depletion

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

■ Compatibility

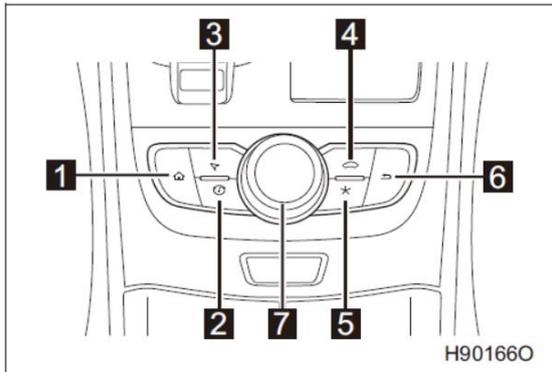
Some devices might be unable to be functional properly because of their own compatibility issue.

■ When trouble arises

Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

Buttons on the audio system panel

Some multimedia features can be controlled using the buttons on the audio system panel.



- 1 Main menu button
- 2 Entertainment button
- 3 Navigation button
- 4 Setting button
- 5 Custom button
- 6 Return button
- 7 Multi-function button

No.	Function
1	Press: to switch to the main menu interface of the audio system.
2	Press: to enter [Entertainment] interface
3	Press: to enter [Travel] interface.
4	Press: to enter [Setting] interface.
5	Press and hold: to enter the custom setting page to set shortcut operations for custom button; Press: to open the function interface that has been set.
6	Press: to return to the previous interface.
7	Rotate: to adjust volume; Press up: to enter the [air conditioning] interface; Press down: to enter the message menu, in which, you can view the messages by using the multi-function knob; Press left: to enter the scene mode control menu, in which you can select the corresponding scene by using the multi-function knob; Press right: to enter the shortcut menu, which can be set by using the multi-function knob; Press and hold for 3s: to allow you to turn off the screen; and after the screen is turned off, touch anywhere on the screen to turn it on



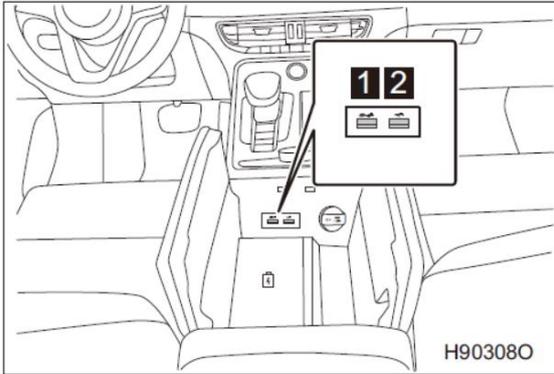
CAUTIONS

■ When driving

Take extra care when operating the buttons on the audio system panel to prevent any accident.

Connect a USB device to the USB port, then you can operate it via the audio system.

To use a USB port



Open the front center storage box lid and connect the external multimedia source.

- 1 USB1
- 2 USB2

■ **USB memory**

Connect the USB memory device.
If the USB memory device is not started, turn it on.

⚠ CAUTIONS

■ **When driving**

Do not connect any device or operate its control buttons to prevent any accident.



NOTICES

■ **To avoid damaging the USB device or terminals**

- The USB port must be kept clean. If any foreign matter or fluid enters into the port, the audio system might be damaged.
- Do not insert any high-current USB device except a USB stick or a mobile telephone, including mobile hard disk drives and portable power sources.
- Do not leave the USB device in the car. The temperature inside the car may increase and damage the USB device.
- When the USB device is connected, do not press or apply unnecessary pressure to it.
- Do not insert the foreign objects into the port.

■ **Compatibility**

Some devices might be unable to be functional properly because of their own compatibility issue.

■ **To ensure the system's proper identification**

It is recommended to use USB devices with good quality because USB devices with poor quality could not be identified by the system.

■ **When leaving the vehicle**

Do not leave your mobile telephone or other belongings behind in the vehicle, which would be damaged because of temperature increase in the vehicle.

■ **To prevent the battery depletion**

When the engine is shut down, do not use the USB port for a long time.

■ **Mobile phone USB cable**

It is recommended to use the original USB cable of the mobile phone for connection to ensure a stable connection.

■ **Receiving sensitivity**

It is difficult to maintain perfect reception at all times due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains and transmitters.

In the main menu interface, touch the screen button [Vehicle] to enter the vehicle function setting interface.



To use a USB port

The air conditioning system, seat ventilation/heating, and seat massage functions can be operated in the air conditioning settings (→ P.P269,304,306)



Vehicle settings

You can set up the comfort settings, lighting settings, safety settings, driving assistance, head-up display and other functions in the vehicle settings.

■ Comfort setting



1 Vehicle height

- Height setting: It can be set to 4 vehicle height modes: very high, high, standard, and low.
- Lifting mode: to enter/exit the lifting mode.

2 Easy access

The greeting function can be set to turn on/off.

3 Maintenance position of wiper

With the function for maintenance position of wiper activated, place the wiper in the maintenance position if conditions allow.

4 Automatically close windows when it rains

The automatic window and sunroof closing function can be set to turn on/off.

5 Safety unlock

The safety unlock can be set to turn on/off.

ON: Press the unlock button on smart key once to unlock the driver door; press the unlock button twice in succession to unlock all doors.

OFF: Press the unlock button on smart key once to unlock all doors.

6 Auto folding of exterior rear-view mirror when locking

The auto folding of exterior rear-view mirror can be set to turn on/off.

7 Auto unlock when approaching

The auto unlock when approaching can be set to turn on/off.

With the function activated, the vehicle will automatically unlock when the driver brings the smart or Bluetooth key to come close to the vehicle.

8 Dragging alert

The dragging alert can be set to turn on/off.

With the function activated, if the vehicle is moved when the vehicle is locked, the owner will be alerted through the Hong Qi Smart Connect APP.

■ Light setting**1 Mood lamp**

The mood lamp can be set to turn on/off.

The brightness and color can be adjusted, and the color of the mood light can also be set to switch with the driving mode or with the music.

2 Entry lighting

The illuminated entry system can be set to turn on and off and with the illuminating time.

3 Follow Me Home

The Follow Me Home can be set to turn on and off and with the illuminating time.

4 Smart high beam

Intelligent high beam control system can be set to turn on/off.

■ Security settings



1 Driver fatigue warning

Driver Status Monitor (DSM) system can be set to turn on/off.

2 Rear seat belt unfastened warning

Rear seat belt unfastened warning can be set to turn on/off.

3 Door opening warning

The door opening warning function can be set to turn on/off.

■ Driver assistance



1 Driving mode

Four driving modes: comfort, economy, sports, and snow can be set up.

2 Cruise function

The cruise function can be set to turn on/off. After the function is turned on, the cruise mode can be set to SACC or ACC.

3 Power-off AUTO HOLD

Power-off AUTO HOLD can be set to turn on/off.

4 Electronic stability control system

Electronic stability control system can be set to turn on/off.

5 Blind spot detection/lane change assist

The blind spot detection/lane change assist can be set to turn on/off.

6 Lane departure warning

Set lane departure warning on/off. After the function is turned on, the warning mode can be set to warning (LDW), warning + lane keeping assist(LKA); and also, the warning triggering sensitivity can be set.

When the SACC is off, the sensitivity for lane departure warning can be set.

7 Rear crossing traffic alert(RCTA)

The rear crossing traffic alert function can be set to turn on/off.

8 Forward Collision Warning (FCW)

Set the forward collision on/off. After the function is turned on, the warning mode can be set to warning (FCW) or warning + brake (AEB); and also, the collision warning sensitivity can be set up.

9 Rear-end collision warning

The rear-end collision warning function can be set to turn on/off.

10 Speed limit reminder

The speed limit reminder can be set to turn on/off. After the function is turned on, the reminder mode can be set to smart speed limit reminder (TSR) or manual speed limit reminder.

■ Head-up display

**1** Head-up display

The head-up display can be set to turn on/off.

2 Navigation information

The navigation information display can be set to turn on/off.

3 Driver assistance information

The driver assistance information display can be set to turn on/off.

4 Basic information

The basic information display can be set to turn on/off.

Basic information includes gear, call reminder, and driving mode.

5 Theme settings

The theme mode of head-up display can be set up.

■ **Electronic interior rear-view mirror(streaming interior rear-view mirror)**



1 Display scale

Three display scales of 1.0, 1.2 and 1.4 can be set up.

2 Display area

Three display areas of upper, middle and lower can be set up.

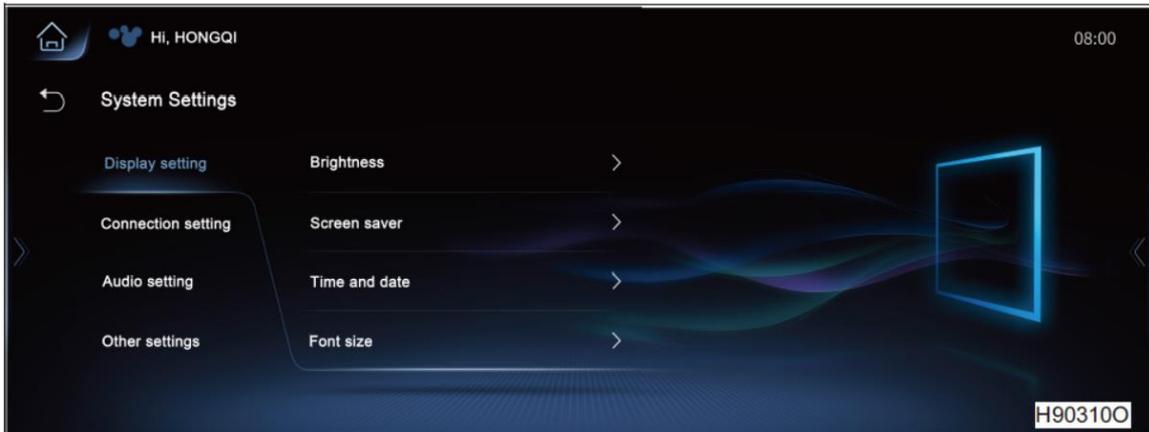
3 Display brightness

The brightness can be adjusted from 0-10 level.

System settings

You can operate the display settings, connection settings, audio settings, and other settings in the system settings.

■ Display settings



1 Brightness

- Display mode: it can be set to three display modes: daytime, night, and auto.
- Brightness adjustment: the screen brightness can be adjusted.

2 Screen saver

- The screen saver style can be set to mechanical clock or digital clock.

3 Time and date

- 24h: it is a 24-hour clock if activated; and a 12-hour clock if deactivated.
- GPS synchronization: You can set whether to synchronize the network time. And when the GPS synchronization is turned off, you can manually adjust the time bar on the right.

4 Font size

- Font size: the font size can be set to standard or big.
- Synchronization of font size on each screen: you can set whether the font size on each display screen is adjusted synchronously.

5 Theme

- It can be set to 3 modes of classic, technology and minimalism.

6 Screen ON/OFF

- The entertainment screen can be set on/off.

7 Start broadcast

- You can set whether the system receives push messages.

8 Message reminder

- The message reminder can be turned on or off. When the message reminder is turned on, the method of message reminder can be set to voice broadcast or prompt tone.

9 * button on multi-functional steering wheel

- The function of the * button on the multi-function steering wheel can be set to switch sound source or drive video.

10 MMI custom * button

- You can set the function of custom button in the function selection buttons of the audio system to enter the [Service] desktop or [My] desktop.

■ **Connection setting**



1 WiFi

- WiFi can be turned on or off. And when WiFi is turned on, my device and available devices can be viewed, connected, and deleted.

2 Data network

- Mobile data network can be turned on or off.

3 Hotspot

- The hotspot can be turned on or off. When the hotspot is turned on, the currently connected devices can be checked and blocked, and the hotspot name, password, frequency band and security can be set.

4 Bluetooth

- Bluetooth can be turned on or off. And when Bluetooth is turned on, saved devices and available devices can be viewed, connected, and deleted, and also the Bluetooth name can be set.

■ Audio setting



1 Volume

The volume of multimedia, SOS, HONGQI VIP special line, Bluetooth phone, navigation, voice, HUI voice broadcast, radar and other functions can be adjusted.

2 Key tone

3 The key tone can be set to turn on/off.

Multimedia volume adjusted with vehicle speed

After turning on, the multimedia volume may automatically adjust with the vehicle speed.

4 Sound field balance

The best sound field position can be selected by dragging the circular cursor, and also the sound field can be reset.

5 Equalizer

- Sound effect setting: four modes can be set: normal equilibrium, driver's seat priority, rear VIP and Centerpoint.
- Timbre settings: the bass, mid, and treble tone values can be adjusted.

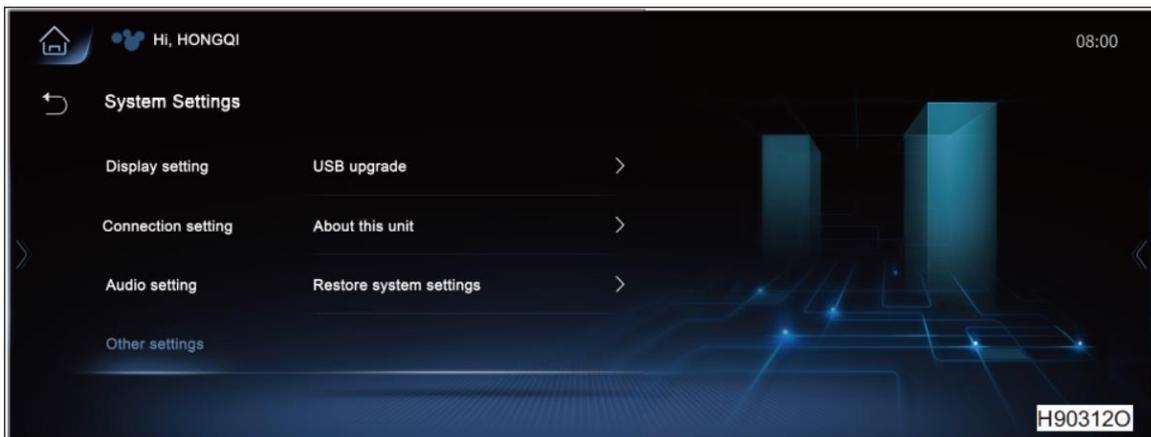
6 Voice

- Voice wake-up: voice recognition can be turned on or off. When voice recognition is turned on, you can choose to use system wake-up words or custom wake-up words.
- Wake-up reply: you can set whether there is a reply after the wake-up voice.
- Global wake-up free: the global wake-up free can be turned on or off. When it is turned on, you can speak specific commands on any interface for voice control.
- In-app wake-up free: the in-app wake-up free can be turned on or off. When it is turned on, you can speak specific commands in specific application for voice control.
- Voice broadcast voice: it can be set as female, male, and child's voice.
- Speech rate: it can be set to slow, standard, and fast.
- Voice image: image 1 and image 2 can be set.

7 Alarm prompt tone

- The tone can be set as high, medium, and low.

■ **Other settings**



1 USB upgrade

The audio system can be upgraded through the USB data package. For specific operations, please contact the FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer.

2 About this unit

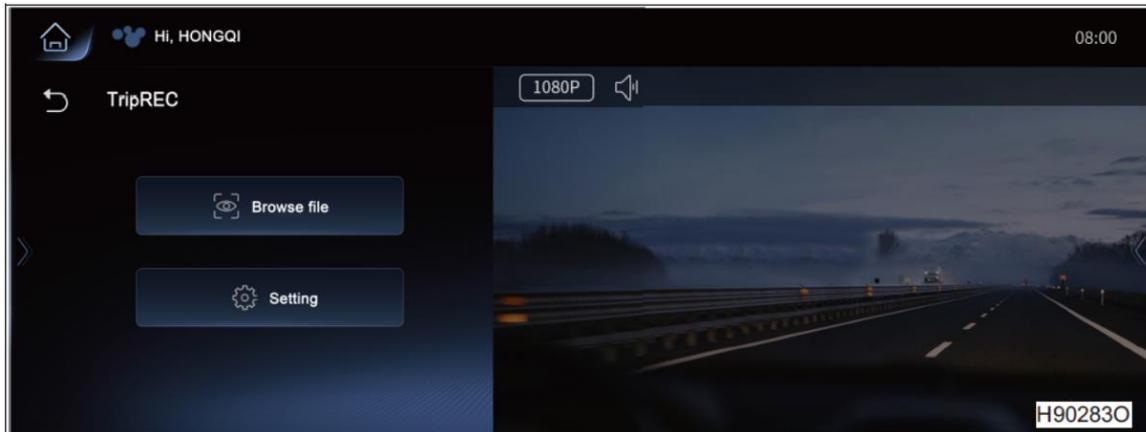
You can view system information.

3 Restore system settings

The factory settings of the system can be restored.

TripREC

You can view the recording content made by the trip recorder and set the trip recorder.



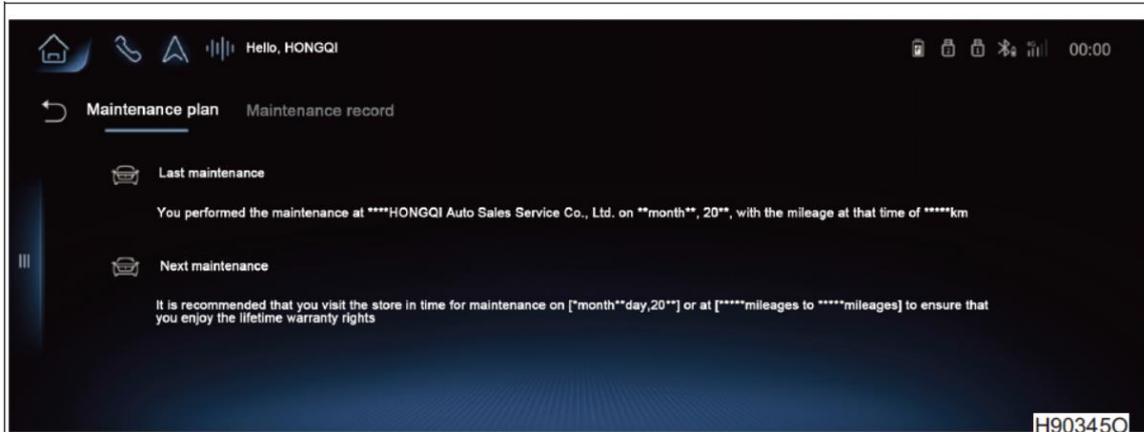
1 Browse file

- You can view and handle all recorded videos and images.

2 Setting

- TripREC: the TripREC can be set on/off.
- Audio recording: the recording sound can be set on/off.
- Parking monitoring video: the parking monitoring can be set on/off. After parking monitoring is turned on, when the engine switch is set to "IG-OFF" mode, if the vehicle triggers an anti-theft alarm or judges that the vehicle is in collision, it will record for 1 minute.
- Driving information superimposition: the driving information superimposition can be turned on or off. When driving information superimposition is turned on, the current driving information (e.g time, vehicle speed, accelerator/brake pedal status, turn signal status, etc.) will be recorded.
- Name: the name of the trip recorder of the vehicle is displayed, which cannot be modified.
- Password: you can modify the driving video reading password.
- Resolution: The resolution can be set to 720P or 1080P.
- Mode switching: the driving recorder video can be set to be viewed through the Hong Qi Smart Connect APP or the vehicle.
- Follow Me Home: it can be set to off /1 minute/3 minutes.
- Memory card formatting: the memory card of the trip recorder can be formatted.
- Factory reset: the trip recorder can be restored to the factory settings.

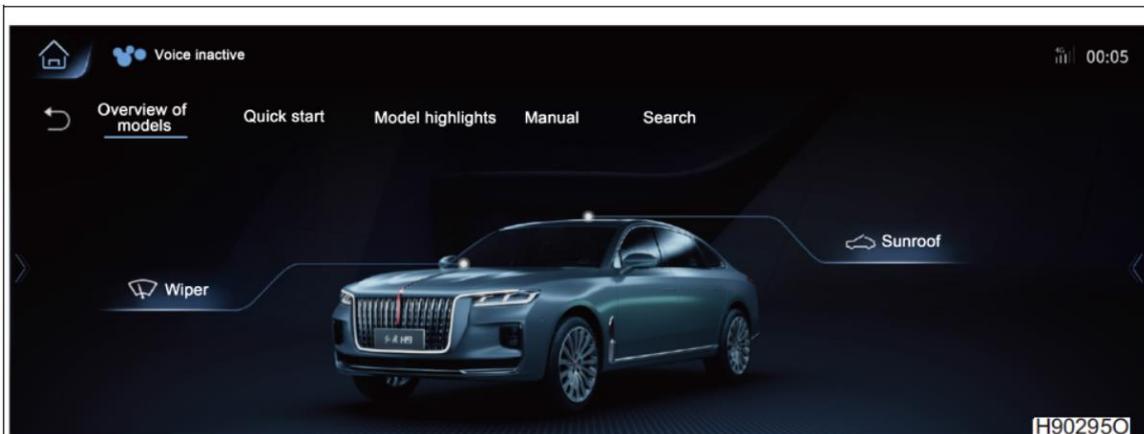
Repair and maintenance



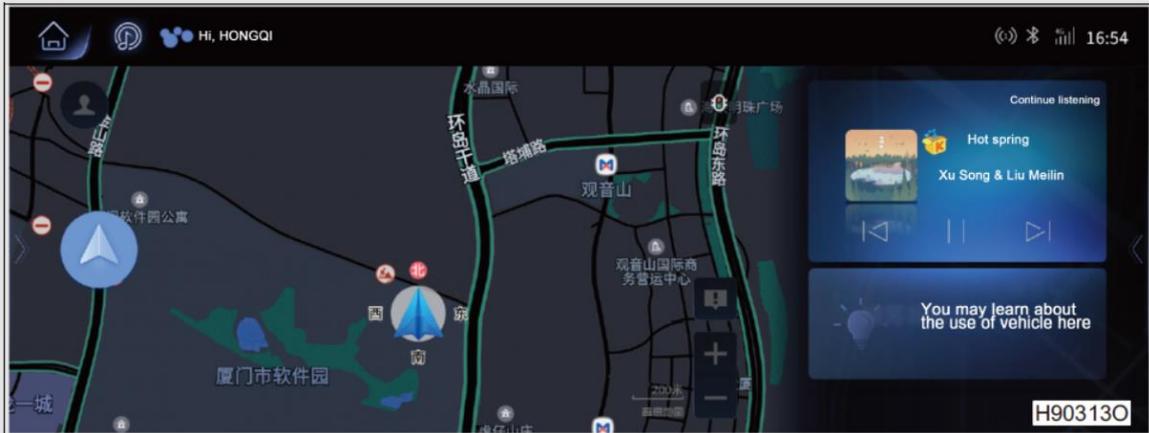
- 1 Maintenance plan
 - Display the last and next maintenance information.
- 2 Maintenance record
 - You can view the full history of maintenance.

E-manual

Users may quickly learn about the vehicle through the electronic manual.

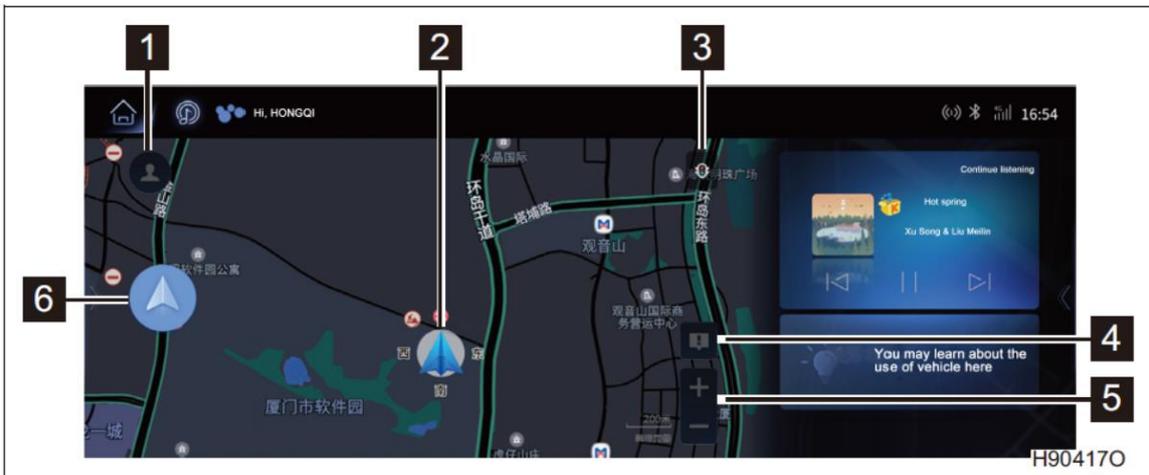


In the main menu interface, touch the screen button [Travel] to enter the navigation function interface.



Navigation map interface

■ Map mode interface



1 Main menu

Touch it to enter the main menu interface.

2 Current location

Displays the current vehicle location.

3 Status bar

Touch it to expand the status bar information.

You can set the view mode, real-time traffic condition ON/OFF, voice broadcast mode, volume level, etc.

4 Feedback

Feedback on navigation problems can be performed.

5 Proportional scale

The map display scale can be zoomed in or out.

6 Destination

Touch to search and navigate to the destination.

■ **Navigation mode interface**



1 Distance to next intersection and road name

Display the remaining distance to the next intersection and the road name.

2 Whole navigation overview

Touch to switch the route map of the whole navigation.

3 Current location

Displays the current vehicle location.

4 Turning arrow

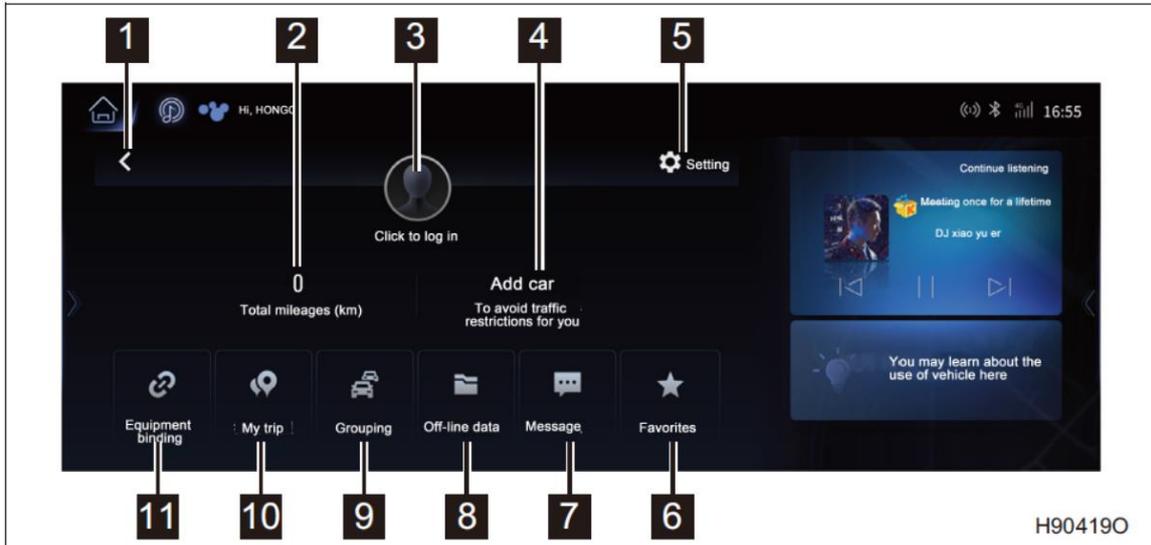
Displays the traveling direction from the next intersection.

5 Remaining distance and time

Display the remaining distance and time to the destination.

Main menu

In the navigation interface, touch the screen button  to enter the main menu interface.



- 1** Back
Touch to enter the map mode interface.
- 2** Mileages
Displays the total navigated mileages.
- 3** Login
When the vehicle is connected to the network, you can log in, and after that, you can synchronize with the navigation information on the mobile phone.
- 4** Add car
Add vehicle information to avoid the restricted road segment.
- 5** Setting
Touch to enter the setting interface, and you can set the route planning, voice broadcast, map display, etc.
- 6** Favorites
Touch to enter the favorites interface, through which you can quickly navigate.
- 7** Message
Touch to enter the message interface, on which you can view and manage my messages.
- 8** Off-line data
Touch to enter the off-line data interface, on which you can manage the off-line data.

9 Teaming up

You can team up and share the route with your friends.

10 My trip

Touch to enter the My Trip interface to view the history.

11 Binding device

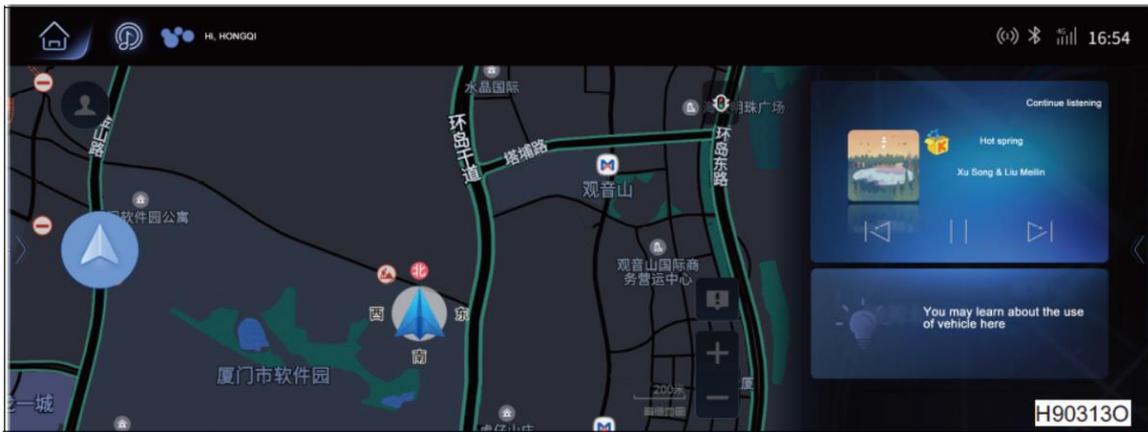
Smart devices can be bound to realize convenient navigation.

Setting destination

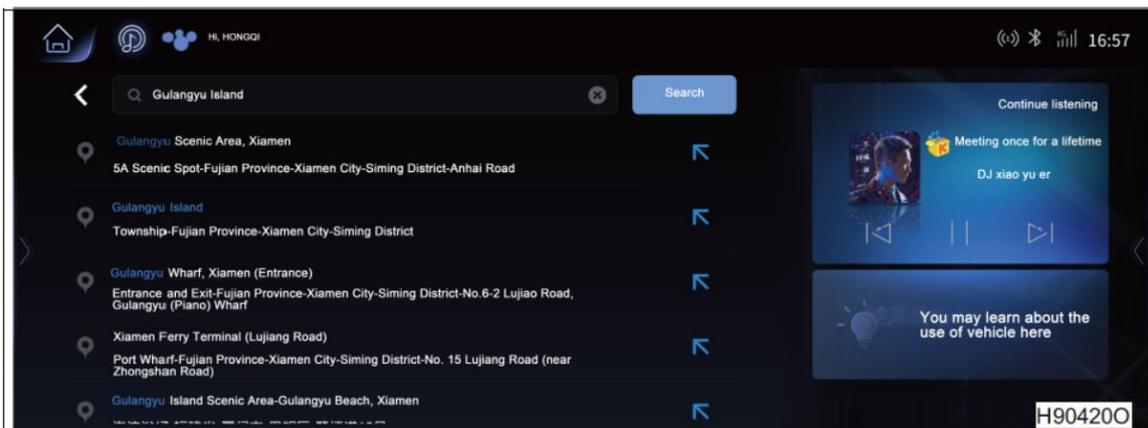
Users can set the destination by searching for POI (points of interest), search by name, quick navigation, favorite points, etc., and the following is an example of search by name.

■ Search by name

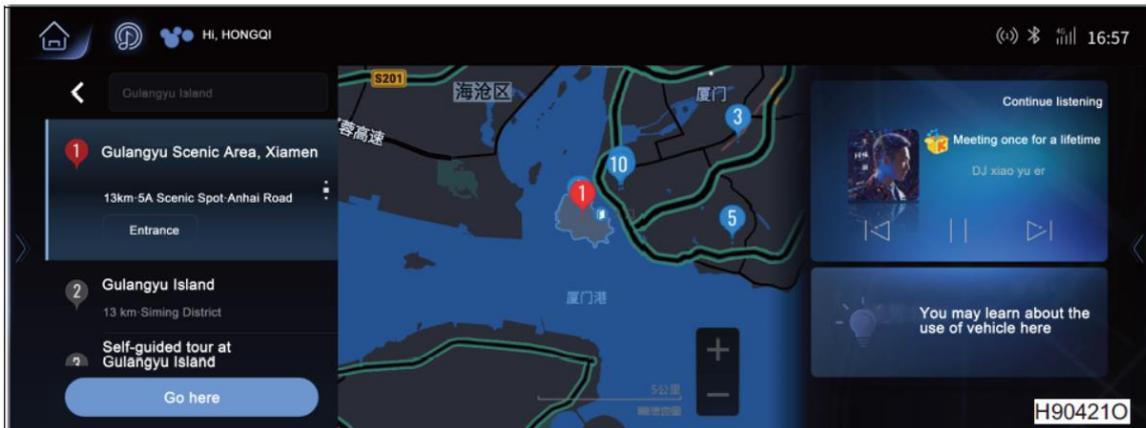
STEP 1 In the map mode interface, touch [Destination] to enter the search interface.



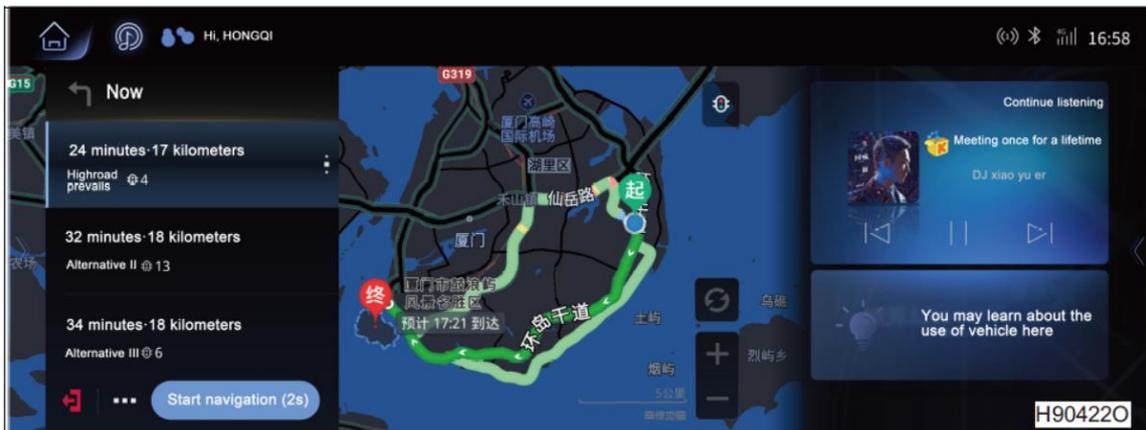
STEP 2 Input the destination name in the search interface and touch [Search] to enter the search result interface.



STEP 3 Select the destination you want to go to, and touch [Go here] to enter the route planning interface.



STEP 4 After selecting a suitable route on the route planning interface, touch [Start Navigation] to start the navigation.



CAUTIONS

When driving

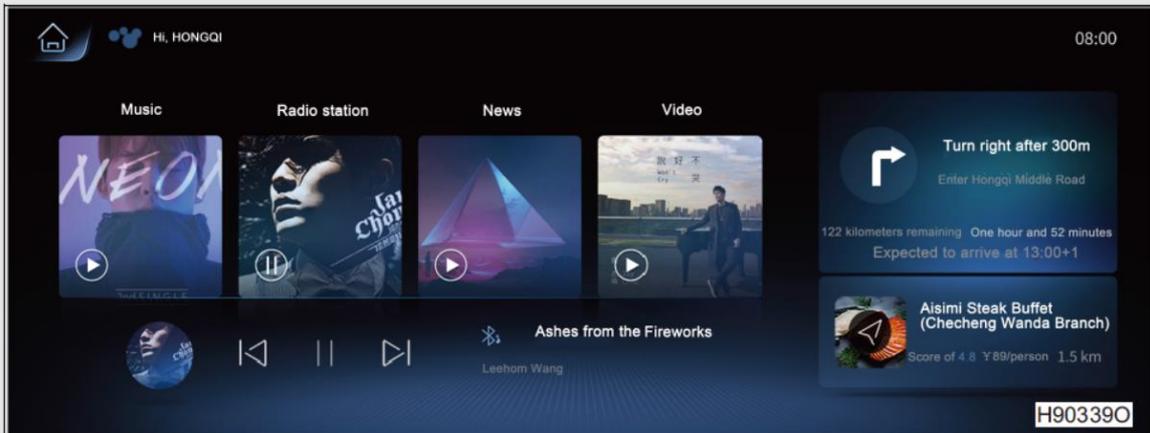
- When navigating route via the navigation system, please drive following the actual traffic rules. If you just follow the routes recommended in the navigation system to drive, sometimes, you might violate the traffic rules, leading to traffic accidents.
- While driving, the driver shall not carry out address searching and other similar operations before the pull over. If the driver does not pay attention to the road conditions, it might lead to traffic accidents.



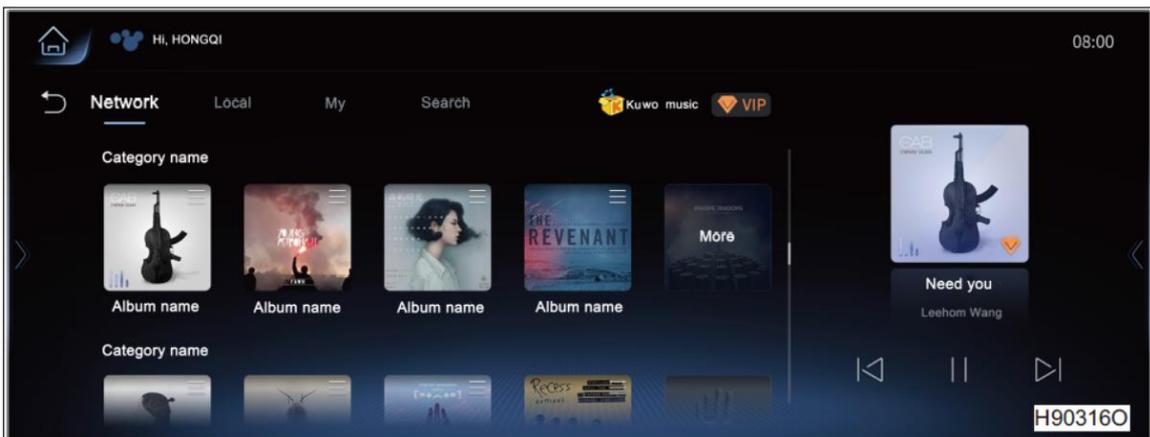
NOTICES

- **All current vehicle navigation systems have certain limitations. Factors such as satellite conditions, road structures, and vehicle conditions may affect the accuracy of vehicle positioning, which will affect the normal functioning of the system. For any questions, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.**
- **Network connection quality**
It is difficult to maintain perfect connection at all times due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains and transmitters.
- **Because on-board navigation system versions keep updated, the actual operating interface might differ from the above schematic diagram; the latest version will prevail.**

In the main menu interface, touch the screen button [Entertainment] to enter the Entertainment function interface.

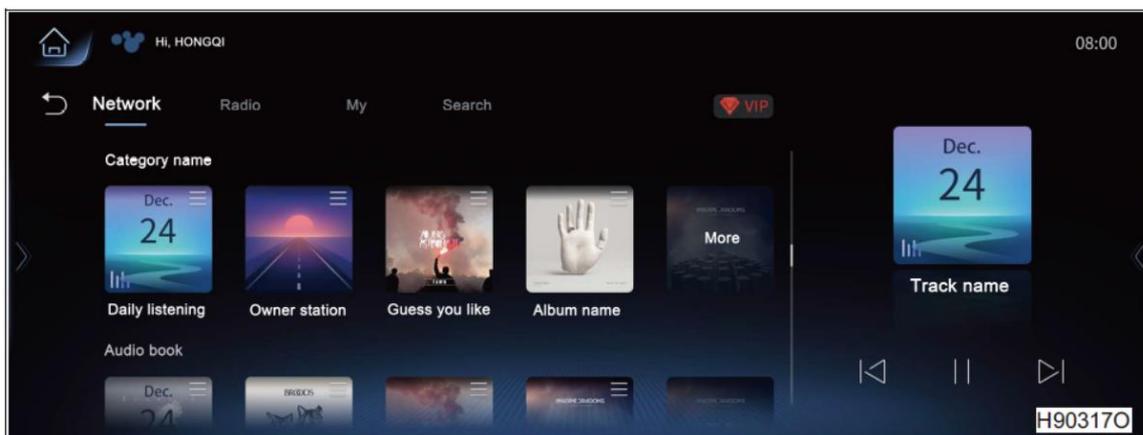


Music



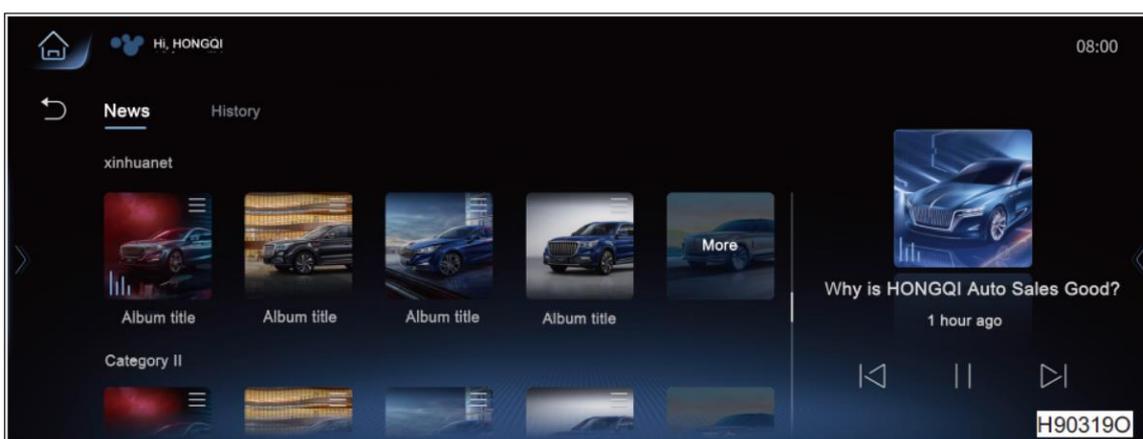
- Network: you can view and play online music and song list.
- Local: you can view and play Bluetooth, USB1, USB2 and local music.
- My: you can view and play favorites and history.
- Search: you can manually search for music to play.
- Currently playing track: touch the currently playing track on the right to enter the player interface. In the player interface, you can view the song list, collect the music, select the quality of the sound source, switch the playback mode, adjust the equalizer, and perform other operations.

Radio station



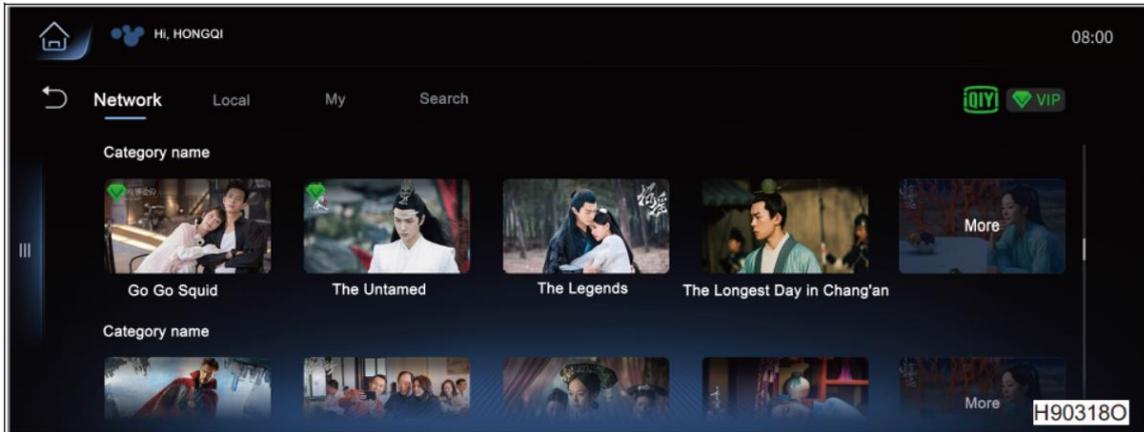
- Network: you can view and play on-line radio station.
- Radio: you can view and play local FM/AM radio stations, and also search for the stations.
- My: you can view and play the collected FM/AM radio stations, history and subscribed albums.
- Search: you can manually search for on-line radio station to play.
- Currently playing radio station: touch the currently playing radio station on the right side to enter the player interface. In the radio FM/AM player interface, you can view the radio station list, favorites, switch FM/AM, search for radio stations, adjust the equalizer, etc.; and you can view in the on-line radio player interface the track list of the album, subscribe, select the speed, switch the playback mode, adjust the equalizer and perform other operations.

News



- News: you can view and play on-line news.
- History: you can view and play the history.
- Currently playing news: touch the currently playing news on the right to enter the player interface, in which, you can view the news list, play them, and pause.

Video



- Network: you can view and play on-line videos.
- Local: you can view and play USB1, USB2 and local video.
- My: you can view and play the collected video and history.
- Search: you can manually search for on-line video to play.

■ Antenna

The radio antenna is built into the shark fin antenna.

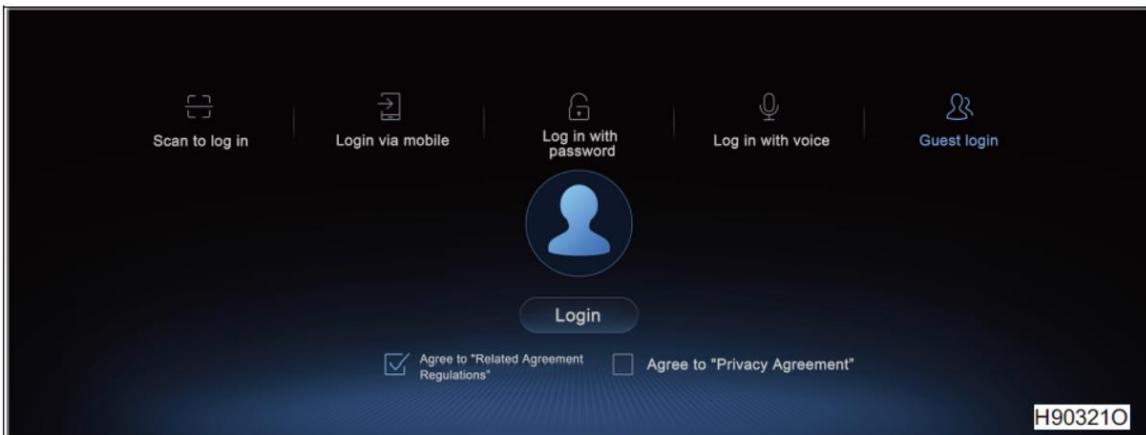
My

In the main menu interface, touch the screen button [My] to enter the My function interface.



Login

You can log in via the bound Hong Qi Smart Connect APP or mobile phone number, and by using a set password or voiceprint, also you can log in as a guest.



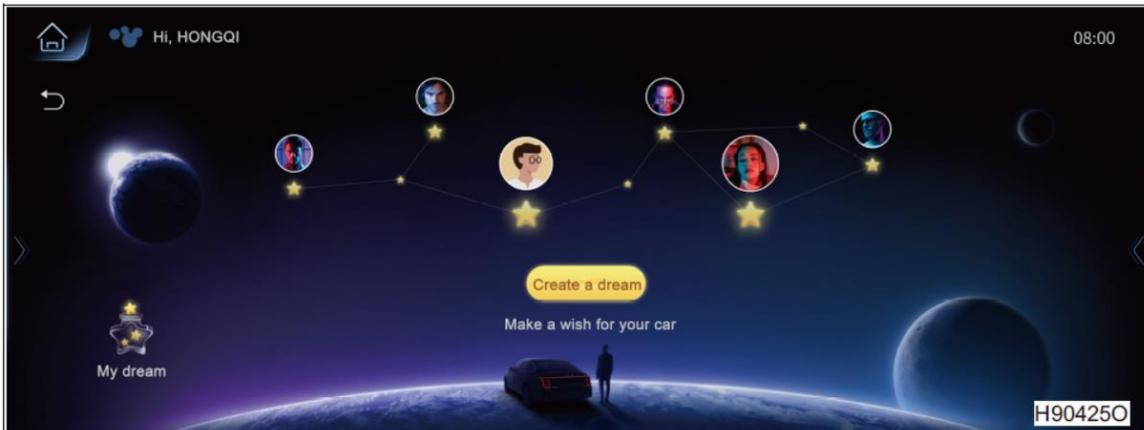
Driving assistant

You can view driving habits data and scores.



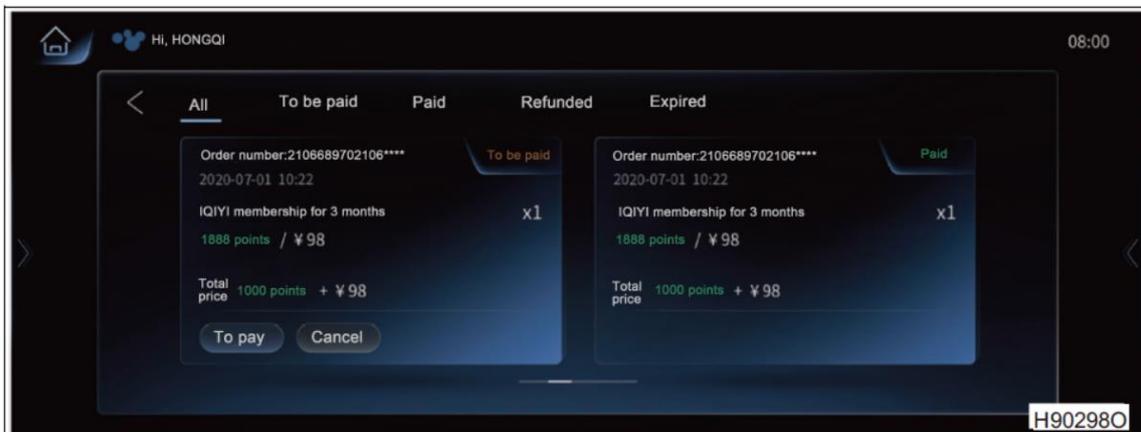
HONGQI dream

Tap on the right side of My function interface [I want to realize] to realize the dream on the card. Also, you can tap the card to enter the HONGQI dream application to create a dream and make a wish for your car.



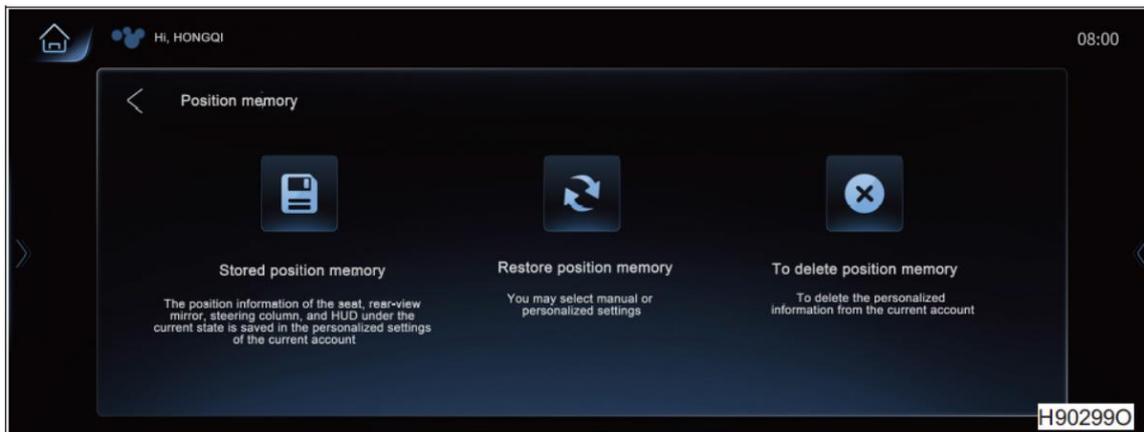
Order

You can view all order information of logged-in users.



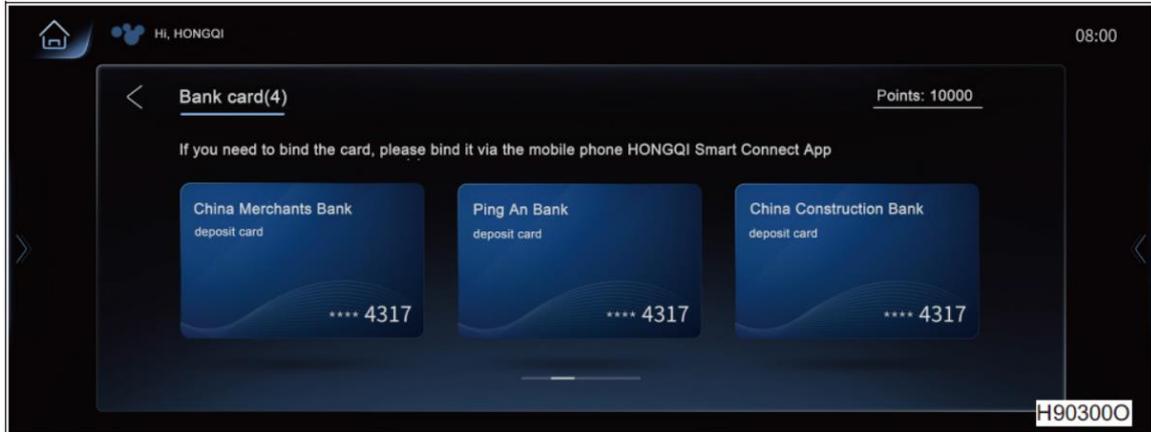
Position memory

Part of the vehicle settings can be recorded via location memory. And when you log in to this account again, you can manually restore the relevant settings.



Wallet

You can view the bank card bound to the Hong Qi Smart Connect APP and other information.



Account setting



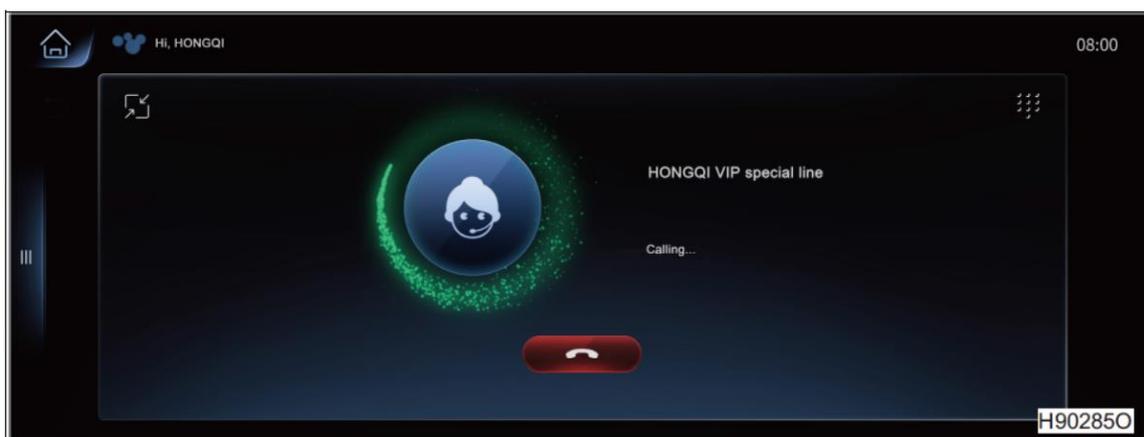
- Voiceprint: Voiceprint information can be entered for the current account, by which users can log in to the account.
- Vehicle information: you can view and modify the vehicle information bound to the current account.

In the main menu interface, touch the screen button [Service] to enter the Service function setting interface.



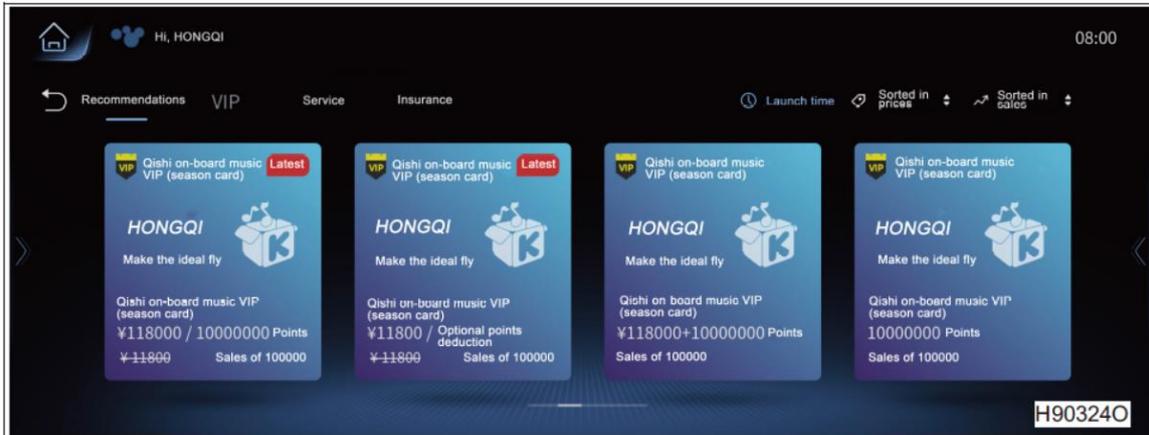
HONGQI VIP special line

When a user encounters a problem while driving, he/she can consult the HONGQI VIP special line.



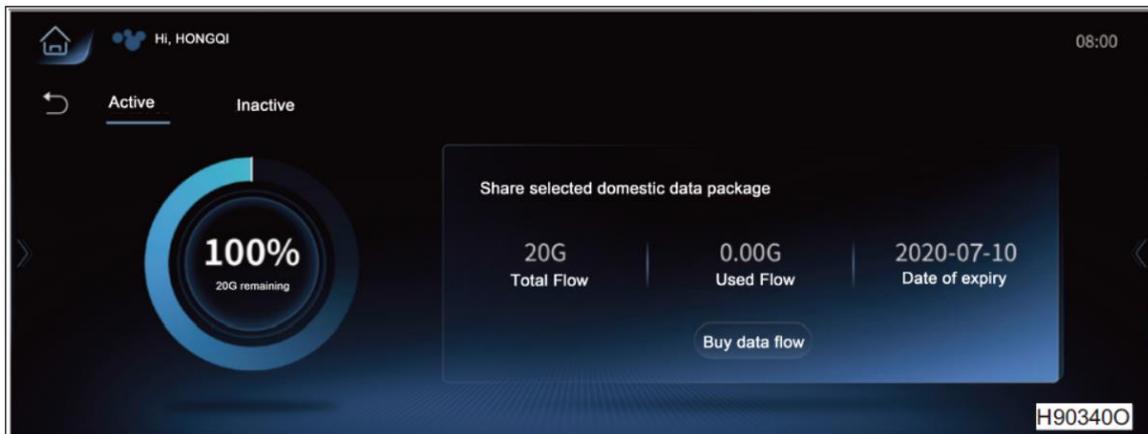
Store

Products can be purchased in the store.



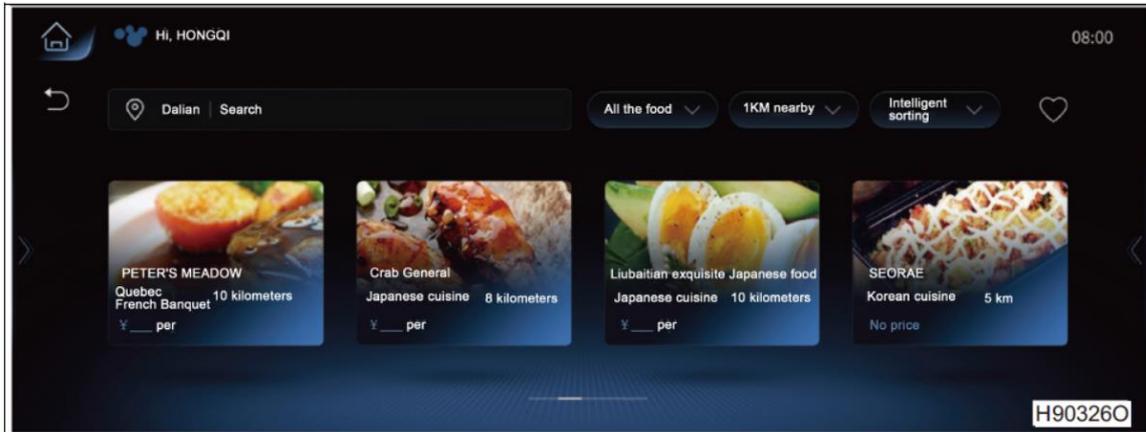
Flow

Shows the current usable flow of the vehicle, and also you can purchase a data flow package.



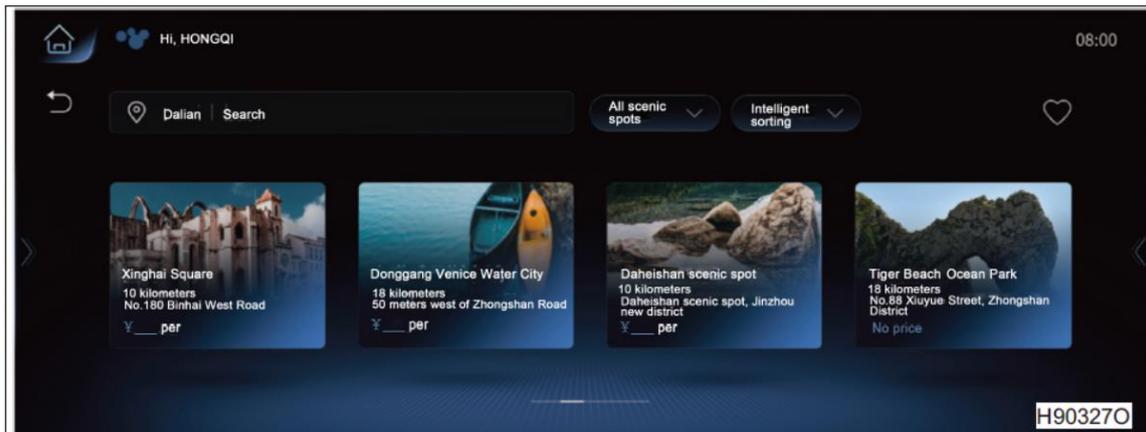
Food

You can search for food information in the area around the vehicle.



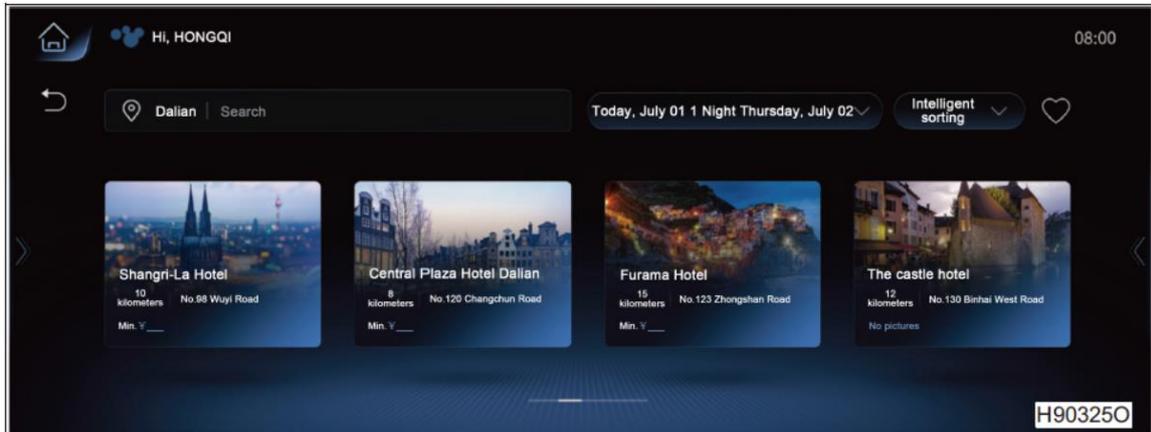
Scenic spot

You can search for scenic spot information in the area around the vehicle.



Hotel

You can search for hotel information in the area around the vehicle.



Traffic violation

You can search for the violation information of the vehicle.

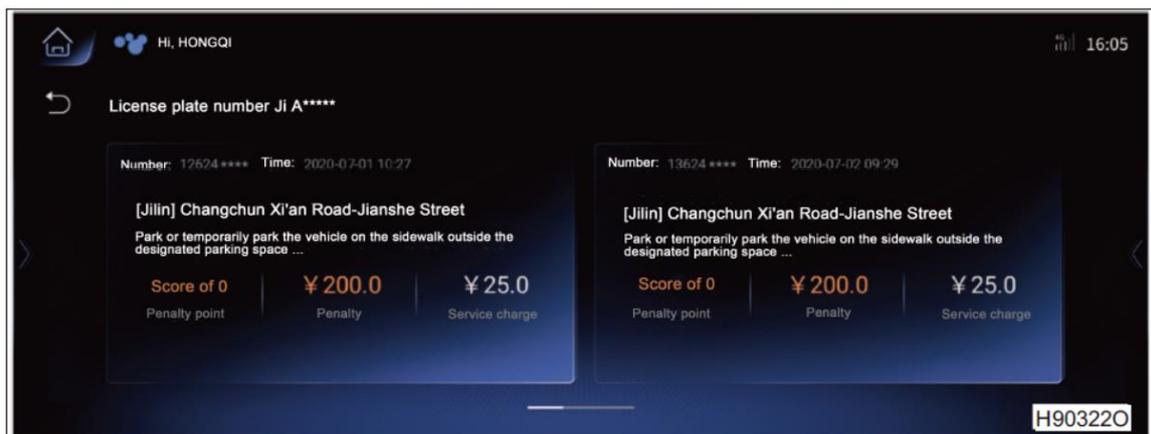
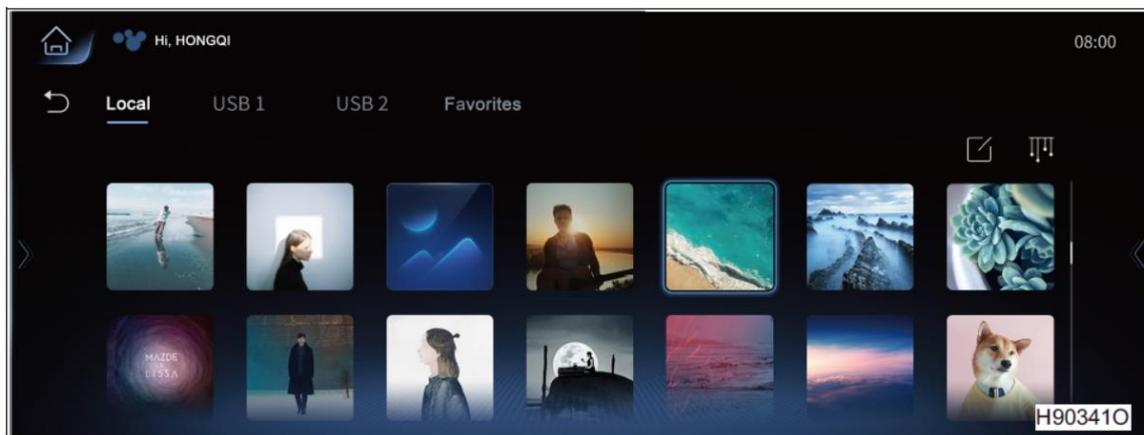


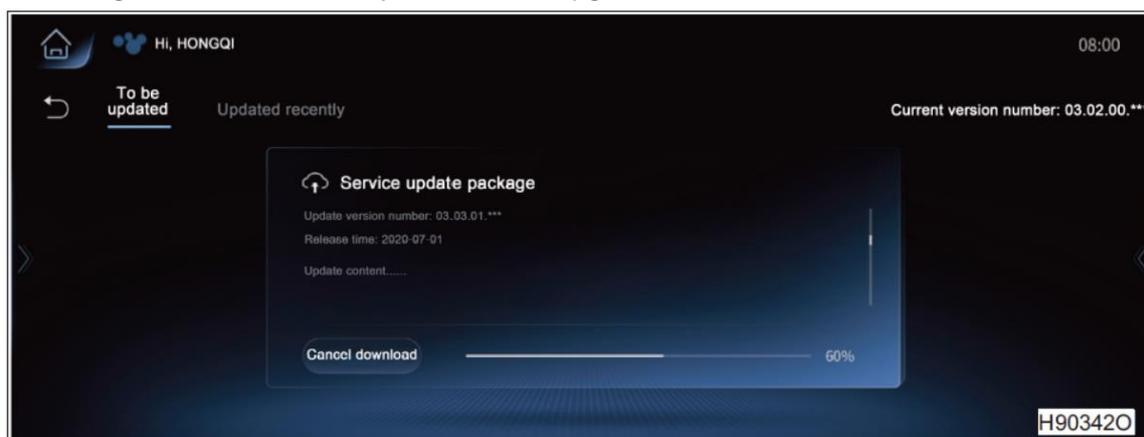
Photo gallery

You can view pictures in the local, USB1, USB2 and favorites list.



Service update

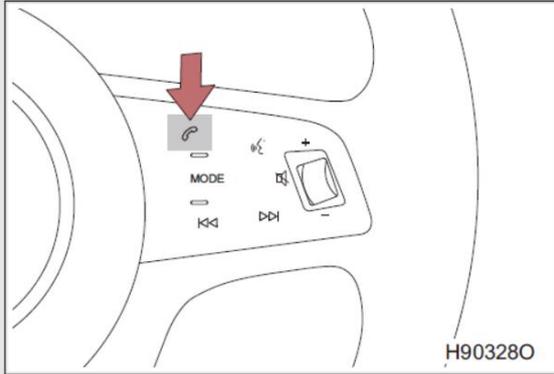
The Hong Qi Smart Connect system can be upgraded online.



The hands-free system allows you to use the phone call function of a mobile telephone without touching it.

This system supports Bluetooth® mobile telephones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system, which allows your mobile phone to be connected to the hands-free system wirelessly.

■ Phone key



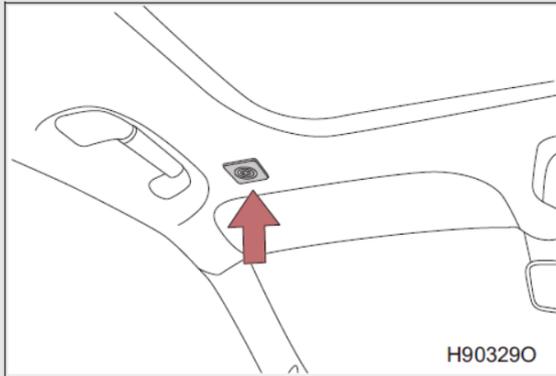
The phone key is located in the position shown in the figure.

See the table below for specific functions:

Description	Function
Press	Press: to answer the current call in case of incoming call and to disconnect the current call in case of calling/making a call; to display the last call information in case of no incoming call, and press it again to dial out.
Press and hold	To disconnect the current call in case of incoming call; and to automatically dial the last call number in case of no incoming call.

To use the hands-free system, you must bind your Bluetooth® phone in the system.

■ Bluetooth microphone



Located near the handles on the roof of the vehicle.

- If the incoming call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
- Try to face toward the microphone as much as possible when speaking.
- In the following circumstances, it may be difficult to hear the other party:
 - The cell phone signal is poor.
 - When driving on unpaved roads.
 - When driving at high speeds.
 - If a window is open.
 - If the air conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone.
 - If the air conditioning blower delivers too high air volume.

■ **Conditions under which the system will not operate:**

- If using a mobile phone that does not support Bluetooth®.
- If the mobile phone is switched off or in flight mode.
- If you are out of the service range.
- If the mobile phone is not connected.
- If the mobile phone's battery is low.

■ **Bluetooth® antenna**

If the mobile phone is in the storage box, or touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

■ **Battery level/signal status**

This display may not correspond exactly with the mobile phone itself.

■ **About Bluetooth®**



Bluetooth® is the trademark for Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ **Compatible models**

The Bluetooth hands-free system is only compatible with the mainstream brand Bluetooth mobile phones that passed Bluetooth certification (SIG) and are sold in regular channels.



NOTICES

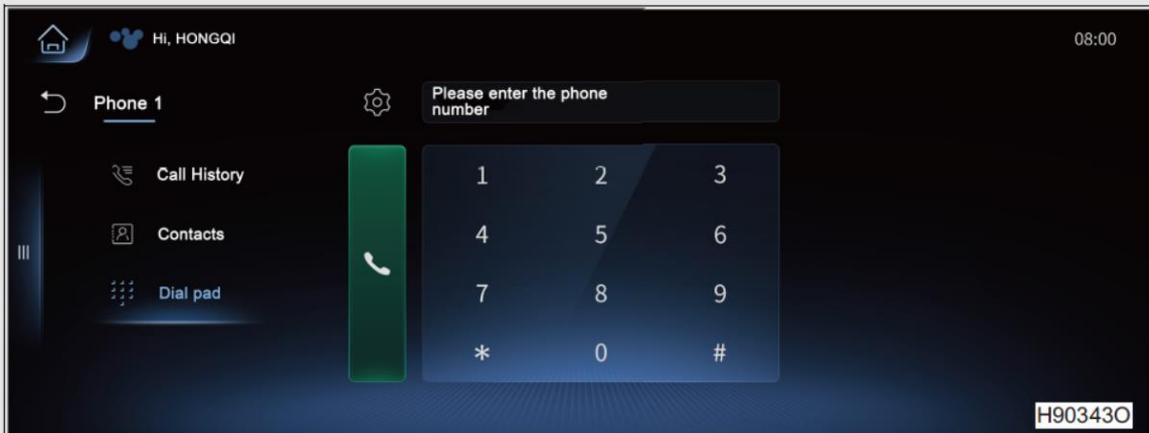
■ **When leaving the vehicle**

Do not leave your mobile telephone or other belongings behind in the vehicle, which would be damaged because of temperature increase in the vehicle.

5-3. Using the Bluetooth telephone

Bluetooth® telephone

The system supports the features including making calls, answering calls, ending calls, viewing your phone book, and viewing your call history.



The method to enter into the Telephone interface: with Bluetooth is connected, press the Bluetooth phone function bar on the right in the [Vehicle] interface to go to the Bluetooth phone interface.

Note: if the Bluetooth is not connected, follow the on-screen guidance to connect to a Bluetooth phone, and after that, go to the Bluetooth telephone interface.

Contacts

- **Contacts storage**
After the Bluetooth of the mobile telephone is bound successfully, the system will automatically download the contacts information from the bound telephone end.
- **Contacts viewing**
Via [Contacts] on the main interface of the phone, you can view the contacts entries on the mobile telephone end.
- **Contacts deletion**
The system supports to manually delete a matched phone, and simultaneously delete its contacts in this telephone system with it; also, the stored contacts can be manually deleted.



NOTICES

- **Only when the telephone supports the contacts downloading function, the screen will display its contacts.**

Call History

- **Call History viewing**
Via [Call history] on the main interface of the phone, you can view the answered, missed or dialed number on the mobile telephone end.



NOTICES

- **Only when the mobile telephone support the call history downloading function and allows the manual downloading, the screen will display the call history.**

Making a call

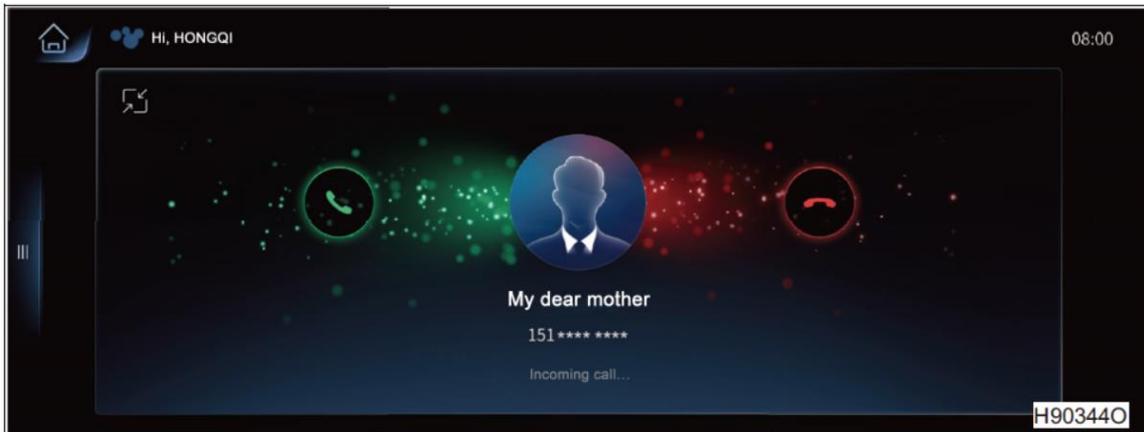
Methods to make a call:

Method I: to dial the number via the contacts or the call history.

Method II: to enter the phone number on the telephone main interface to dial.

Answering/ending the incoming call

When there is an incoming call, the caller ID will pop up.



Methods to answer/end an incoming call:

Method I: by tapping the screen button  / , answer and end the incoming call.

Method II: by pressing the button  on the multifunction steering wheel, answer (by pressing)/end (by pressing and holding) the incoming call.

Hands-free mode switching

During the call, by pressing the screen button , you can switch it between the private/hand-free modes.

Because some mobile phones do not support the private/hand-free switching, during which, the Bluetooth might be disconnected.

Microphone mute

During the call, by tapping the screen button , you can switch between the microphone mute status and non-mute status. When the microphone is mute, the other party of the call will not listen any sound.

Hold On

During a call, by tapping the screen button , to temporarily hang up the call, and tap again to resume the call.

- **Bluetooth automatic connection**

After the Bluetooth function is on and has detected the connected Bluetooth device, it would automatically connect the Bluetooth device.

- **Privacy protection**

The contacts and call history on each mobile phone can only be displayed after the phone is successfully connected. When the phone is not connected, you are unable to view any contact or call history on the phone.

**CAUTIONS**

- **When driving**

Do not use a mobile phone or connect to a Bluetooth® system.

**NOTICES**

- **When leaving the vehicle**

Do not leave your mobile telephone or other belongings behind in the vehicle, which would be damaged because of temperature increase in the vehicle.

Voice recognition

Users can achieve voice control to the system via the voice recognition function.

The voice control functions mainly include: service, chat, window control, sunroof control, seat control, trunk control, mood light control, etc.

The voice recognition system can be used in any seat in the car. When the voice recognition system is triggered in a certain location, it needs to be triggered again in other locations to work.

Voice recognition triggering

Method I: pressing the steering wheel button triggers the voice recognition system.

Method II: speaking the wake-up command triggers the voice recognition system.

The main wake-up command for voice recognition can be set in the system settings of the audio system.

(→ P.233)

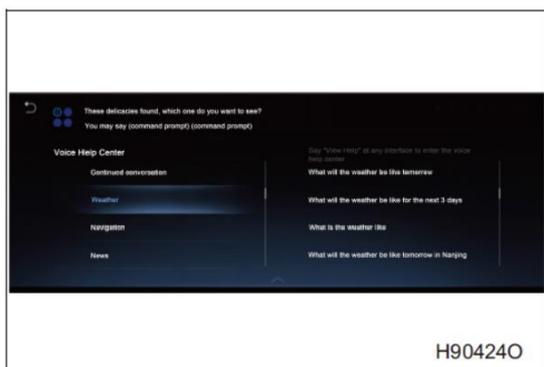
Method III: speaking the voice command directly triggers the voice recognition system and to execute the voice command.

You can set the global wake-up free/in-app wakeup free on/off in the system settings of the audio system. (→ P.233)

Method IV: touch the voice image icon of the audio system to trigger the voice recognition system.

Voice recognition help

Speaking "View Help" to open the voice help interface, where you can learn about common voice commands.



Check the prompts in the voice interface to learn about common voice commands.

Voice recognition exit

Method I: after the voice recognition system is triggered, if there is no recognizable commands, the system will automatically exit voice recognition.

Method II: the system will exit after a voice command is executed normally.

Method III: tapping the steering wheel button  to exit the voice recognition.

Method IV: speaking the exit command to exit the voice recognition.



NOTICES

- **The voice recognition results are only for reference.**
- **Please use standard and clear Mandarin, avoid using the system in a noisy environment to prevent incorrect recognition results.**
- **While driving, try to avoid using the voice recognition function, if you do use it, please pay attention to the road conditions to prevent risks.**

Hong Qi Smar Connect APP

You can remotely control and operate the vehicle via Mobile phone APP.

- By opening the logged-in Hong Qi Smart Connect APP, go to the APP homepage.



1 Discovery

You can view and participate in interactions such as circles, information, activities, and Q&A.

2 Service

You can perform the operations such as checking car models, network query, violation query, data traffic management, road rescue and so on.

3 My car

Information view: You can view the ODO and remaining fuel, and touch the license plate number at the top of the main interface to view the vehicle information, and also you can add authorized users.

Remote control: you can perform quick operations on the main interface on locking, unlocking, starting, car search, temperature adjustment, and ventilation; touch [Bluetooth] to turn on the Bluetooth key; via [More] on the main interface or by touching the picture of the vehicle to enter the vehicle status interface, where you can view and operate the tire pressure, driving recorder, air conditioning, sunroof, seat heating, steering wheel heating functions.

4 Xiangliao

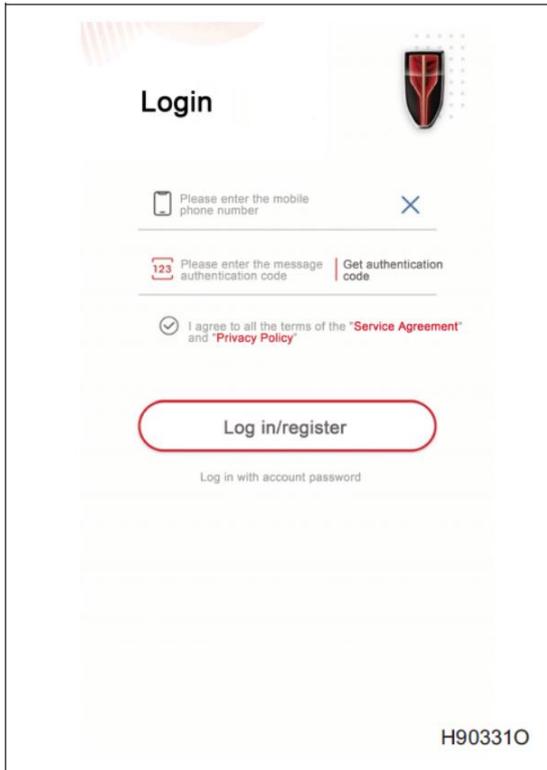
On which you can view the messages, chat and interact with friends, and search for friends.

5 My

In My interface, you can operate and view the functions such as user information, orders, card packs, favorites, membership rights, inviting friends, and feedback.

Touch the Settings button in the upper left corner of the interface to enter the Settings page, where you can manage PIN code, change the password, set emergency contact, my address, skin settings, clearing cache, and log out.

Login



By entering the mobile phone No. and your password, and tapping the phone screen button [Login], you can log into the system.

If you forget the password, by tapping [Forget the password], you can retrieve your password.

■ APP downloading

For the downloading and installation of the mobile APP, please consult the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

■ Bluetooth key binding

The Bluetooth key needs to be bound at the first time to use. The specific binding steps can be operated according to the APP prompts.

■ Login information

Users will provide their personal information to dealers for real name authentication, and the system will give the APP login information and the PIN information on vehicle control to the user after the real name authentication; for details, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

■ On-board interconnection version

Because on-board interconnection system versions keep updated, the actual operating interface might differ from the above schematic diagram; the latest version will prevail.

■ Using mobile APP

The “Contact the customer service” can help users to quickly learn about and use the mobile APP.

■ Remote start

- Before the remote start, please make sure that all doors, windows, the sunroof, trunk lid and engine hood are closed and the vehicle is locked.
- After trying 5 times of remote start, you need to start the vehicle by using the engine switch, then power off and lock the vehicle before the next time of remote start can be performed.



CAUTIONS

■ When your mobile phone is missing

If your mobile phone is missing, the risk for the vehicle to be stolen goes significantly higher. Please keep it safe, and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer if necessary.

■ Network connection quality

It is difficult to maintain perfect connection at all times due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains and transmitters.



NOTICES

■ During remote start

- Do not use the remote start function in a poorly ventilated area. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases caused by starting the engine may accumulate and enter the vehicle.
- Do not use the remote start function in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow, exhaust gases may accumulate and enter the vehicle.
- During remote start, make sure there is no combustible near the vehicle. The exhaust system and exhaust gas can be extremely hot, and may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.

■ Permission

When using some functions of the on-board interconnection system, the corresponding permission needs to be given and make sure any third-party tool does not forbid the on-board interconnection network privilege, otherwise, the system might not be functional.

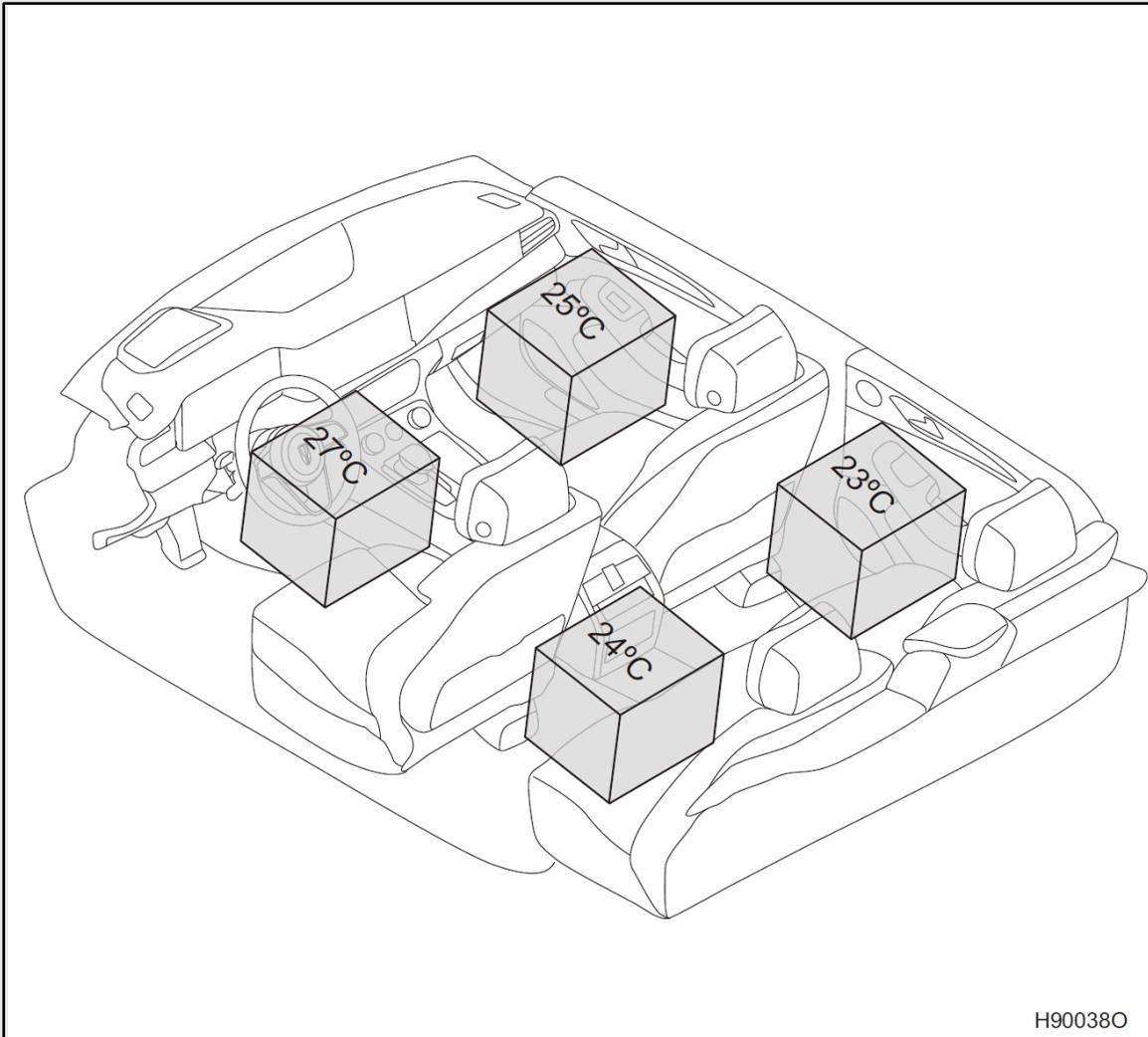
■ When trouble arises

Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

6-1. Using the A/C system	
Fully automatic A/C system	268
Fully automatic A/C system - front control system	269
Fully automatic A/C system - rear control system	279
Rear windshield heating	284
6-2. Using the interior lamps	
List of interior lamps	285
6-3. Using the storage units	
List of storage units	288
Trunk appliance.....	294
6-4. Other interior equipment	
On-board wireless charging * ...	295
Sun visor	296
File holder.....	297
Vanity mirror	298
Cigarette lighter	299
Power socket	300
220V Power socket	302
Seat temperature control*	304
Seat massage function*	306
Rear center armrest	308
Roof grab handle.....	309
Coat hook.....	310

Fully automatic A/C system

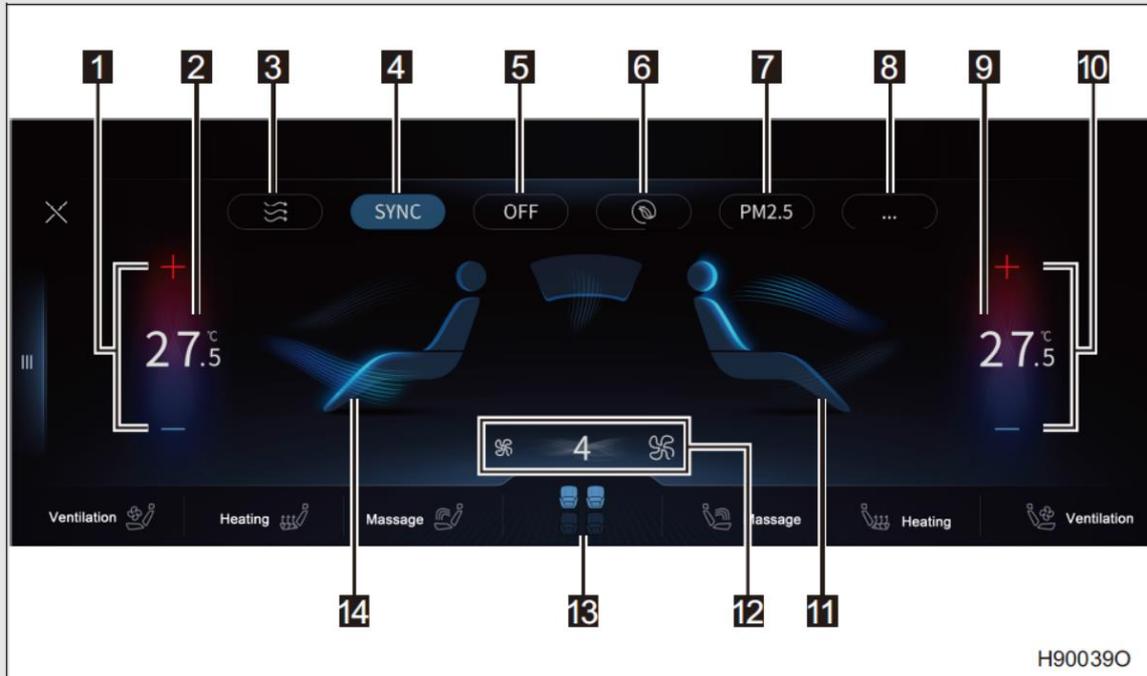
This vehicle is equipped with the four-zone A/C system, which can provide a driving and riding environment for occupants by automatically regulating the air outlet temperature, A/C air volume, air outlet mode and air inlet mode according to the set interior temperature and combining with the current interior temperature, environment temperature, sunlight intensity, vehicle speed, water temperature and other environmental parameters.



H900380

The air outlet is automatically selected according to the temperature setting, and the air volume is automatically adjusted.

► Audio system & A/C operation interface



1 Driver's side temperature setting button

3 Natural ventilation button

5 OFF button

7 PM2.5 button

9 Front passenger side temperature display

11 Front passenger side outlet mode setting

13 Front/rear switching button

2 Driver side temperature display

4 Sync button

6 Ion purification button

8 More function buttons

10 Front passenger side temperature setting button

12 Air volume adjustment knob

14 Front passenger side outlet mode setting

After pressing the [More Functions] button, more air-conditioning function buttons can be expanded, including the internal/external circulation button, AUTO button, front windshield forced defroster/defogger button, rear window heating button, and A/C button.

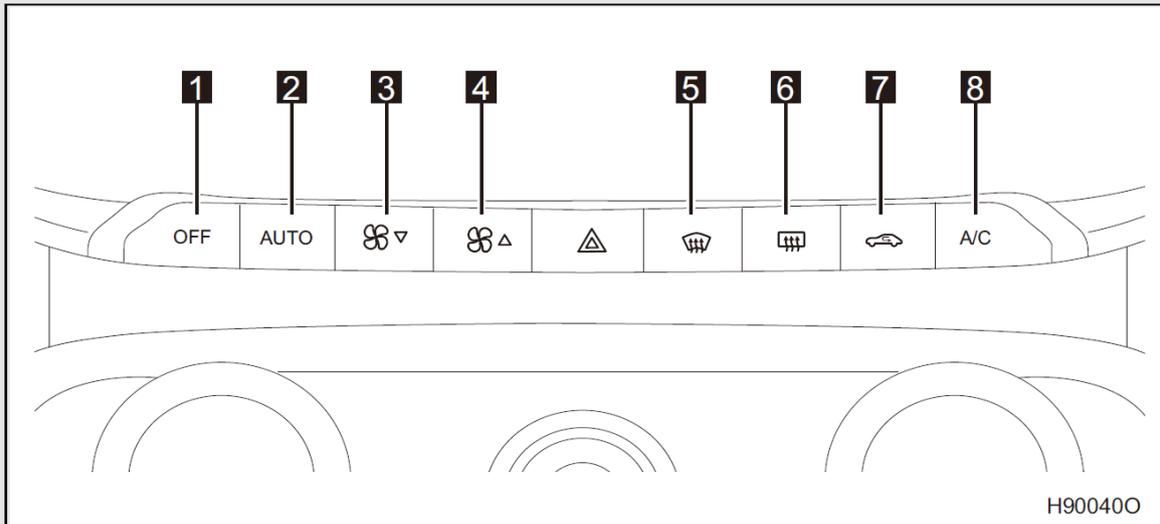
Three methods to enter the air conditioning interface:

Method I: press and hold the driver side/front passenger side A/C setting knob to enter the A/C interface.

Method II: touch [Air Conditioning Settings] in the [Vehicle] settings of the audio system to enter the A/C interface.

Method III: press up the multi-function knob of the audio system to enter the A/C interface.

► Dashboard switch assembly & A/C operation buttons



H900400

1 OFF button

2 AUTO button

3 Air volume adjustment knob (-)

4 Air volume adjustment knob (+)

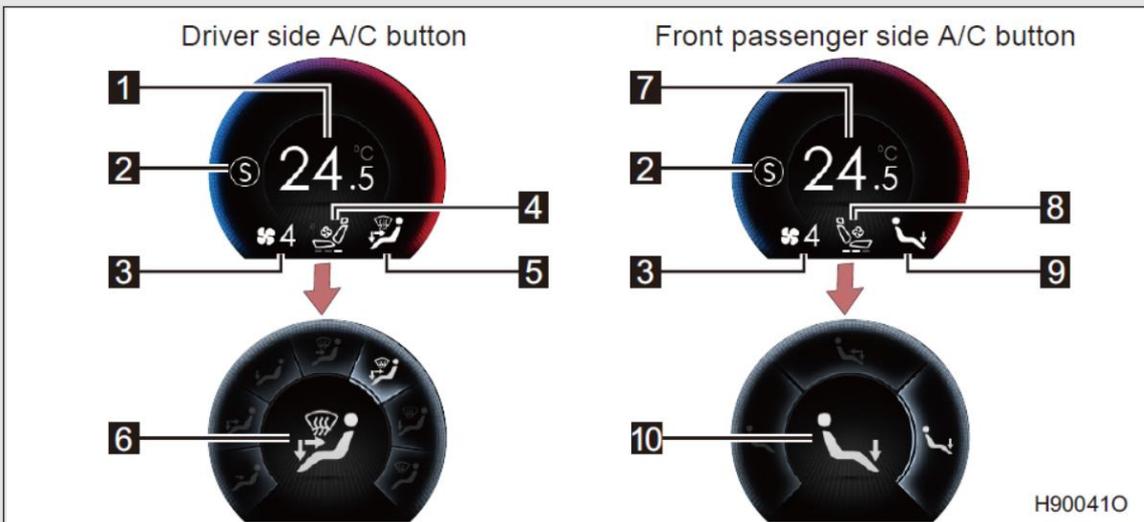
5 Front windshield forced defroster/defogger button

6 Rear windshield heating button

7 Internal and external circulation button

8 A/C button

► A/C adjustment knob



H900410

1 Driver side temperature display

2 Temperature zone synchronous display

3 Air volume level display

4 Driver side seat function display

5 Driver side outlet mode display

6 Driver side outlet mode regulation display

7 Front passenger side temperature display

8 Front passenger side seat function display

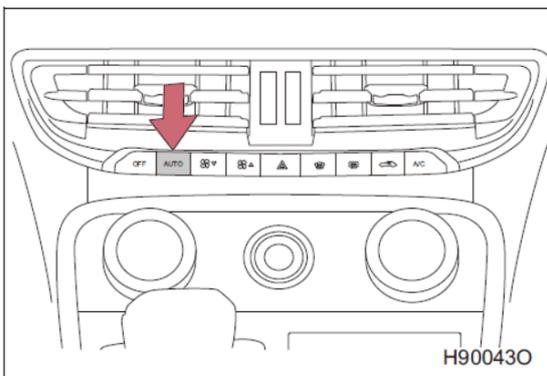
9 Front passenger side outlet mode display

10 Front passenger side outlet mode regulation display

Using the automatic A/C system



Method I: by tapping [AUTO] button in more function on the screen, the active indicator lights up, and the automatic A/C mode is on.



Method II: by tapping [AUTO] button on dashboard switch assembly, the active indicator lights up, and the automatic A/C mode is on.

In automatic A/C mode, you can set the temperature by adjusting the knob or pressing the temperature setting button according to your personal needs; and the temperature display will also display the set temperature.

- [AUTO] button indicator
 - If the air volume setting or the air outlet mode is operated, the [AUTO] button indicator goes out.
- Using the automatic mode

The air volume is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur.

 - In summer, when selecting the low temperature setting, the system will automatically switch to internal circulation mode.
 - After the button pressed, the blower may stay in low-gear operating status and stop for a while. The normal blowing will not be executed until warm or cool air is ready to flow.

Manual regulation setting

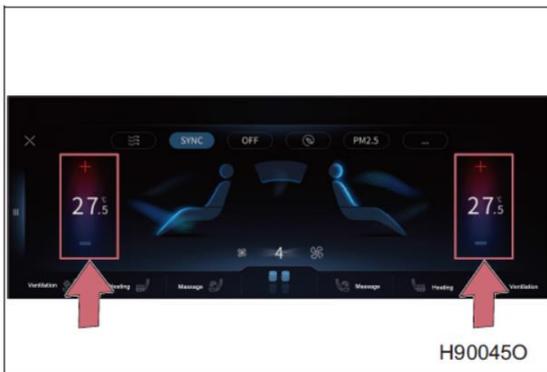
■ Regulation of air volume



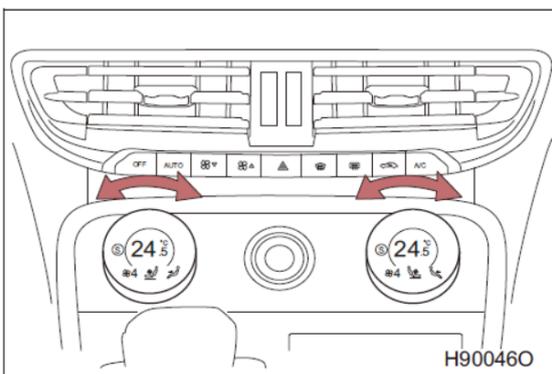
Method I: Operate the air volume setting button on the display screen or drag the air volume setting bar to realize the 1-7 level air volume adjustment of the vehicle A/C system.

Method II: realize the 1-7 level air volume adjustment of the vehicle A/C system by using the air volume adjustment knob   on the dashboard switch assembly.

■ Temperature regulation



Method I: touch + (to increase temperature) or - (to decrease temperature) on the display temperature setting button to set the temperature, or slide the temperature display value up and down to set the temperature.



Method II: Turn the adjusting knob to set the temperature.

Driver side and front passenger side temperatures can be adjusted independently.

If the [A/C] button indicator does not light up or the [A/C] button indicator is on but the A/C compressor is not running, the system will blow atmospheric temperature air or heated air to the interior.

- Turning off the air conditioner

Touch the [OFF] button on the display screen or the [OFF] button on the dashboard switch assembly to turn off the vehicle A/C system.

- Switching of zone control modes



By tapping the [SYNC] button, the indicator lights up and it goes to the single-zone control mode; the front passenger side and the rear area will be synchronized to the temperature and air outlet mode set for the driver side.

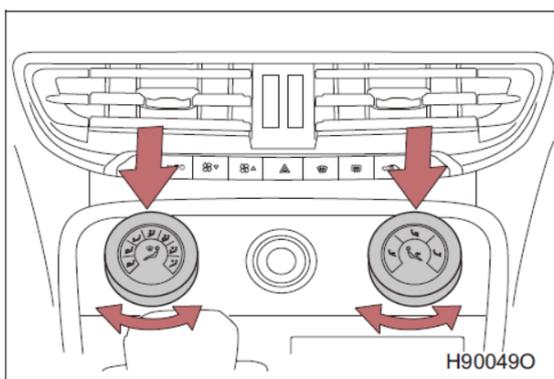
By tapping the [SYNC] button again, the indicator light goes out, and it goes to the multi-zone control mode. The temperature and air outlet mode for the driver side, front passenger side and rear area can be independently set.

In the single-zone control mode, separately set the temperature and air outlet mode at the front passenger side and rear area, it goes to the multi-zone control mode.

- Switching of air outlet mode



Method I: By tapping the air direction indicator, you can select the corresponding air outlet mode, tap again to cancel the mode, which can be selected in the way of combination.



Method II: with the adjusting knob pressed, rotate the adjusting knob to switch the air outlet mode.

: Air flow blows to the face.

: Air flow blows to the feet.



: Air flow blows to the front windshield.



: Air flow blows to the face and feet.



: Air flow blows to the face and front windshield.



: Air flow blows to the feet and front windshield.



: Air flow blows to the face, feet and front windshield.

■ A/C switch

When the engine is running, by tapping [A/C] button in more function on the screen or the [A/C] button on the dashboard switch assembly, the active indicator is on, and the A/C refrigeration starts.

By tapping [A/C] button again, the active indicator is off, and the A/C refrigeration ends.

■ Internal/external circulation mode switching

By tapping the button  in more function on the screen or the button  on the dashboard switch assembly, the indicator light lights up and it goes to the internal circulation mode; by tapping it again, the indicator light goes out, and the external circulation mode starts.

When it is switched to the automatic A/C mode, the A/C system will automatically switch the internal/external circulation mode.



CAUTIONS

■ **Do not use the internal circulation mode in chilly days or rainy days**

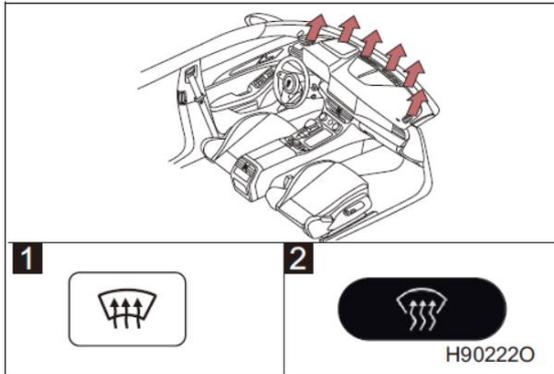
In chilly days or rainy days, use of the internal circulation mode might make windows fog up, which might block your line of sight, leading to serious accidents.

■ **When using the internal circulation mode**

The windows might fog up more easily if internal circulation mode is used for an extended period.

Other functions

■ Front windshield forced defrosting/defogging



1 By pressing the button  on the dashboard switch assembly, the indicator light lights up, and the front windshield forced defrosting/defogging function runs.

2 By pressing the button  in more function on the screen, the indicator light lights up, and the front windshield forced defrosting/defogging function runs.

When it is in the internal circulation mode, if the front windshield forced defrosting/defogging function runs, the system will automatically be switched to the external circulation mode.

Increase of air volume and rise of temperature can defrost/defog the front windshield as soon as possible.

■ Window fogging up

- When the interior humidity raises, windows might fog up easily. By turning on the A/C switch, it will dehumidify the air from the air outlet and effectively defog the windshield.
- If you turn off the A/C switch, windows might fog up more easily.
- In rainy days, windows might fog up.
- The windows might fog up if internal circulation mode is used for an extended period.



CAUTIONS

■ To prevent the windshield from fogging up

- Do not use the front windshield defroster/defogger mode during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.
- Do not put anything that might cover the air outlet on the dashboard, or it may hinder the air flow, obstructing the defogging process of the front windshield.

■ Natural ventilation function

By tapping the natural ventilation button on the display, it goes to the natural ventilation mode, that the air intake mode is switched to external circulation, and the compressor stops working at this time, thus saving energy.

■ ADS automatic defogging mode

When the front windshield is fogged and there is a tendency to affect safe driving, the air conditioning system enters the automatic defogging mode, under which the air volume is appropriately increased and blown to the front windshield; when the tendency is eliminated, the air conditioning system automatically switches back to the working state before defogging. When it is in the automatic defogging mode, you can exit it by operating the automatic A/C start button or the air outlet mode adjustment button. The A/C system will not restart this mode over a period of time.

HINT: When the automatic defogging mode runs, the air volume will increase.

■ Ion purification



By tapping the ion purification button on the display screen, the indicator light lights up, the ion purification function runs; by tapping it again, the indicator light goes out, and the ion purification function ends.

The system has two purification modes, namely sterilization working mode and anion working mode. When the system is working, the vehicle automatically switches between the two modes. When the blower is not working, the air purifier does not work even if the air purification function runs.

■ PM2.5 sensor



By tapping the [PM2.5] button on the display screen, the indicator light lights up, and the PM2.5 concentration of the air in the car is detected. After the detection is completed, if the concentration reaches the standard, the system automatically exits; and if the concentration does not meet the standard, the system automatically performs filtering, and automatically exits after the filtering is completed.

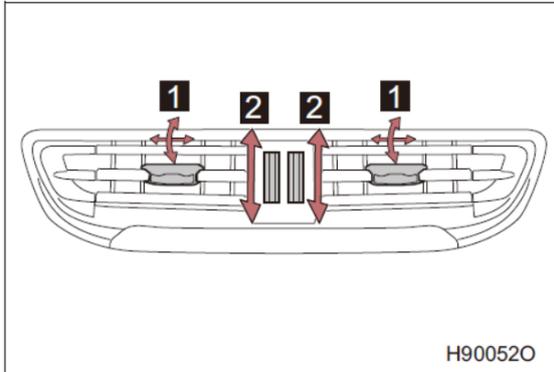
Pressing and holding the [PM2.5] button directly activates the PM2.5 filtering function. When PM2.5 filtering is being made, the A/C automatically switches to internal circulation to improve filtration efficiency.

■ AQS Air Quality System

The system automatically detects the air quality outside the car. When the outside air is polluted, the air conditioning system automatically switches to internal circulation to prevent the polluted air from entering the car to ensure the air quality inside the car.

Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

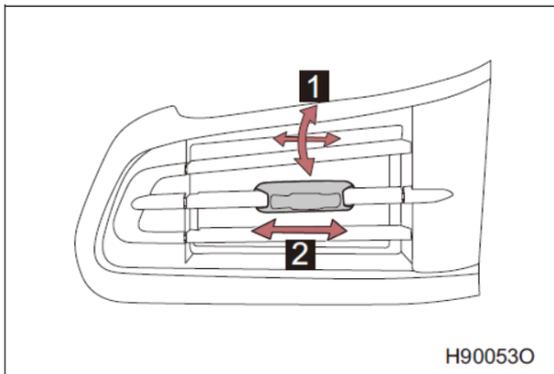
► Front center outlet



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

2 Open and close it by toggling.

► Front air outlet



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

2 Open and close it by toggling.

■ **Remote operation of air conditioning system**

- The air conditioning system can be operated remotely through the mobile APP. (→ P.264)

■ **Internal/external circulation mode**

- While driving on dusty roads (such as tunnels) or heavy-traffic roads, switch to the internal circulation mode. It can effectively prevent outside air from entering into the vehicle. During the refrigeration operation, the internal circulation mode can also effectively reduce the interior temperature.
- The windows might fog up if internal circulation mode is used for an extended period.

■ **Windshield defroster**

- When the front windshield forced defrosting/defogging function runs, the system will automatically be switched to the external circulation mode from the internal circulation mode.
- The air volume may increase when the defrosting/defogging function is running so as to defrost/defog the front windshield as soon as possible.

■ **A/C odors**

- During the using process, all odors inside and outside the vehicle might enter and accumulate in the A/C system. It might lead to smells at the vents.



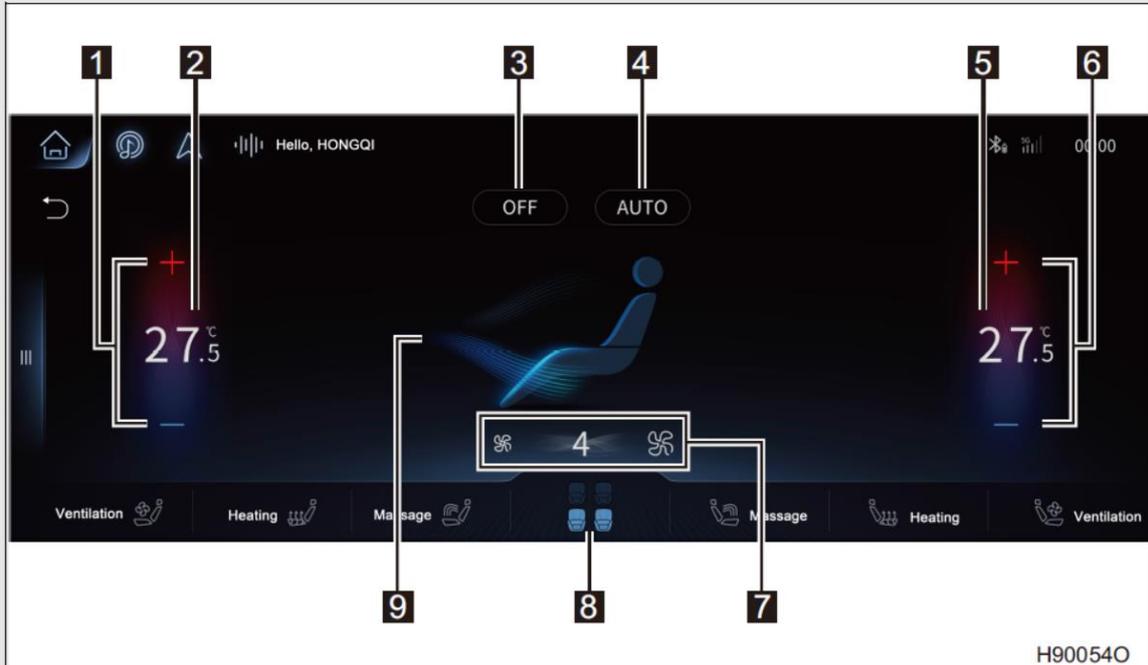
NOTICES

■ **Avoid low battery**

When the vehicle is not started, turn the air conditioning system off if it is not needed.

The rear air conditioning control system can synchronously or individually adjust the temperature and air outlet mode for the rear area according to the needs of the occupants to improve ride comfort.

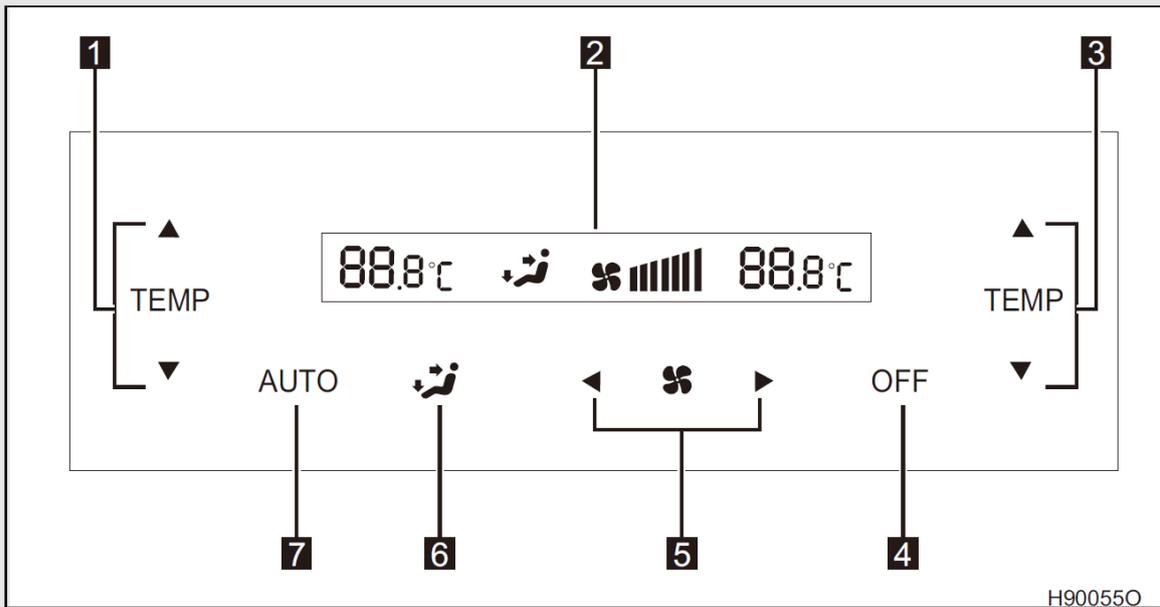
► Audio system & A/C operation interface



- 1 Temperature setting button for rear left passenger
- 2 Temperature display for rear left passenger
- 3 OFF button
- 5 Temperature display for rear right passenger
- 7 Air volume adjustment knob
- 9 Air outlet mode button

- 4 AUTO button
- 6 Temperature setting button for rear right passenger
- 8 Front/rear switching button

► Rear A/C control panel

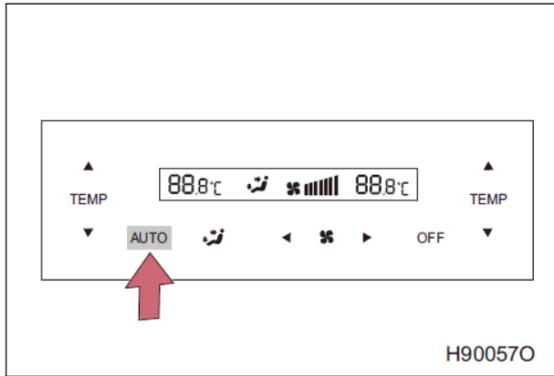


- 1 Temperature setting button for rear left passenger
- 2 Display screen
- 3 Temperature setting button for rear right passenger
- 4 OFF button
- 5 Air volume adjustment knob
- 6 Air outlet mode button
- 7 AUTO button

Using the automatic A/C system



Method I: by tapping [AUTO] button on the screen, the active indicator lights up, and the automatic A/C mode is on.



Method II: by tapping [AUTO] button on control panel, the active indicator lights up, and the automatic A/C mode is on.

In automatic A/C mode, you can set the temperature by pressing the temperature setting button according to your personal needs; and the temperature display screen will also display the set temperature.

■ [AUTO] button indicator

- If the air volume setting or the air outlet mode is operated, the [AUTO] button indicator goes out.

■ Using the automatic mode

The air volume is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur.

- In summer, when selecting the low temperature setting, the system will automatically switch to internal circulation mode.
- After the button pressed, the blower may stay in low-gear operating status and stop for a while. The normal blowing will not be executed until warm or cool air is ready to flow.

Using the automatic A/C system

■ Regulation of air volume



Method I: Operate the air volume setting button on the display screen or drag the air volume setting bar to realize the 1-7 level air volume adjustment of the vehicle A/C system.

Method II: realize the 1-7 level air volume adjustment of the vehicle A/C system by operating the air volume adjustment knob  on the control panel.

■ Temperature regulation



Method I: touch + (to increase temperature) or - (to decrease temperature) on the display temperature setting button to set the temperature, or slide the temperature display value up and down to set the temperature.

Method II: Set the temperature by operating the air volume adjustment knob ▲/▼ on the panel.

The temperature for the rear left and rear right passengers can be individually adjusted.

If the [A/C] button indicator does not light up or the [A/C] button indicator is on but the A/C compressor is not running, the system will blow atmospheric temperature air or heated air to the interior.

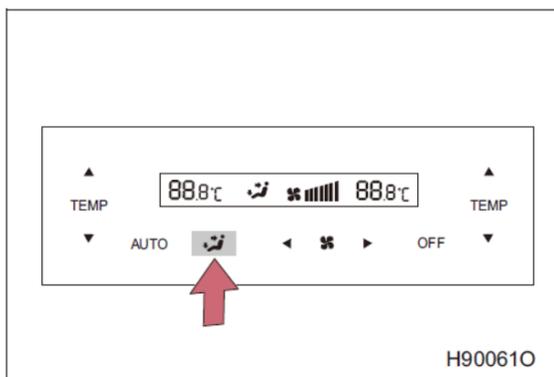
■ Turning off the air conditioner

Touch the [OFF] button on the display screen or the [OFF] button on the control panel to turn off the vehicle A/C system.

■ Switching of air outlet mode



Method I: By tapping the air direction indicator, you can select the corresponding air outlet mode, tap again to cancel the mode, which can be selected in the way of combination.



Method II: Touch the air outlet mode button to switch the air outlet mode.

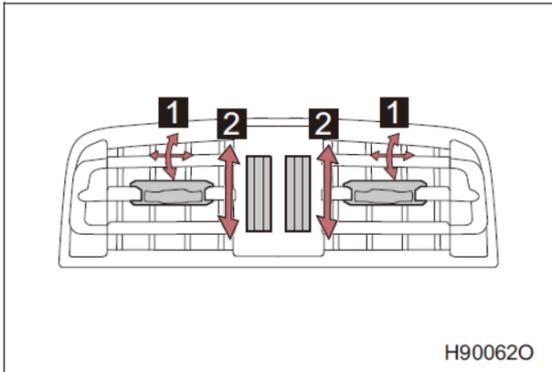
: Air flow blows to the face.

: Air flow blows to the feet.

: Air flow blows to the face and feet.

Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

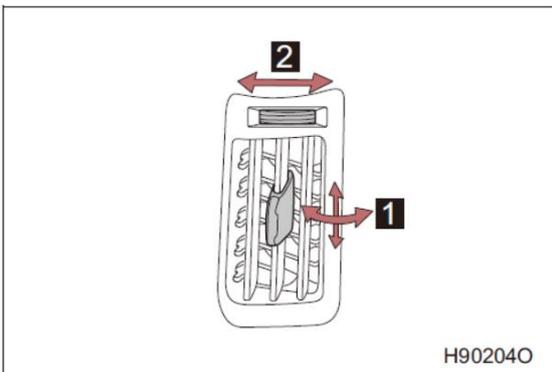
► Rear center outlet



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

2 Open and close it by rotating the knob.

► Rear air outlet



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

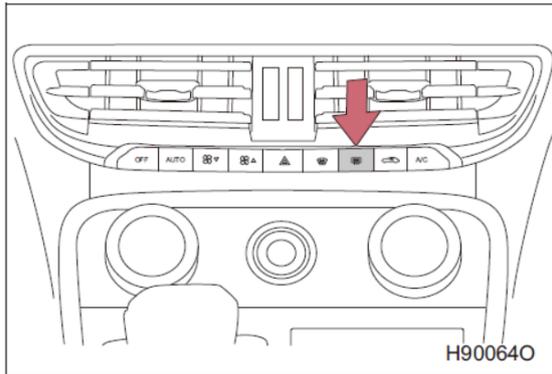
2 Open and close it by rotating the knob.

Rear windshield heating



Method I: By pressing the button  in more function on the screen, the indicator light lights up, and rear windshield heating begins.

By tapping the button  again, the active indicator goes out and system stops working.



Method II: By pressing the button  on the dashboard switch assembly, the indicator light lights up, and rear windshield heating begins.

By tapping the button  again, the active indicator goes out and system stops working.

Note: After the system has been operating for a certain period of time, it will be shut off automatically, and the system indicator will go out.

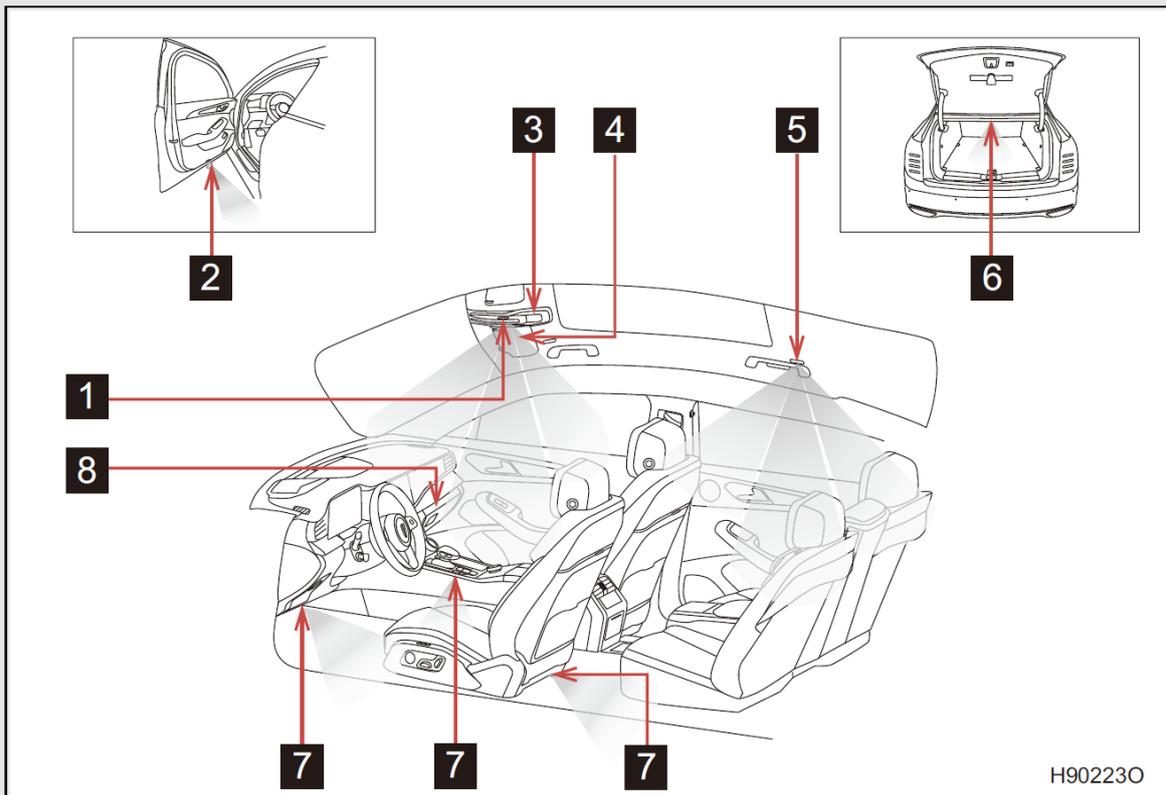


CAUTIONS

■ **During rear windshield heating**

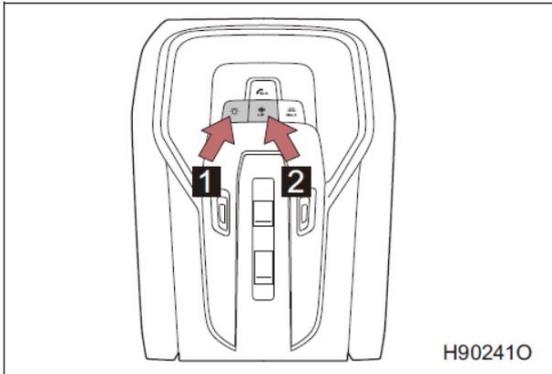
Do not touch the heated area, because you might get burnt after it is heated up.

6-2. Using the interior lamps
List of interior lamps



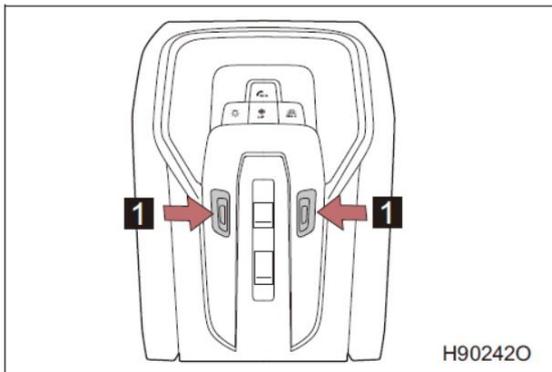
- 1 Front map light (→ P.286)
- 2 Door lamp
- 3 Front room lamp (→ P.286)
- 4 Vanity mirror light (→ P.287)
- 5 Rear map light (→ P.286)
- 6 Trunk lamp
- 7 Mood lamp*(→ P.227)
- 8 Glove box lamp

Front room lamp



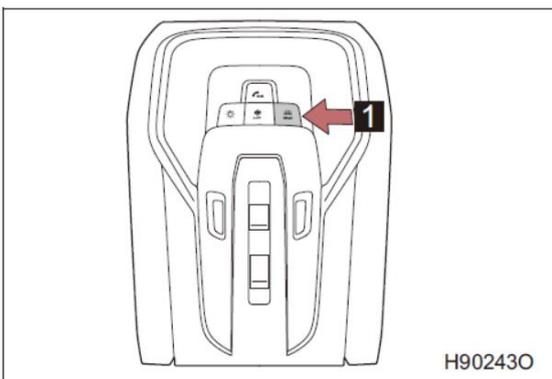
- 1 By pressing the button , turn on the front room lamp; by pressing it again, turn off the front room lamp.
- 2 By pressing the button , the indicator is on, and the Door Linkage is turned off; by pressing it again, the indicator goes out, the Door Linkage is turned on.

Front map light

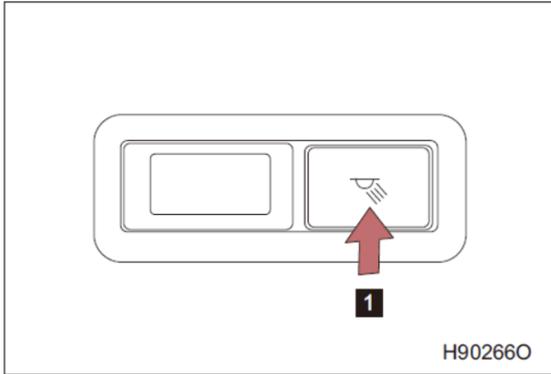


- 1 By pressing the position of the light, turn on the front map light; by pressing it again, turn off the front map light.

Rear map light

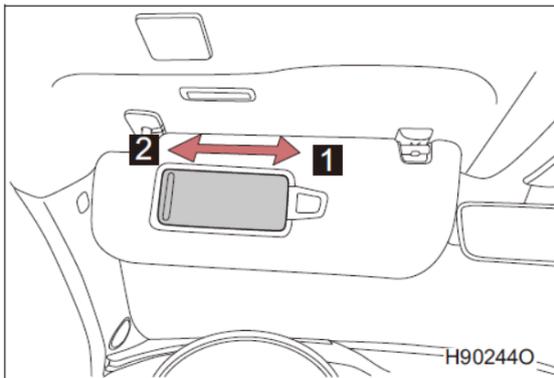


- 1 By pressing the button , turn on the rear map light; by pressing it again, turn off the rear map light.



- 1 By pressing the button , turn on the rear map light on the corresponding side; by pressing it again, turn off the rear map light.

Vanity mirror light



- 1 By opening the sun visor and sliding open the vanity mirror cover, the vanity mirror light is ON.
- 2 By closing the vanity mirror cover, the vanity mirror light is OFF.

■ Energy-saving control

If the front room lamp switch is turned to the Door Linkage position, and the door is opened, the lights will go off automatically after illuminating for a certain period of time; turning the engine switch OFF and closing all doors, the room lamp and ambient lighting go off after a certain period of time.

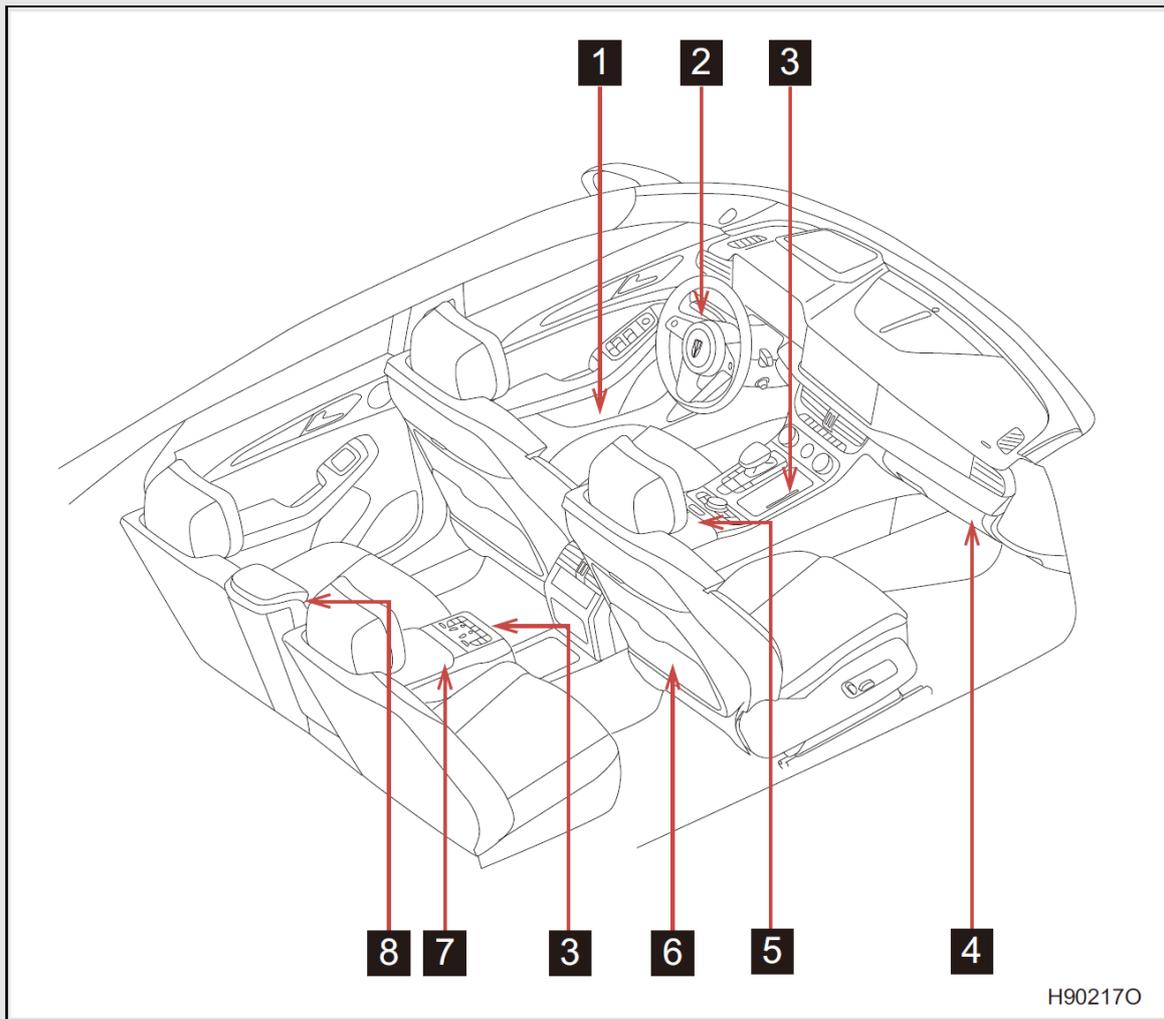
NOTICES

■ To prevent the battery depletion

Turn off interior lamps if unnecessary.

Do not leave the vanity mirror cover or doors open for a long time. Because when they are open, the corresponding interior lamps will be lit on, which may lead to battery depletion.

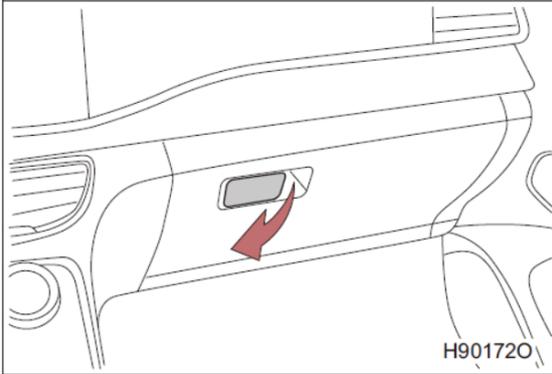
List of storage units



H90217O

- 1** Sundries drawer (→ P.292)
- 2** Storage box, left lower guard plate (→ P.290)
- 3** Cup holders (Front/Rear)(→ P.290)
- 4** Glove box (→ P.289)
- 5** Front center storage box (→ P.289)
- 6** File pocket (→ P.292)
- 7** Rear center storage box (→ P.292)
- 8** Rear backrest storage box (→ P.293)

Glove box



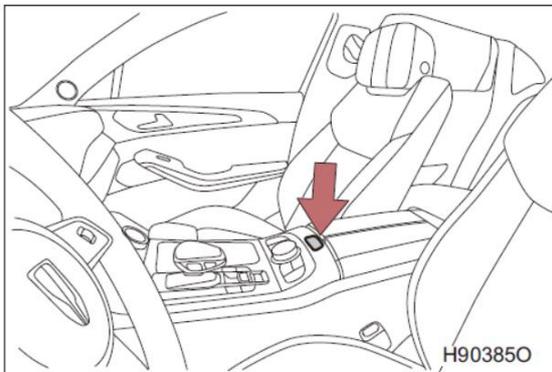
By pulling the handle, open the glove box.

When closing the glove box cover, it means securely locked when it“clicks”.

CAUTIONS

- **Precautions when driving**
Keep the glove box closed.
Otherwise, injuries may occur in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

Front center storage box

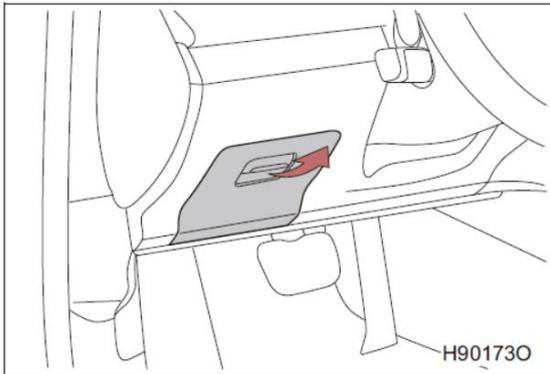


Press the storage box switch to pop up the front center storage box cover.

CAUTIONS

- **Precautions when driving**
Keep the storage box closed.
Otherwise, injuries may occur in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

Storage box, left lower guard plate



By pulling the handle, open the storage box.
When closing the storage box cover, it means securely locked when it“clicks”.

CAUTIONS

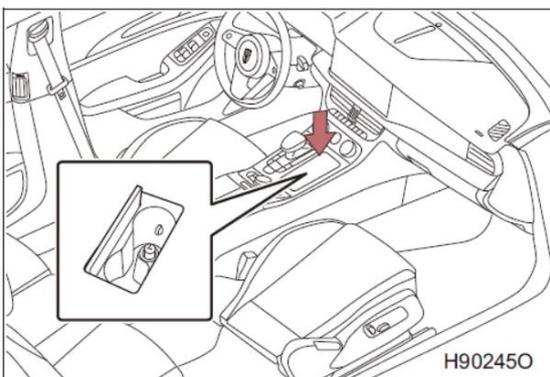
■ Precautions when driving

Keep the storage box closed.

Otherwise, the normal driving may be affected, and injuries may occur in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

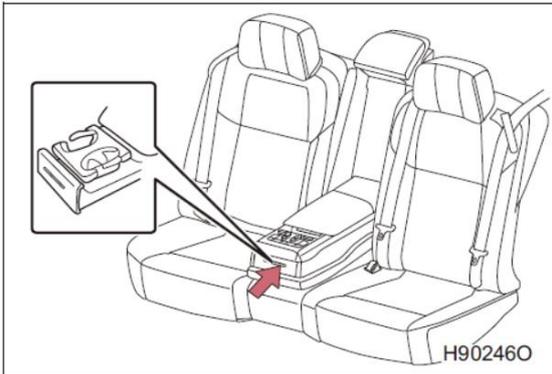
Cup holders

► Front



By pressing the cup holder lid downward, it will open.

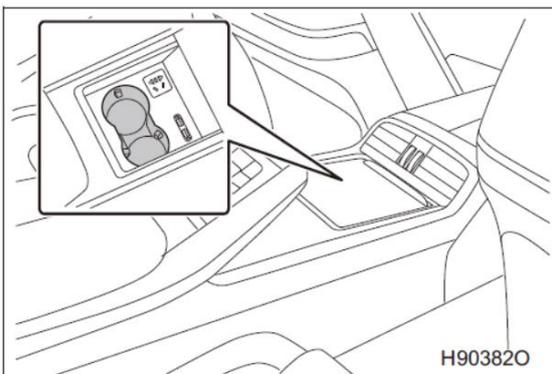
► Rear (type I)



Lay down the rear seat central armrest, pressing and releasing the cup holder lid, the cup holders will automatically pop up.

Put them back when not in use.

► Rear (type II)



Slide backwards to open the cup holder lid.

- When using cup holders to hold cups
 - Please tighten the cup lid.
 - Some cups might not be held there because of their size or shape.

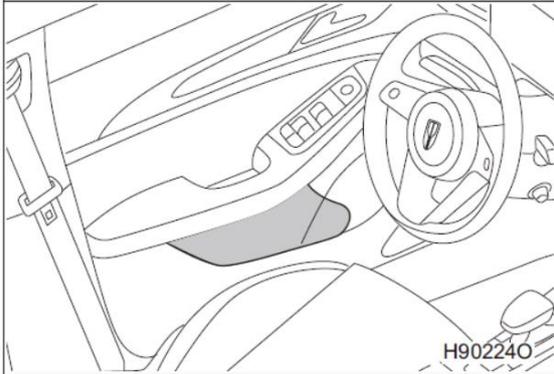
**CAUTIONS**■ **When using cup holders**

- Please do not place any item other than cups or cans in cup holders. Those items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or emergency braking and cause injuries.
- It is very dangerous to use cup holders to hold cups with hot liquid inside. If the hot liquid spills, it might cause burns.
- Take care not to allow foreign objects such as liquids to touch the electrical parts around the cup holder, otherwise it may cause a short circuit or electric shock hazard.

■ **When not in use**

Keep closed when not in use. Otherwise, injuries may occur in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

Sundries drawer

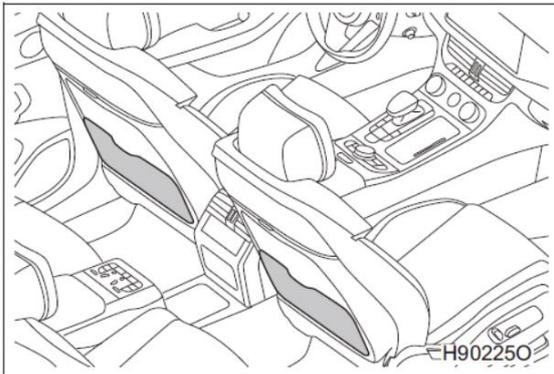


Sundries drawers are located on doors, and used to place bottles, duster cloth or sundries.

When placing bottles, tighten their lids.

Some bottles might not be held there because of their size or shape.

File pocket

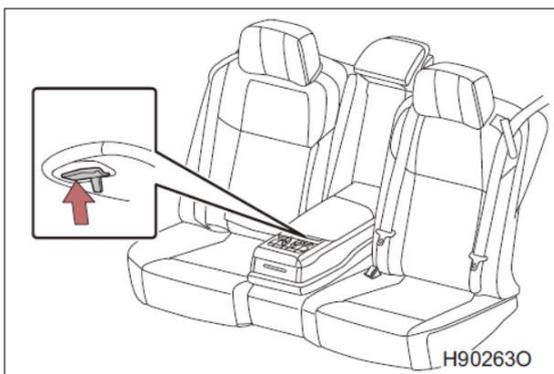


File pockets are located at the lower end of the driver seat and front passenger seat backrests.

They are used to store newspapers, magazines and other items.

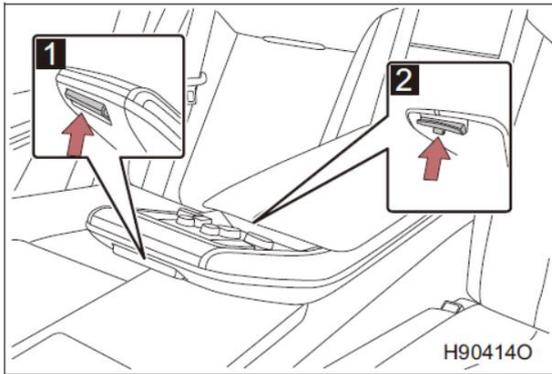
Rear center storage box

► Type I



By pressing the handle, and lifting the lid, you can open the storage box.

► Type II



1 Lower center storage box

2 Upper center storage box

By pressing the handle, and lifting the lid, you can open the storage box.

**CAUTIONS**

■ **Precautions when driving**

Keep the storage box closed.

Otherwise, injuries may occur in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

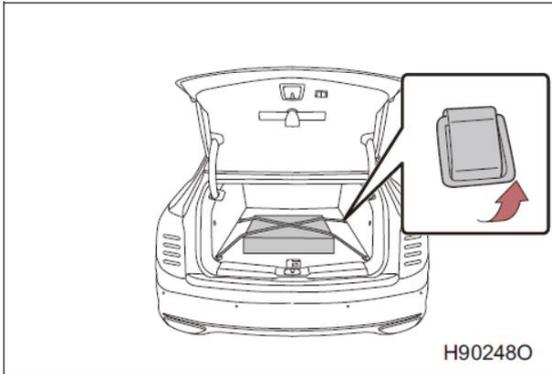
Rear backrest storage box*



Press the switch and slide down to open the storage box.

Trunk appliance

Trunk hook



Lift the hook to use.

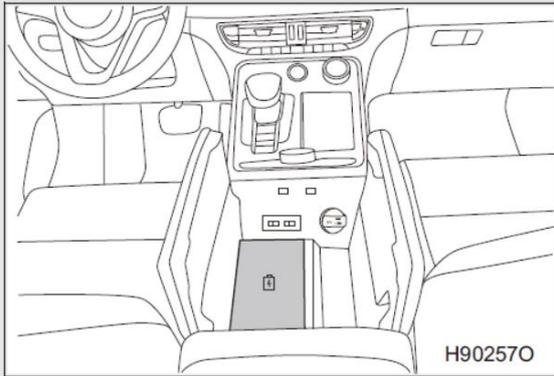
The trunk hook is used to fix loose items.



CAUTIONS

- When not using the trunk hooks, please fold them back to where they belong.

The center storage box is equipped with a wireless charging system.



Mobile phones supporting Qi standard wireless charging can be directly placed in the wireless charging area for charging.

Mobile phones that do not support Qi standard wireless charging need to be charged with a receiver.

■ **On-board wireless charging system can be used when**

The engine switch is turned to "IG-ON" mode.



CAUTIONS

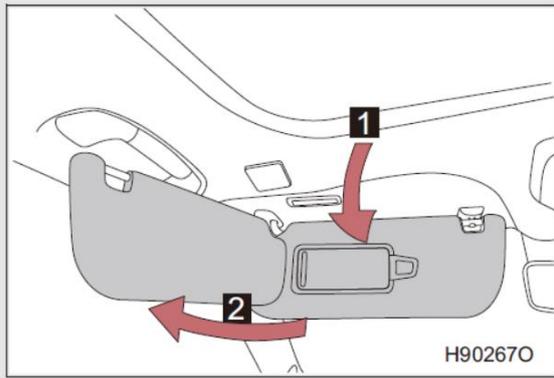
- Before charging, please remove all metal objects from the charging pad
When charging the phone wirelessly, if you find metal objects (such as coins, keys, rings or paper clips) located between the phone and the charging pad, do not immediately remove them by hand to avoid burning your fingers. Please take off the phone first, wait until the metal objects cool down, and then remove them from the charging pad.



NOTICES

- **When charging**
 - Remove all items from the wireless charging non-slip mat. If there are foreign objects, the system may not be able to charge normally.
 - The phone should be faced up and placed in the middle of the non-slip mat.
- **Do not place magnetic cards such as highway toll cards in the wireless charging area, which may cause demagnetization.**
- **Wireless charging disabling**
During the wireless charging, if the engine is started or you leave the vehicle with the key, the wireless charging will be temporarily interrupted, which is normal.

Sun visor

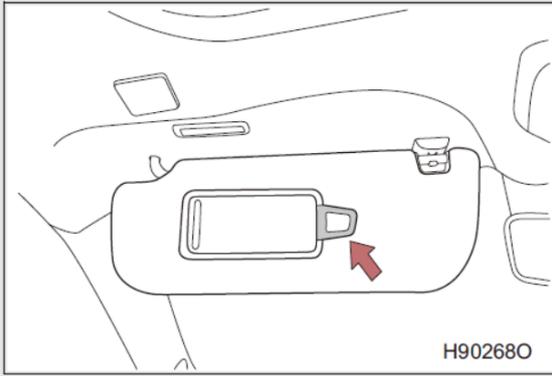


1 Forward position

Flip the visor down.

2 Side position

Flip down, unhook, and swing the visor to the side.



The file holder is located on the visor at the driver's side.

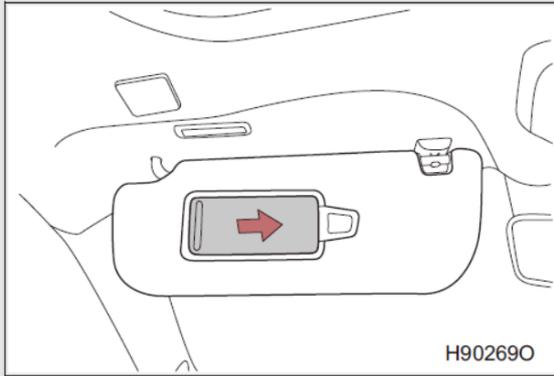
It is used to store receipts, cards and other items.



NOTICES

- **To prevent the file holder from being damaged**
Do not put too many items on the file holder.

Vanity mirror



Flip down, and slide the cover to open the vanity mirror.



NOTICES

■ **When not in use**

Keep the vanity mirror closed.

■ **Avoid low battery**

Do not leave the vanity lights on for extended periods while the engine is off.

Press the front cup holder lid down to open it, and press the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter will pop up when ready for use.

■ **The cigarette lighter can be used when**

The engine switch is turned to "IG-ON" mode.



CAUTIONS

■ **To avoid burns or fires**

- Do not touch the metal parts of the cigarette lighter.
- Do not press cigarette lighter all the time. Otherwise, it may catch fire due to overheating.
- Do not insert anything other than the cigarette lighter into the outlet.

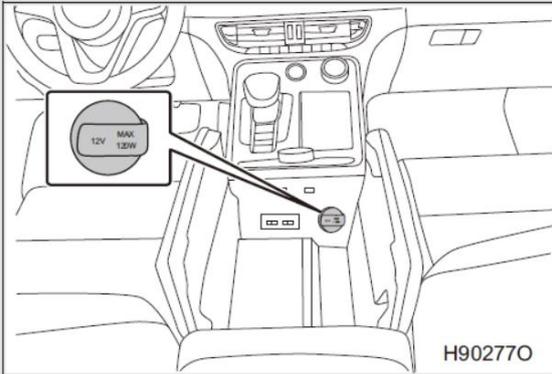
■ **When not in use**

- Keep the front cup holder lid closed.
Otherwise, injuries may occur in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

Power socket

■ 12V power supply

The power socket can be used for 12 V accessories that run on less than 10 A.

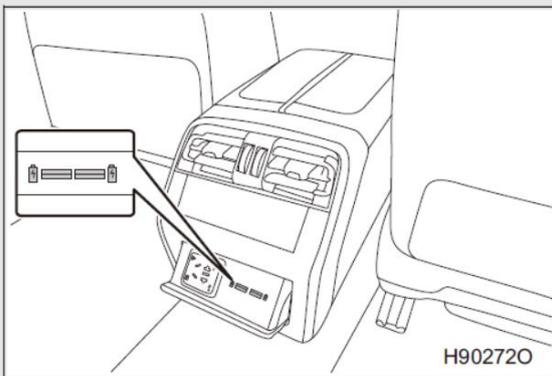


It is inside the center storage box.

■ 5V USB power supply

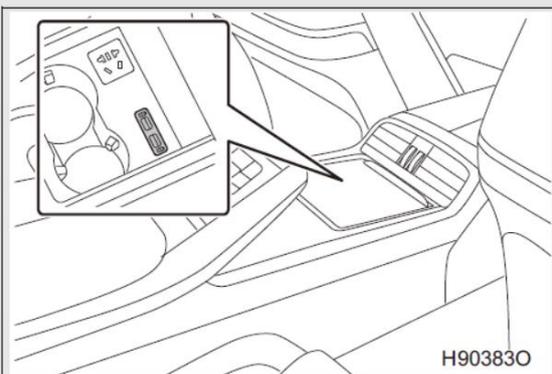
The power socket can be used for 5 V accessories that run on less than 2 A.

► Rear (type I)



It is located at the lower end of the rear center air outlet.

► Rear (type II)



It is located in the cup holder in rear center armrest.

- **The power sockets can be used when**

The engine switch is turned to "IG-ON" mode.

**NOTICES**

- **To prevent damage to the power sockets**

Close the power socket lid when the power socket is not in use. Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power socket may cause a short circuit.

- **To prevent the fuse from being blown**

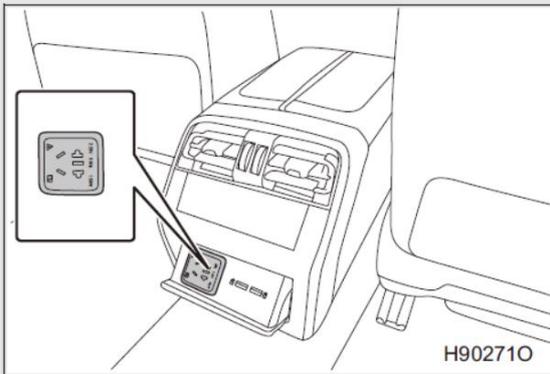
Do not use an accessory that uses more than rated voltage/current.

- **Avoid low battery**

Do not use the power socket longer than necessary when the engine is off.

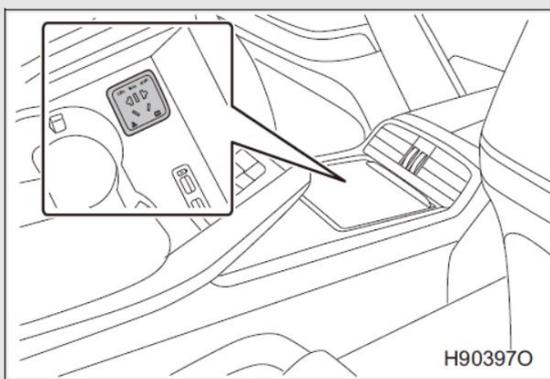
The vehicle is equipped with 220V power socket.

► Type I



It is located at the lower end of the rear center air outlet.

► Type II



It is located in the cup holder in rear center armrest.

- The 220V power socket can be used when
The engine switch is turned to "IG-ON" mode.
- Indicator lamp
The indicator light (green) keeps on if the socket works normally; and the indicator light (red) flashes if malfunction occurs, such as input over-voltage, 220V output overloaded, short circuit, leakage, over-temperature protection.

⚠ CAUTIONS

- When the 220V power socket is working, it is in a high voltage state
 - Never spill liquid on the power socket.
 - Do not connect the adapter or additional wires to the 220V power socket, otherwise, the built-in child protection against electric shock will be deactivated and the socket will continue to be live.
 - Take care not to accidentally insert any conductive objects such as knitting needles into the contacts in the 220V power socket.

**NOTICES**

- **Connection of the electrical device:** insert the plug to the limit to unlock the built-in child protection against electric shock. The socket will be powered only after the child protection against electric shock has been unlocked.
- **Be sure to strictly follow the operating instructions provided by the electrical appliance manufacturer!**
- **The consumed power of electrical appliances must not be greater than the maximum rated output power 150W of the socket, otherwise, the electrical system of the vehicle may be damaged.**
- **Do not insert heavy electrical devices or plugs such as power adapters directly into the socket.**
- **Only electrical devices that match the voltage of the socket can be connected to the socket.**
- **If the temperature exceeds a certain specified value, the output of the 220V power socket will be automatically cut off. When the consumed power is too high or the ambient temperature is too high, the function of overheating protection will activate and disable the 220V output. When the temperature drops to the specified value, the 220V power socket automatically restores the 220V output, and the electrical power supply is restored. The inverter will also cut off the current supply of electrical appliances when it is powered off due to overheating.**

Seat temperature control*

Temperatures of the seats can be adjusted individually.

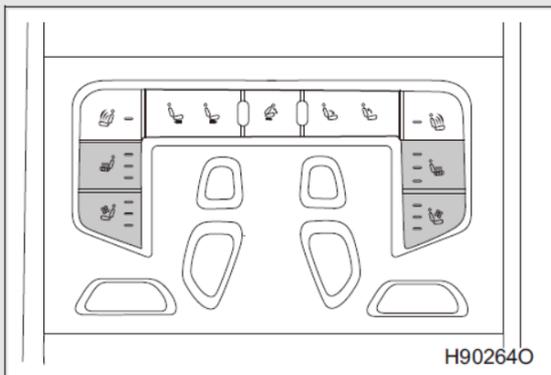
■ Front seat temperature adjusting



By pressing the seat heating and ventilation button, select appropriate heating and ventilation levels; the ventilation and heating functions cannot be used at the same time.

They can be adjusted among 1-3 levels.

■ Rear seat temperature adjusting



By pressing the seat heating and ventilation button, select appropriate heating and ventilation levels.

They can be adjusted among 1-3 levels.

■ Operating conditions

The engine switch is turned to "IG-ON" mode.

**CAUTIONS**

- **When using the seat heating or ventilation function, following matters need to be followed**
 - When the persons below are sitting on seats with an operating heater, extra attention shall be paid to prevent burns:
 - Babies, children, seniors, patients and the disabled
 - Persons with sensitive skin
 - Persons who are fatigued
 - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.) that induce sleep
 - Do not cover the seat with anything (blanket, seat cushion, etc.) when using the seat heater or ventilator. Otherwise, it would increase or decrease the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating/overcooling.
 - Do not use seat heating or ventilation function more than necessary. Doing so may cause overcooling, overheating or local burns.

**NOTICES**

- **To prevent damage to the seat heating/ventilation system**

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on seats and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into seats.
- **When cleaning seats**

When cleaning seats, do not use benzene, gasoline or other organic solution. It would damage the heaters and seat fabrics.

Seat massage function*

The seat massage function can be enabled through the audio system air conditioning operation interface and the rear center armrest control panel.

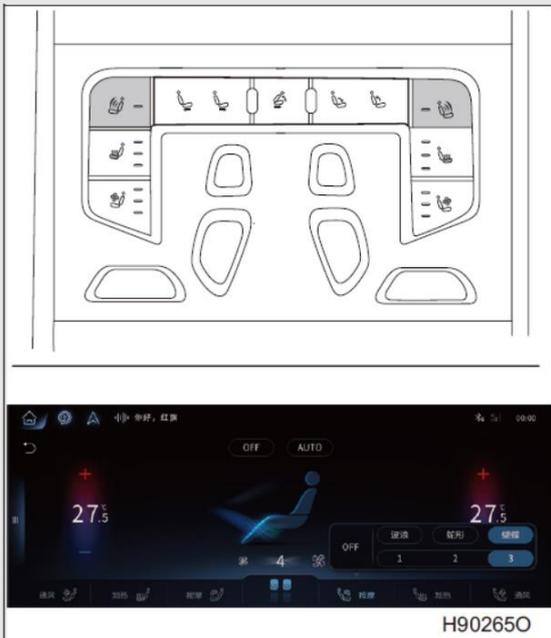
■ Front seat massage



The seat massage mode and level can be selected through the air conditioner operation interface on the front entertainment display.

The system will automatically shut down after running for about 15 minutes.

■ Rear seat massage



The seat massage function can be turned on/off through the rear center armrest control panel and the front entertainment display screen. After the seat massage function is turned on, the seat massage mode and level can be selected through the front entertainment display screen.

The system will automatically shut down after running for about 15 minutes.

■ Operating conditions

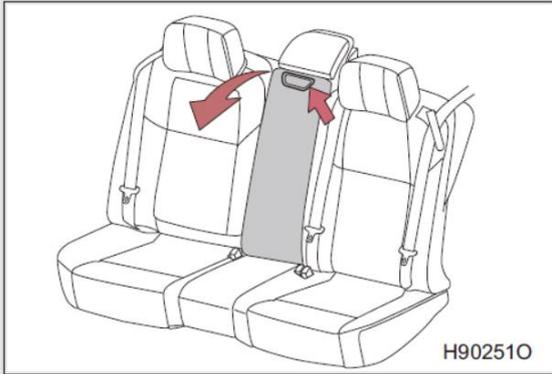
The engine switch is turned to "IG-ON" mode.

- For vehicles equipped with a rear entertainment display, the massage function of the rear seats can be set through the rear entertainment display.

**CAUTIONS****■ Using seat massage function**

- For the pregnant women, people who need to rest after childbirth or falling ill (heart disease, etc.), please consult a doctor before use.
- Children are prohibited from using the massage function.
- It should not be used immediately after meals, or used for a long time.
- If you feel unwell while using the massage function, you should stop using it immediately.

6-4. Other interior equipment
Rear center armrest

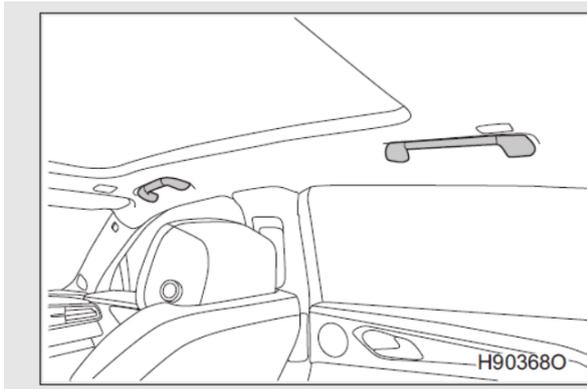


For some models, you must press the opening button before pulling down the armrest, as shown in the figure.



NOTICES

- **To prevent damage to the armrest**
Do not apply too much strain on the armrest.



Roof grab handles are located at roof side beam.

When sitting on seats, occupants can support their bodies with the roof grab handles mounted on the roof lining.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **Roof grab handle**

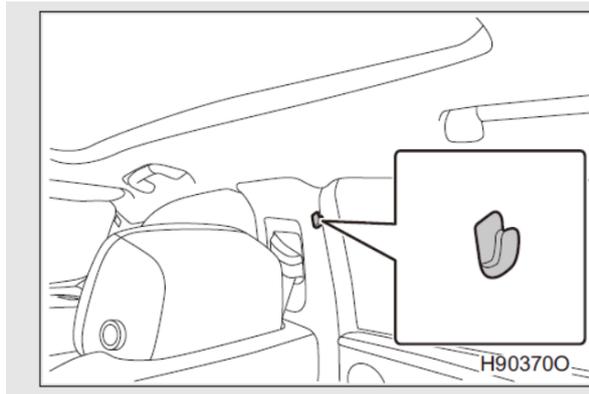
When getting on/off the vehicle or getting out of seats, do not use roof grab handles.

 **NOTICES**

■ **To prevent damage to roof grab handles**

Do not hang any weight or apply heavy loads onto roof grab handles to prevent damage to them.

Coat hook



Hang clothes on coat hooks.



CAUTIONS

■ **Items that must not be hung on the hooks**

Do not hang a coat hanger or other hard or sharp object on coat hooks. If the curtain airbags deploy, these items may fly out and cause serious injury or even death.

7-1. Maintenance and servicing

Cleaning and protecting vehicle exterior trim	312
Cleaning and protecting vehicle interior trim	314

7-2. Maintenance

Maintenance instructions.....	316
-------------------------------	-----

7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

Do-it-yourself maintenance precautions.....	318
DPF	320
Engine hood	321
Engine compartment	322
Battery	331
Tire	334
Tire pressure	337
Wheel	339
A/C filter.....	340
Replacing smart key battery	342
Checking and replacing the fuse	344

Cleaning and protecting vehicle exterior trim

Observing the following operations helps to protect the vehicle exterior trim and keep it in the best condition:

- Flush the body, wheelhouse and vehicle underside with plenty of water from top to bottom to remove dirt and dust.
- Scrub the body with sponge or soft cloth (e.g. suede cloth).
- For traces that are difficult to remove, wash them with car washing agent and rinse them thoroughly with water.
- Wipe the water off completely.
- When the waterproof coating is aged, the vehicle should be waxed.

Do not wax the body until the vehicle surface has no water drops and is cooled down.

■ Automatic car washing

- Fold the exterior mirrors before washing the car. Start flushing from the front of the vehicle. Make sure that the exterior mirrors are unfolded before driving.
- Brushes used for car washing may scratch the surface of the vehicle and damage the paint.

■ High pressure car washing

- Do not let the nozzle for car washing too close to the windows.
- Before washing the car, check and confirm if the vehicle's fuel filler cap has been properly closed.

■ Aluminium wheels

- Use neutral detergents to remove the dirt immediately if any. Do not use hard brushes or detergents containing abrasives. Do not use highly corrosive or strong chemical detergents.
- Do not use detergents to clean the wheels when they are very hot (e.g. after long distance driving in hot weather).
- Flush the wheels immediately after washing them with detergent.

■ Bumpers

Do not use detergents containing abrasives.



CAUTIONS

■ When cleaning the vehicle

Do not flush the inside of the engine compartment with water. Failure to do so may result in a short circuit of electrical components, which may lead to a fire.

■ Precautions regarding exhaust pipes

The exhaust gases can make the exhaust pipes very hot.

When cleaning the vehicle, do not touch the exhaust pipes before they cool down sufficiently, otherwise it may scald.

**NOTICES****■ Preventing body and body paint aging, and corrosion of body and parts (aluminum wheels, etc.)**

- The vehicle shall be cleaned immediately after the following circumstances occur:
 - After driving along the seaside.
 - After driving on the saline-alkali roads.
 - If the paint surface is attached with coal tar or resin.
 - If there are dead insects, insect dung or bird dung on the paint surface.
 - After the vehicle is driven in an area polluted by soot, lampblack, mineral dust, iron powder or chemical substances.
 - When the vehicle is heavily dusty or muddy.
 - When liquids such as benzene and petrol splash onto the paint surface.
- If the paint is peeling off or scratched, please repair it immediately.
- In order to prevent wheel corrosion when storing the wheels, remove dirt and choose a place for storage with a lower humidity.

■ When cleaning the flag emblem

Please wipe the flag emblem on the engine hood with clean water or neutral cleaning agent. Do not use alcohol or organic solvents containing such as alcoholic liquids, phenol and anisole to clean it, otherwise cracks will easily occur.

■ When cleaning the lights

- Be careful when cleaning. Do not use organic detergents or hard brushes for cleaning, otherwise the surface of lights may be damaged.
- Do not wax the surface of the lamps because wax may damage the lampshades.

Cleaning and protecting vehicle interior trim

Observing the following operations helps to protect the vehicle interior trim and keep it in the best condition:

■ **Protecting the vehicle interior**

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dirt and dust. Wet the cloth with warm water and wipe off the dirty.

■ **Cleaning the leather parts**

- Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dirt and dust.
- Wet the soft cloth with diluted detergents and wipe off the residual dirt and dust. Please use a neutral detergent solution for wool with a diluted concentration of about 5%.
- Wring out the wet cloth and wipe the remaining detergent thoroughly.
- Wipe the residual water from the surface with a dry soft cloth, and then let the leather dry in a cool and ventilated place.

■ **Cleaning the artificial leather parts**

- Use a vacuum cleaner to remove floating dust.
- Apply a neutral soap to artificial leather.
- Allow the soap solution to soak the leather for a few minutes, then wipe off dirt and soap with a clean wet cloth.

■ **Cleaning the wooden parts**

- If there is dust accumulation on the surface of wood trims, it can be gently cleaned and wiped with cotton gauze.
- If the surface of the wooden trims is stained with dirt, it can be lightly wiped with cotton gauze dipped with a little neutral soap solution.

■ **Maintenance of the leather parts**

It is recommended that you clean the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the interior.

■ **Maintenance of the wooden parts**

It is recommended that you carry out maintenance on the surface of wooded trims at any time according to the surface conditions.

■ **Cleaning carpet**

Use a suitable commercially available foam cleaner to clean the carpet. Apply foams onto a sponge or a brush. Scrub in overlapping circles. Do not add water. Keep the carpet as dry as possible to get the best results.

■ **Seat belt**

Dip cloth or sponge in neutral detergents and lukewarm water for cleaning. And regularly check whether the safety belts are excessively worn, worn or scratched.

**CAUTIONS****■ Waterproofness inside the vehicle**

- Do not spill the liquid in the vehicle, otherwise it may cause electrical components to malfunction or a fire.
- Do not damp airbag components or wires inside the vehicle.
Electrical failure may result in accidental deployment or malfunction of the airbag, resulting in serious personal injury or even death.

■ Clean interior trims (especially the dashboard)

Do not use polishing wax or polishing detergents. The dashboard may be reflected onto the windshield, obstructing the driver's vision and causing accidents, which result in serious injuries or even death.

**NOTICES****■ Detergents**

- Do not use the following types of cleaning agents, otherwise it may discolor the interior of the vehicle or cause stripes or damage to the paint surface:
Organic solutions containing such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, coloring agents and bleaching agents.
- Do not use polishing wax or cleaning agents, otherwise it may damage the paint surfaces of the dashboard or other interior parts.

■ Preventing leather surface damage

To prevent leather surface damage and aging, please observe the following precautions:

- Wipe off the dirt from the leather surface in time.
- The vehicle should not be directly exposed to the sunlight for a long time. Please park it in a shady and cool place, especially in summer.
- Do not place polyethylene, plastic products or wax items on leather trims, because these items may stick to the leather surface when the interior temperature increases greatly.
- If excessive moisture remains on the seat surface, leather will harden, shrink and deform.

■ Floor waterproofness

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.

If the electrical components under the vehicle floor come into contact with water, the electrical system may be damaged and the vehicle body may rust.

■ Cleaning the inside of the rear windshield

- Do not use glass cleaners to clean the rear windshield, otherwise the heating wires of the defroster of the rear windshield may be damaged. Wet the cloth with warm water and wipe gently in the direction parallel to the heating wire.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heating wires.

Maintenance instructions

In order to ensure the safety and economy of driving, daily maintenance and periodic maintenance are very important. FAW recommends that you take the following maintenance measures:

■ Periodic maintenance

- Please carry out regular maintenance according to the maintenance schedule.

The maintenance interval can be determined according to the mileage or time given in the schedule, whichever comes first.

For maintenance items that have exceeded the last interval, it is also recommended that you carry out maintenance at the same interval.

- Where can I have my car maintained?

It is most ideal to go to an FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer for maintenance.

FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealers have advanced maintenance tools, equipments and genuine accessories required for maintenance and service of your vehicle, and all after-sales service personnels have received professional management and technical trainings to ensure that the maintenance and repair work is completed quickly and efficiently and that your vehicle always remains a good technical performance.

FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealers have invested a large amount of money in special tools and maintenance equipments. This helps to provide you with better service at a lower cost.

FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealers adhere to the concept of efficient, reasonable and value-added service and will do our best to carry out all kinds of vehicle maintenance work.

Rubber hoses (for cooling and heating system, braking system and fuel system) shall be inspected by professionals in strict accordance with the maintenance schedule.

Rubber hoses may deteriorate over time, causing expansion, wear, or cracking. Therefore, if there are any signs of deterioration or damage of the hoses, please contact an FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer for replacement immediately.

■ Do-it-yourself maintenance instructions

Can I maintain my vehicle by myself?

If you have rich basic knowledge of vehicle construction, inspection and maintenance and have some basic tools, you can carry out daily inspection and maintenance by yourself. A brief description of how to perform do-it-yourself maintenance is given in this section.

It should be reminded that some maintenance work needs special maintenance equipments and professional skills, so it is best to be done by qualified technicians. Even if you are an experienced professional technician, we still suggest that you go to an FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer for standard maintenance because they will record the maintenance information of your car and help you apply for warranty service.

■ Does your vehicle need repair

Watch out for changes in vehicle performance and sounds, as well as other visual warnings that indicate that the vehicle needs maintenance. Here are some important signs:

- The engine is misfiring, unstable or banging.
- Power reduces obviously.
- The engine has abnormal noises.
- There is liquid leaking at the bottom of the vehicle. (dripping water after air conditioning and from drain holes after exhaust pipe cooling are normal phenomena)
- Changes in exhaust sound. (this indicates that there may be a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. In this case, windows must be opened and the exhaust system must be checked immediately)
- Tires become flat, the noise of the tire is too high when turning, and the tire wear is uneven.
- When driving straight on a flat road surface, the vehicle pulls to one side.
- There is abnormal noise related to suspension components.
- Brake fails; the brake pedal feels soft when it is depressed; the pedal almost touches the floor and the vehicle pulls to one side when braking.
- The engine coolant temperature remains high.

If you find any of the above signs, please contact an FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible because your vehicle may need to be adjusted or repaired.



CAUTIONS

■ If the vehicle is not properly maintained

It may cause serious damage to the vehicle and serious injuries or even death.

■ Precautions for handling batteries

Battery binding posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, which can cause brain damage. Always wash your hands after operation.

■ Old engine oil

According to research, chemicals contained in old engine oil may cause cancer in laboratory animals. Please avoid repeated contact for a long time. To protect your skin, be sure to wash it thoroughly with soap and water.

Do-it-yourself maintenance precautions

You can perform maintenance by yourself. Please be sure to follow the correct procedures below.

Items	Components and tools
Battery condition (→ P.331)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Warm water • Baking soda • Grease • Common wrench (for clamping terminal bolts)
Engine coolant level (→ P.326)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Super Long Life Coolant for vehicle • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (→ P.323)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FAW Genuine engine oil or equivalent • Rag or paper towel, funnel (used only for adding oil)
Brake fluid level (→ P.328)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • FAW Genuine brake fluid • Rag or paper towel, funnel (used only for adding brake fluid)
Fuses (→ P.344)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fuse with the same rated amperage as the original
Radiator, condenser and intercooler/main low temperature radiator (→ P.327)	—
Tire pressure (→ P.337)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→ P.330)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Washer fluid with antifreeze (Used in winter) • Funnel

**CAUTIONS**

There are a number of mechanical devices in the engine compartment that may suddenly turn, become hot, or start being energized. To avoid serious personal injury, please be aware of the following.

■ **When handling components in the engine compartment**

- When working under the hood, be sure to remove all your jewellery (especially ring, bracelet, watch and necklace) and bow tie, scarf and the similar loose clothing before you approach the engine or the electric fan that may operate at any time if the engine has to be run.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and other components immediately after driving, while they are hot. The engine oil and other fluids are also hot.
- Before opening the hood, shut down the engine, apply the electric parking brake, shift the selector lever in P position, turn off the engine switch and carry the key with you and let the engine cool down.
- Keep your hands, clothing, and tools away from the rotating fan and the engine drive belts.
- Do not leave any items in the engine compartment.

If the inspection or maintenance in the engine compartment finishes, do not leave any tools, cloth, or other items in it. Doing so may cause damage to the engine or catch fire, resulting in accidents.

- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose open flames to the fuel or the battery.
- Be especially careful when handling the battery. The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic sulphuric acid.
- Be careful when handling the brake fluid. Failure to do so may cause the brake fluid to injure your hands or eyes and to damage the painted surface. If you get the brake fluid on your hands or in your eyes, flush your eyes or skin with large quantities of clean water. If you still feel unwell after that, call a physician immediately.

■ **When near the electric fan or radiator grille**

Make sure the engine switch is in OFF position. When the engine switch is in the RUN position, the electric fan may run automatically if the air conditioner is turned on or the coolant temperature is high.

■ **Safety goggles**

Wear safety goggles to prevent objects from flying in your eyes or fluids from splashing in your eyes.

**NOTICES**

■ **If the air filter has been removed**

If the vehicle is driven with the air cleaner removed, dirt in the air may cause excessive engine wear. Meanwhile, back fire may also cause the engine compartment to catch fire.

■ **If the brake fluid level is too low or too high**

When the brake friction plates are worn or the fluid level in the brake fluid tank is high, the brake fluid level may drop slightly, and this is normal. If brake fluid needs to be frequently added to the brake fluid tank, it indicates that there may be a serious problem. Please contact your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to have your vehicle checked.

The particulate filter can filter out particulate matter in the exhaust gas. And under normal driving conditions (continuous driving conditions with a vehicle speed of 30km/h or more), the particulate filter can clean by itself.

Long time of running at low speed, repeated low-temperature cold start, or running at idle speed may cause the accumulation of carbon deposits in the particulate filter. When the accumulation of carbon deposits is high, the engine control system will automatically clean the carbon deposits, and the instrument makes prompts by indicator light and text. If due to vehicle driving conditions, the carbon deposits cannot be effectively cleaned, the instrument will give different levels of alarms according to the carbon deposits of the particulate filter.

- When the GPF cleaning warning light  (green) in the combination instrument lights up, and the multi-function display prompts "Particulate Filter Cleaning Mode", it means that the particulate filter has a high carbon deposit. The engine control system will control the vehicle to clean the particulate filter automatically to ensure vehicle performance. At this time, there may be slight differences in driving experience and fuel consumption, which is normal. When the indicator light goes out, it means that the vehicle has completed the regeneration of the particle filter and will be in the best condition.
- When the GPF cleaning warning light  (green) in the combination instrument lights up, and the multi-function display prompts "The particle filter needs to be cleaned by driving vehicle, see the manual", it means that the particulate filter has a high carbon deposit, although the engine control system will control the vehicle to clean the particulate filter automatically. However, in order to clean the carbon deposits as soon as possible, it is necessary to clean by driving according to specific working conditions. At this time, after the engine is warmed up (the water temperature reaches 90 degrees), follow the steps below:

STEP 1 Accelerate the vehicle to a speed higher than 80km/h;

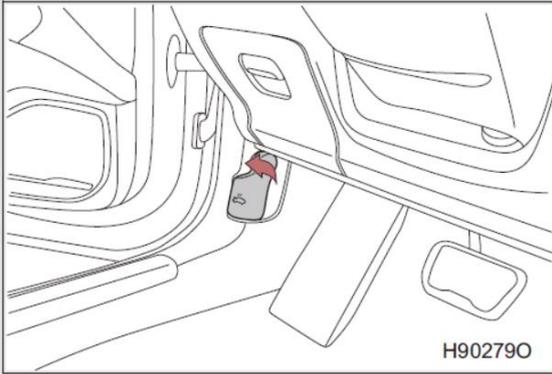
STEP 2 Release the accelerator pedal to allow the vehicle to coast for a period of time (for example, coast to a speed that allow the vehicle to automatically downshift);

STEP 3 Repeat the above operation until the malfunction indicator light goes out.

This process may take a long time (for example, repeated driving for one hour) depending on the conditions of the vehicle.

- When the GPF fault warning light  (yellow) in the combination instrument lights up and the multi-function display prompts "Please go to the 4s shop to clean the particle filter", it means that the particle filter has not been effectively cleaned by driving vehicle. You must contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately to handle it.
- When the GPF fault warning lamp  (yellow) and engine control system fault warning lamp  (yellow) in the combination instrument light up, and the multi-function display screen prompts "please check and repair the particulate filter", it means that the carbon accumulation in the particulate filter has seriously exceeded the standard. You must contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately to handle it.

Unlock inside to open the engine hood.



Pull opening handle of the engine hood for 2 times to open the hood.



CAUTIONS

■ **Inspection before driving**

Check and make sure that the hood is completely closed and locked.

If the hood is not properly locked, it may open when the vehicle is moving and cause an accident, resulting in serious personal injury.

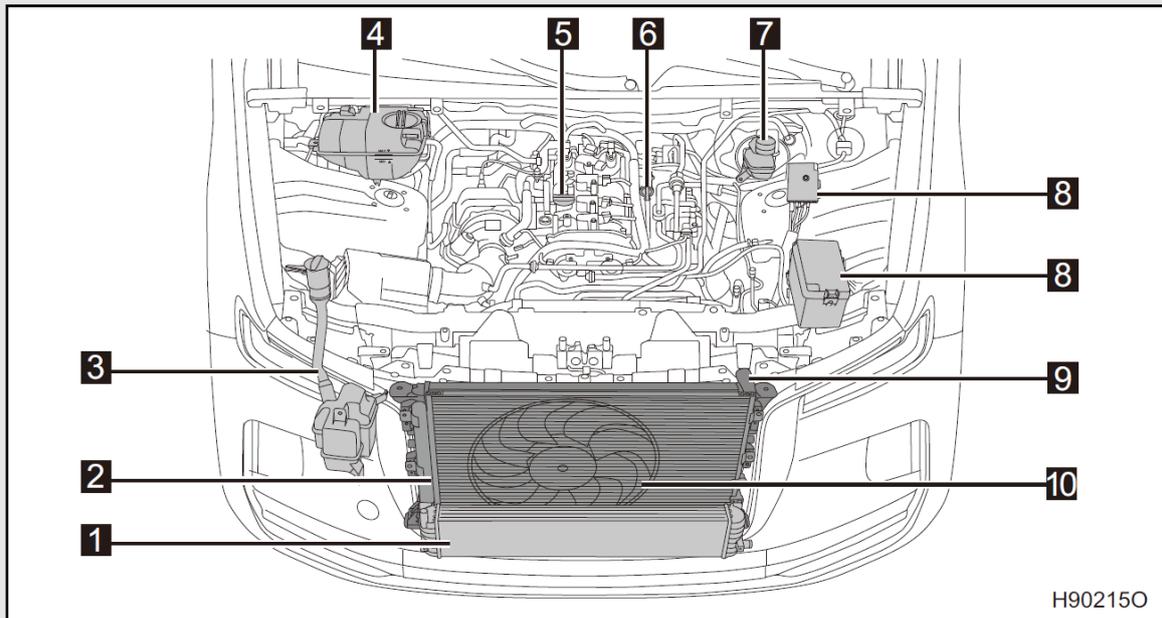


NOTICES

■ **When closing the engine hood**

- Do not apply an excessive force to the hood. Doing so may cause damage to the hood.
- Make sure that no tools and other objects are left in the engine compartment before closing the hood.

Due to different vehicle configurations, the pictures are only examples.



- 1** Intercooler
- 3** Washer fluid tank
- 5** Oil filler cap
- 7** Brake fluid tank
- 9** Radiator

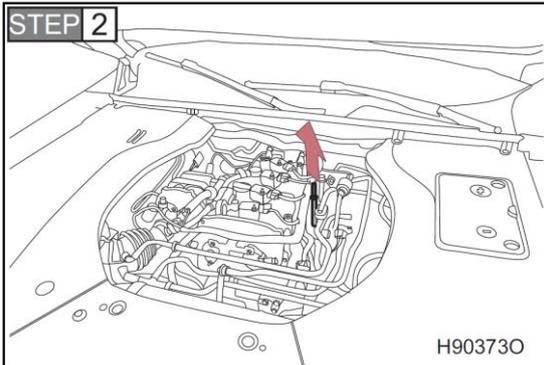
- 2** Condenser
- 4** Coolant reservoir
- 6** Dipstick
- 8** Fuse box
- 10** Cooling fan

Engine oil

Check the oil level when the engine reaches operating temperature and the engine switch is turned off.

■ Check the engine oil

STEP 1 Park the vehicle on the level ground. Wait for 5 minutes or more after turning off the engine. This will allow the oil to flow back to the bottom of the engine.

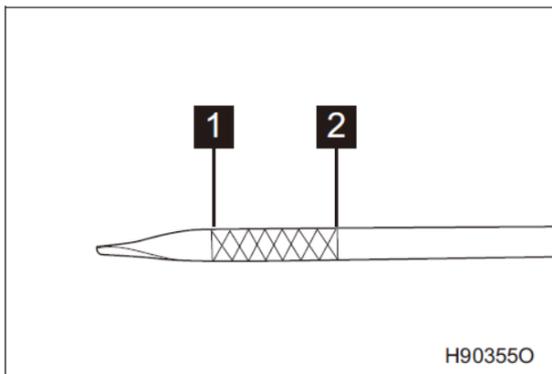


Put a clean rag under the end of the dipstick, then pull out the dipstick.

STEP 3 Clean the oil dipstick.

STEP 4 Insert the dipstick all the way back in its tube.

STEP 5 Put a clean rag under the end of the dipstick, then pull out the dipstick and check the oil level.



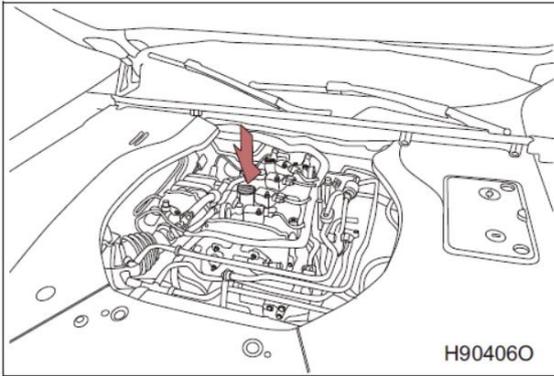
1 Low

2 Full

The oil level must be between the low and full marks. Actions must be taken timely to deal with the excessive or insufficient oil.

STEP 6 Wipe the dipstick, and then insert it all the way back in its tube.

■ Filling the oil



Add oil of the same grade as the existing oil in the engine if the level is at or below the low mark.

Be sure to determine the oil grade and prepare the required items before adding oil.

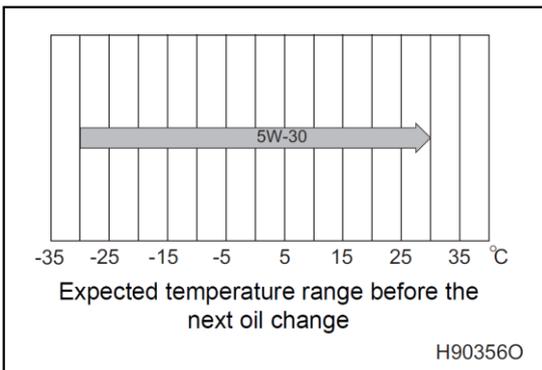
STEP 1 Unscrew the oil filler cap counterclockwise and remove it.

STEP 2 Fill the oil slowly and check the oil dipstick.

STEP 3 Install the oil filler cap and turn it clockwise until it is tightened.

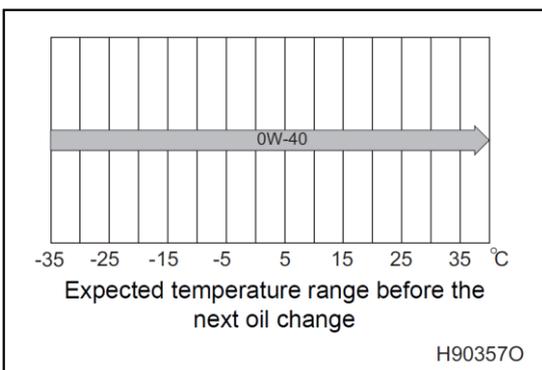
■ Recommended oil grade

► CA4GC20TD-31 engine



FAW turbocharged engine special oil 5W-30

► CA6GV25TD, CA6GV30TD-03 engine



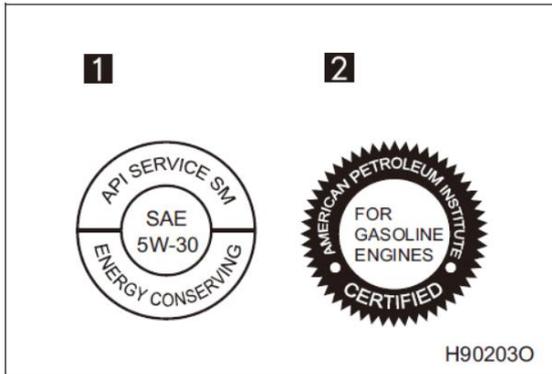
FAW turbocharged engine special oil 0W-40

Do not use high-viscosity engine oil at extremely low temperature. Doing so may cause the engine difficult to start. It is recommended to use the recommended engine oil for your vehicle.

For more details, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

■ How to read the oil container label

Some oil containers are marked with one or two API labels for reference when selecting the correct oil.



1 API Service label

Top: The API (American Petroleum Institute) oil quality label, such as SM.

Middle: SAE viscosity, such as SAE 5W-30

Bottom: Energy-Conserving tells you that the oil is of fuel-saving property.

2 ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification mark

■ Oil consumption

A certain amount of engine oil is consumed during driving. Engine oil consumption may increase if one of the following conditions occurs. Engine oil may need to be added during oil service intervals.

- When a new engine runs, such as the engine in a newly-purchased vehicle or the engine after replacement.
- If inferior oil or oil with poor viscosity is used.
- When the engine runs at high speeds or under heavy load, or when frequent acceleration or deceleration occurs when the vehicle moving.
- When the engine idles for a prolonged time, or when the vehicle frequently travels through traffic congested roads.



CAUTIONS

■ Precautions for disposal of used oil

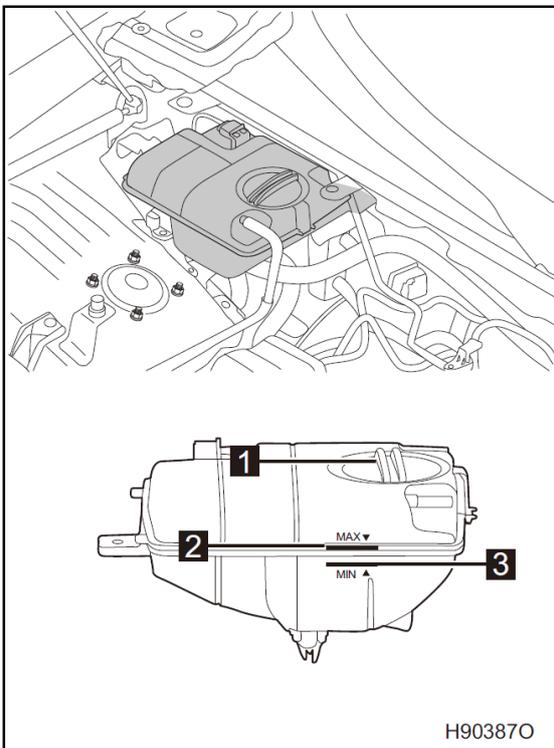
- The used oil contains potentially hazardous substances which may cause diseases such as dermatitis and skin cancer. Be sure to avoid contact with the used oil for a prolonged time or frequently. If you get the oil on your skin, flush the skin thoroughly with soap and clean water.
- Be sure to dispose of the used oil and filter in a safe and environmentally compliant manner. Do not discard the used oil and filter in a trash bin or sewer, or dump it on the ground. For details on oil recovery or disposal, please consult your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.
- Keep the used oil away from the children.

**NOTICES**

- **Prevent severe damage to the engine.**
Regularly check the oil level.
- **Precautions for replacing the oil**
 - Take care not to spill oil on the vehicle parts.
 - Do not overfill the tank, the engine could otherwise be damaged.
 - Whenever adding oil, check the oil level on the dipstick.
 - Make sure that the filler cap is tightened properly.

Engine coolant

If the coolant level in the coolant reservoir is between the "MAX" (high) and "MIN" (low) marks, it is normal.



1 Reservoir cap

2 "MAX" (High)

3 "MIN" (Low)

If the level is below the "MIN" mark, add coolant to the normal level.

H903870

■ **If the level drops shortly after the coolant is replenished**

Check the radiator, reservoir and coolant pipe and other component visually for leakage.

If no leakage is detected, please contact your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to check the cooling system.

■ **Coolant selection**

Use the Super Long Life Coolant for the whole year.

For more details about engine coolant, please contact FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.



CAUTIONS

■ **When the engine is hot**

- Do not add coolant until the engine cools down. The hot engine can be very dangerous, and may scald you.
- Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap.

There may be pressure inside the cooling system. Removing the coolant reservoir cap can cause the hot coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you or resulting in other injuries.



NOTICES

■ **When adding engine coolant**

Add the coolant specified by China FAW to ensure proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling performance.

Please read the instructions on the coolant label.

■ **If the coolant accidentally spills out**

Be sure to flush the spilled coolant with clean water to prevent damage to the components or the vehicle paint.

Radiator, condenser and intercooler

Check the radiator, condenser and intercooler, and remove any foreign objects from them.

If the radiator, condenser or intercooler is particularly dirty or abnormal, please contact your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to have your vehicle checked.



CAUTIONS

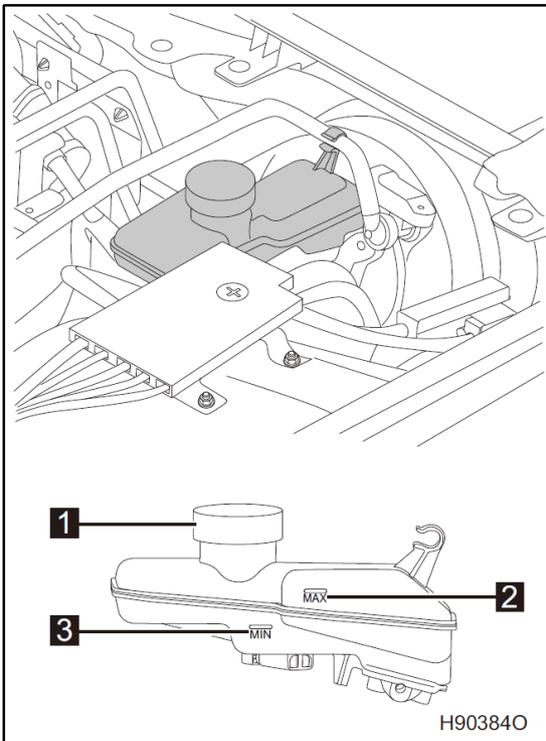
■ **When the engine is hot**

Do not touch the radiator, condenser or intercooler. Doing so may scald you.

Turbocharged engine*

- Do not check, remove or replace the turbocharger until the engine stops and the turbocharger cools down.
- Be sure to prevent any oil droplets from dropping on the hot surface of the turbocharger. Failure to do so may cause a fire.
- Do not cool the turbocharger by splashing water on its hot surface. Doing so may cause damage to the turbocharger.
- If the turbocharged engine is started, it is recommended to idle it for 3 minutes to ensure the turbocharger to be lubricated well.

Brake fluid



1 Brake fluid tank cap

2 "MAX" (High)

3 "MIN" (Low)

If the level is below the "MIN" mark, add brake fluid to the normal level.

**CAUTIONS****■ Precautions while adding brake fluid**

- The sprayed brake fluid is very dangerous. If the brake fluid gets into your eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water and seek medical attention as soon as possible.
- Do not have the brake fluid sprayed on the body or electrical parts of the engine compartment, otherwise it may cause personal injury or cause a fire.

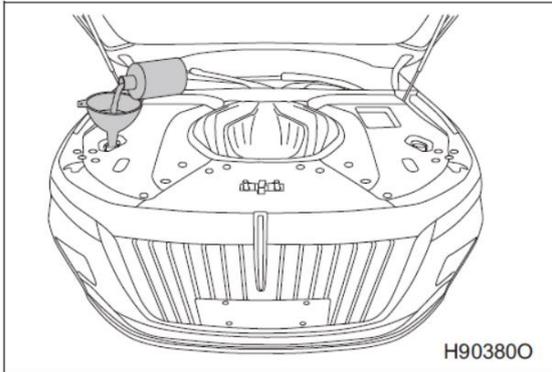
■ When the brake fluid level is too low

- It is very dangerous when the brake fluid level is too low. Low fluid level indicates wear of brake linings or brake system leakage. The brake may fail, causing a serious accident. If you find that the fluid level is too low, check the brake.
- If the fluid level is too low, add brake fluid until the fluid level rises to the "MAX" mark. Before adding brake fluid, thoroughly clean the area around the tank cap.

**NOTICES**

- Brake fluid can damage painted surfaces. If you accidentally spray the fluid on the surface, wipe it off immediately.
- The use of non-designated brake fluid will damage the system. The mixed use of different brake fluids can also cause damage to the system.
- If the brake fluid needs to be added or replaced, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

Washer fluid



If any washer fails to run or the alarm message appears on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument, this indicates that the washer fluid tank may become empty. Add washer fluid in time.

CAUTIONS

■ **When adding washer fluid**

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or running. Otherwise, if the washer fluid is splashed on the engine, a fire may be caused by the alcohol in the washer fluid.

NOTICES

■ **Do not use any liquid other than the washer fluid**

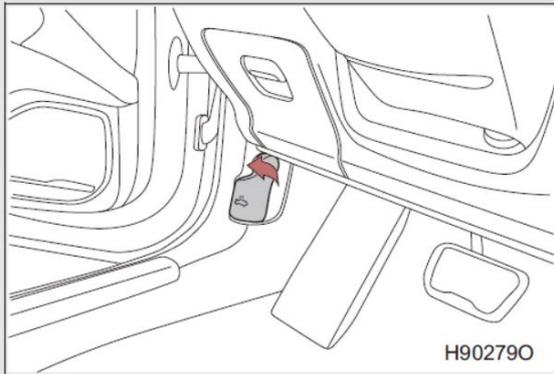
Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of the washer fluid. Doing so may cause sagging of the painted surface on the vehicle.

■ **Dilute the washer fluid**

If necessary, dilute the washer fluid with water.

Please refer to the freezing temperature on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

Open the maintenance cover on the trunk left side trim, where the battery is located.



Ensure that the battery terminals are not corroded, the connections are not loose, no external cracks exist, and the fixing clips are not loose.

- ❶ Positive terminal
- ❷ Negative terminal

■ Power management system

- When the battery power is low, the system will restrict some comfort functions in order to ensure the starting performance of the vehicle. At this time, it will not work according to the working state set by the user. When the power is restored to a safe range, the restricted comfort functions will automatically return to the state set by the user.
- The power management system can adjust the output voltage of the alternator in real time and obtain the status information of the battery and the 48V system, and control the optimal charging voltage. It can appropriately reduce the fuel consumption while improving the vehicle power performance.

■ During installation

- When connecting the battery, prevent the terminal cable from being reversely connected. Otherwise, the electrical equipment in the vehicle may be damaged.
- Prevent the positive and negative terminals from being contacted during the storage, handling and installation of the battery. For example, the metal wrench for connecting the cables can easily touch the positive and negative terminals at the same time, and this may cause short-circuit of the battery, resulting in direct failure.
- Since there is a vent hole on the battery, to prevent leakage, do not place the battery sideways or upside down during storage, handling or installation.
- When replacing the battery, be sure to replace the battery with the same model as the original.
- When replacing the battery, if the terminal clamp becomes oxidized or dirty, be sure to remove the oxidized layer or dirt with sandpaper or the similar, and then apply Vaseline to the clamp and battery terminal before connecting.
- For vehicles equipped with super-capacitor, when the battery is removed, confirm that the super-capacitor has sufficient power before installing a new battery.
- When installing, connect the positive terminal before the negative terminal. When disassembling, remove the negative terminal before the positive terminal to avoid the chance of short circuit.

■ Before charging

Pay attention to the following matters before charging:

- If the in-vehicle battery is to be charged, be sure to turn off the engine switch and disconnect the grounding wire.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is turned off when connecting/disconnecting the charger cable to/from the battery.

■ **When in use**

- Prevent the vent hole on the battery from clogging. Take care to clean the vent hole.
- Charge the battery if one of the following conditions occurs:
 - The vehicle is used often for a short time and started frequently.
 - The vehicle often travels on traffic congested roads.
 - There are too many electrical consumers for the vehicle.
 - The vehicle travels more at night.
 - The vehicle has not been used for a long time.
 - The lights stay on after parking.
 - The doors are not closed fully when parking.
 - With the engine shut down, electrical consumers such as A/C, audio system and lights keep operating for a long time.
- If the vehicle has been stored for over 30 days, to maintain the battery's normal state of charge, do the following:
 - Disconnect the negative grounding wire to prevent discharge of the battery due to additional current leakage.
 - Charge the battery once every 20-45 days.
 - Before the normal use of the vehicle, connect the vehicle to the battery and let it sit for a while to ensure that the idle start/stop function is used normally.

**CAUTIONS****■ Chemicals in the battery**

The battery has toxic corrosive sulphuric acid and may lead to combustible and explosive hydrogen. To reduce the chance of serious personal injury, observe the following requirements when handling the battery or working near it:

- Do not touch the battery terminals with any tool to avoid sparks.
- Do not smoke or use any open fire near the battery.
- Avoid the electrolyte to splashed to eyes, skin, or clothes.
- Be sure to avoid inhaling or swallowing electrolyte.
- Safety goggles shall be worn in the event of working near the battery.
- Keep the battery away from children.

■ Safe place for charging battery

Charge the battery in an open place. Do not charge the battery in a poorly ventilated garage or in an enclosed room.

■ Emergency measures for handling electrolyte

- If you get electrolyte accidentally into your eyes

Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes. Immediately call a physician. If possible, continue cleaning your eyes with a water-soaked sponge or cloth on the way to a hospital.

- If you get electrolyte on the skin

Flush the skin thoroughly with large quantities of water. If you feel burning and painful, immediately call a physician.

- If you get electrolyte on the clothes

It may infiltrate the clothing and stick to the skin. Take off the contaminated clothing immediately and take the above measures if necessary.

- If you swallow electrolyte accidentally

Drink large quantities of water or milk and then take magnesium oxide milk, chopped raw eggs or vegetable oil, and immediately call a physician.

■ Do not disconnect the negative (-) terminal on the body side

The disconnected negative (-) terminal may touch the positive (+) terminal, causing a short circuit and serious personal injury or even death.

■ When the 48V system is low

During driving, the vehicle will automatically charge the 48V system. It is strictly forbidden to use various chargers to charge the 48V battery.

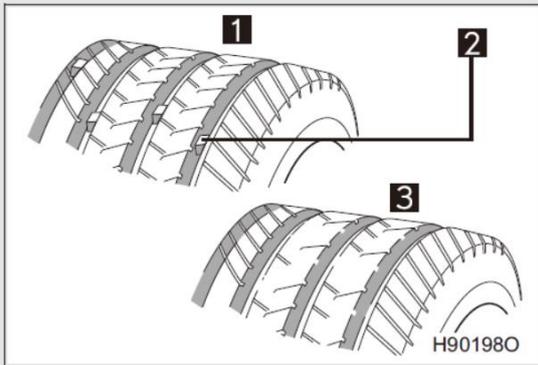
**NOTICES****■ Precautions during charging the battery**

Do not charge the battery when the engine is running. Always switch off all accessories.

Tire

According to the wear condition of the tire tread, replace the tire or rotate the tires.

■ Check tires



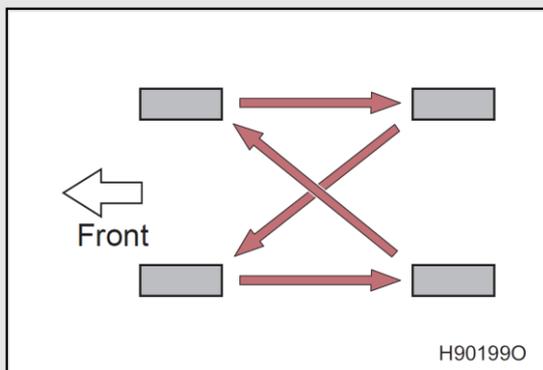
1 New tread

2 Tread wear indicators

3 Worn tread

If it is worn to the tread wear indicators, replace the tire (picture is only schematic).

■ Tire rotation



Tires should be rotated in the order shown in the figure.

To help increase tire life and distribute wear more evenly, you should have the tires rotated every 8,000 ~ 10,000 km.

HINT:

1. The spare tire is a non-full-sized spare tire, which cannot be used for tire rotation but temporary use.
2. The spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure monitoring sensor.
3. If tire rotation finishes, configure the tire pressure monitoring system. Contact your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer if necessary.

■ Protective measures for wheel malfunction

- When passing through the curb or similar barriers, the vehicle should drive slowly in the direction vertical to the barrier as far as possible.
- Be sure to prevent the tires from touching grease, oil and/or fuel.
- Regularly check the tire damage state (such as tire cutting, crack, bulge and other damages); clear the impurities embedded in the tire tread.

■ Tire storage instructions

- Make mark on the tire before disassembly, mark the tire rotation direction, and reset it according to the mark for installation, so as to maintain wheel rotation direction and dynamic balancing state unchanged.
- The removed wheel or tire should be placed at the cool and dry place, dark without sunlight at best.

■ Concealed damage

- It is difficult to detect damage to tires and rims. If abnormal vibration or pulling to one side is detected when the vehicle moving, it indicates that there is a trouble in a wheel. In this case, go to your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to have your wheel checked as soon as possible.

■ When to replace the tire

Replace the tire if one of the following conditions occurs:

- If there are cuts, fractures, deep cracks resulting in exposed ply, and/or bulges on the tire.
- If the tire is often underinflated or cannot be repaired due to other damage.

■ Tire life

Avoid using tires with age over 6 years as possible as you can. If necessary, drive prudently at low speed.

■ Driving on snowy roads

If the snow tire tread wears 4mm or more, the anti-slip performance of snow tires will be significantly reduced.



CAUTIONS

■ Precautions for checking or replacing tires

To avoid damage to the components of the drive train and affecting the handling performance of the vehicle, follow the following precautions:

- Do not mix and match the tires of different manufacturers, types, tread patterns or tread wear levels.
- Be sure to use the tires recommended by China FAW only.
- Do not mix and match tires in radial, bias belted or bias body cord or other structures.
- Do not mix and match summer, seasonal and winter tires on your vehicle.
- Do not use the used tires by other vehicles.



NOTICES

■ Driving on rugged roads

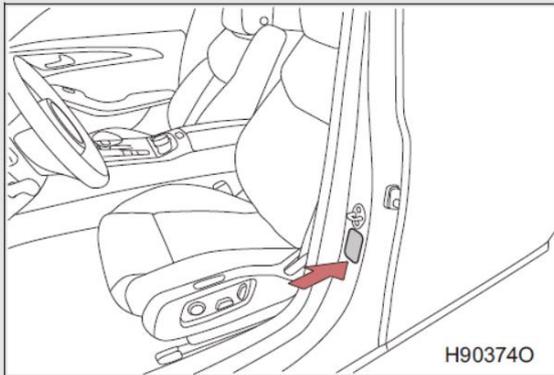
Exercise extreme caution when you need to drive on soft or pitted roads.

Such roads can cause the tires to bulge due to impact, eventually causing damage to the tires.

■ If the tire pressure becomes lower during driving

Do not continue driving any longer. Doing so may cause full damage to the tires and/or wheels.

Be sure to maintain proper pressure in the tires. Check the tire pressure once per month at least.



A tire pressure label is affixed below the B-pillar lock pin on the driver's side.

■ **Consequences of incorrect tire pressure**

If the tire pressure is too low:

- Increased rolling resistance and fuel consumption.
- Reduced vehicle handling control and stability.
- Damage and high temperatures, resulting in a flat tire. If the tire is seriously underinflated, it may cause the tire to separate from the rim, resulting in reduced safety.
- Uneven wear on both sides of the tire.

If tire pressure is too high:

- Reduced vehicle comfort.
- Excessive wear in the middle of the tire.
- Overinflated tire is prone to internal cracking and puncture when the tire is impacted.

■ **Guide for checking tire pressure**

Check tire pressure timely even if your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system that can promptly alert you of tire pressure conditions.

Follow the following precautions for checking tire pressure:

- Check the pressure in the tires when they are cold.

If the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours, or has traveled no more than 1.5 km, check the pressure in the tires for accurate tire pressure readings.

- Be sure to use a tire pressure gauge.

The appearance of the tire may sometimes be misleading. In addition, even if it is slightly underinflated, the tire may reduce running smoothness and handling stability.

- Do not deflate or depressurize the tires after driving. Increased tire pressure is normal after driving.
- Do not overload the vehicle.

The weight of the occupants and luggage should be evenly distributed to balance the vehicle.



CAUTIONS

■ **Proper inflation is the key to protect the tires**

Be sure to maintain proper tire pressure. Failure to do so may cause one of the following conditions:

- Excessive wear
- Unevenly worn
- Poor handling
- Tire bursting due to overheating
- Poor sealing of tire bead
- Deformation of wheel or disengagement of tire from wheel
- Tires are more easily damaged due to poor road conditions.

■ **Do not drive the vehicle under incorrect tire pressure.**

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle under incorrect tire pressure. Incorrect tire pressure may affect handling stability

and cause accidents. Check the pressure in the normal tires, but also check the pressure in the spare tire.



NOTICES

■ **Precautions for checking and adjusting tire pressure**

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve cap back.

Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture may enter the valve and the tire may leak air, resulting in an accident.

If the valve cap is lost, install a new one as soon as possible.

If the rim is bent, cracked or severely corroded, replace it.

Failure to do so may cause the tire to separate from the rim or cause loss of control of the vehicle.

■ Selection to wheel

When replacing a wheel, take care to ensure that the replacement wheel has the same load carrying capacity, diameter, rim width and offset as the original wheel.

Contact FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for replacement wheels.

The following wheels are not recommended by China FAW:

- Wheels of different size or type.
- Old wheel.
- Bent wheels that have been straightened.

■ Precautions for aluminum wheels

- Be sure to use the special wheel nuts and wrench for this aluminum wheel.
- When rotating, repairing or replacing the wheel, check and confirm whether the wheel nuts are tightened.
- When tire chains are used, be sure to prevent the chains from damaging the aluminum rims.
- To balance the wheel, use China-FAW-specified counterweights or the equivalent only.



CAUTIONS

■ **When replacing the wheel**

Make sure the wheels are the correct size for your vehicle. Failure to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle.

■ **When installing the wheel nuts**

- Tighten the wheel nuts until the washers come into contact with the wheel rim nuts slightly.
- Never apply oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.

Oil and grease may make the wheel nuts over-tightened, resulting in damage to the bolts or spoke wheels. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident that may lead to serious injury or even death. Remove all oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.

■ **Do not use any defective wheel**

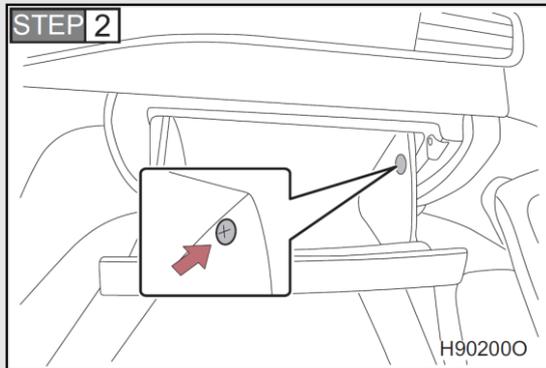
Do not use cracked or deformed wheels.

Doing so may cause tire deflation while the vehicle moving, resulting in an accident.

Replace the A/C filter regularly to maintain air conditioning performance.

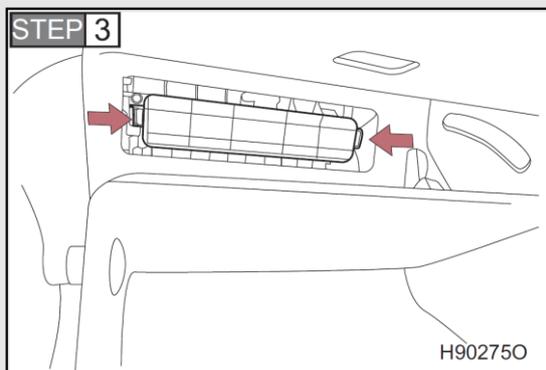
- Replace the A/C filter

STEP 1 Turn the engine switch off.

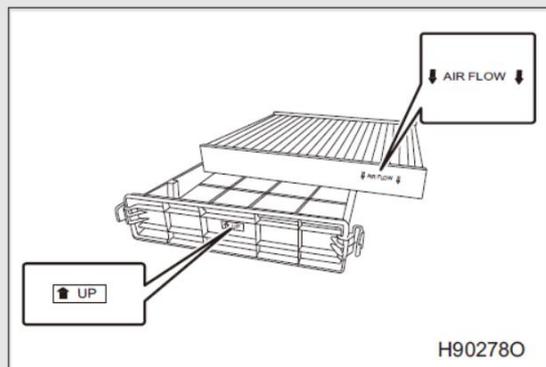


Open the glove box.

Remove the plastic fixing bolts from the left and right sides of the glove box, disengage the stopper, and turn the glove box down to the position where the filter can be taken out.



Remove the A/C filter housing.



Remove the filter from the filter housing and replace it with a new one.

When installing, pay attention to the installation direction arrow on the filter and the filter housing.

- **Intervals of replacement of A/C filter**

The replacement interval may be shortened in dusty or heavy traffic areas.

- **If the air flow at the vent is significantly weakened**

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter, and replace it if necessary.

- **A/C filter**

If the filter needs to be cleaned or replaced, please contact FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

**NOTICES**

- **When using air conditioning system**

Make sure the filter is installed.

Using an A/C system without filter may cause damage to the system.

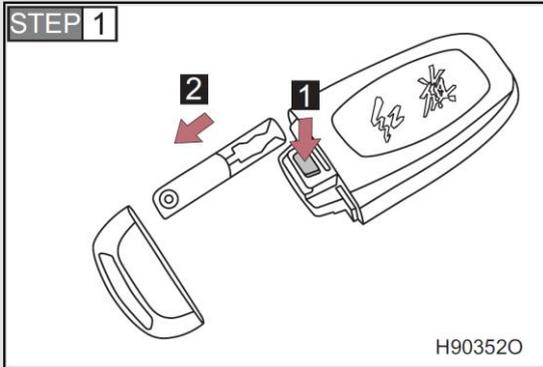
- **When removing the filter housing**

Do not replace the A/C filter while the blower is running. Doing so may cause personal injury.

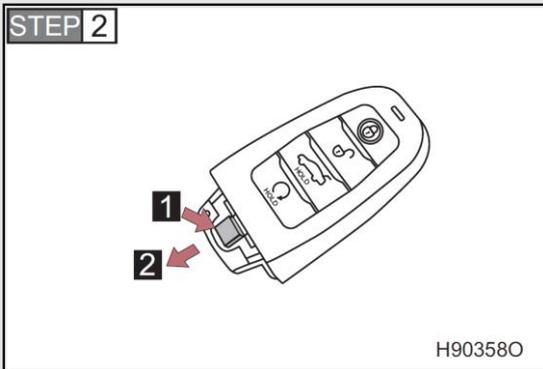
Replacing smart key battery

If the smart key battery is depleted, replace with a new one.

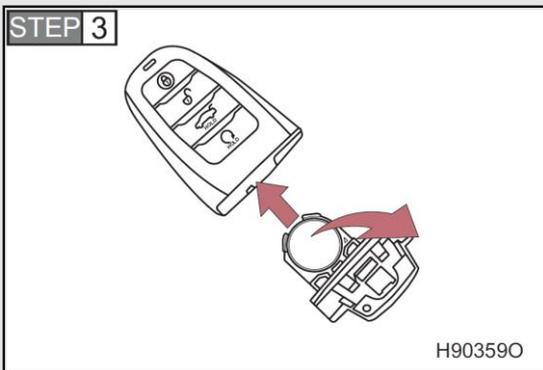
- The following items are needed:
 - Lithium battery
- Replace the battery



- 1** Press the unlock button and disengage the key end cover.
- 2** Take out the mechanical key.



- 1** Press and hold the button there.
- 2** Pull out the cell compartment.



- 1** Remove the used battery.
Insert a new battery with its positive pole + facing down.
- 2** Install the cell compartment back into the smart key.

- **If the smart key battery is depleted, the following conditions will occur:**
 - Wireless remote control fails.
 - Effective acting range becomes smaller.
 - Passive entry function fails.
 - Passive start function fails.
- **Use the CR2032 lithium battery.**
 - It is recommended to use the same or equivalent product recommended by your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for replacement.
 - Dispose of the used battery according to the local regulations.

**CAUTIONS**

- **Used battery and other parts**

Keep them away from the children.

These parts are small. However, if it is swallowed by a child inadvertently, it may cause suffocation.

**NOTICES**

- **To ensure the remote control key operates properly if the battery is replaced**

To avoid accidents, the following precautions shall be observed.

 - When operating, both hands shall be dry. Otherwise, the battery may rust.
 - Do not touch or move any other parts inside the remote key.
 - Do not bend the battery terminal.

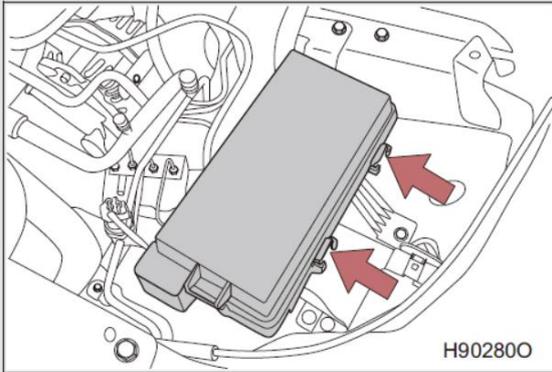
Checking and replacing the fuse

If any electrical component in your vehicle stops working, a fuse may have been blown. At this time, check and replace the fuse if necessary.

STEP 1 Turn the engine switch off.

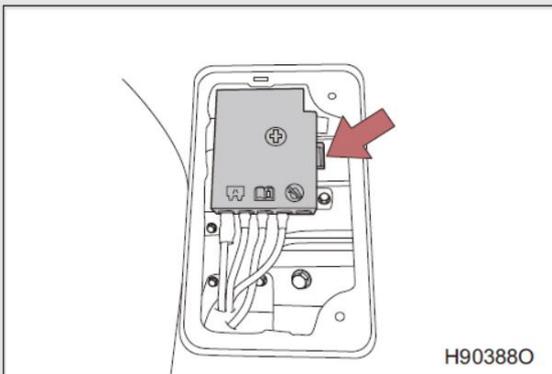
STEP 2 The fuses are located in the following positions. Follow the instructions below to check the fuses.

■ Engine compartment (type A)



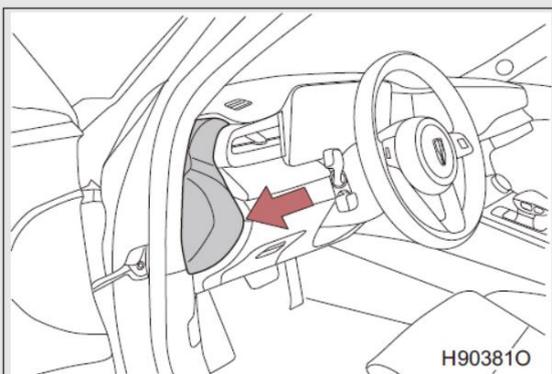
Press the tabs on both sides and open the fuse box lid.

■ Engine compartment (type B)



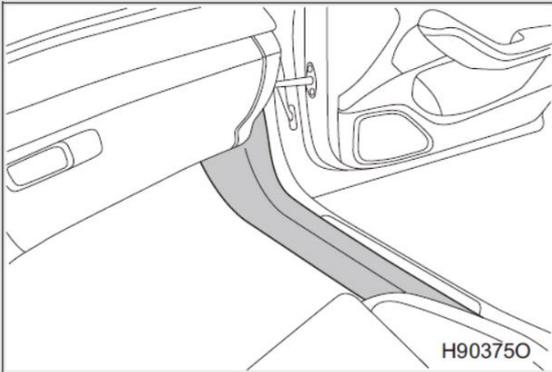
Press the tabs on both sides and open the fuse box lid.

■ Driver side dashboard



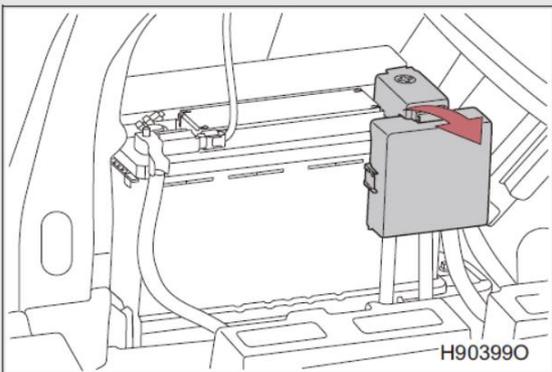
Remove the left dashboard cover plate.

■ Front right doorsill trim board



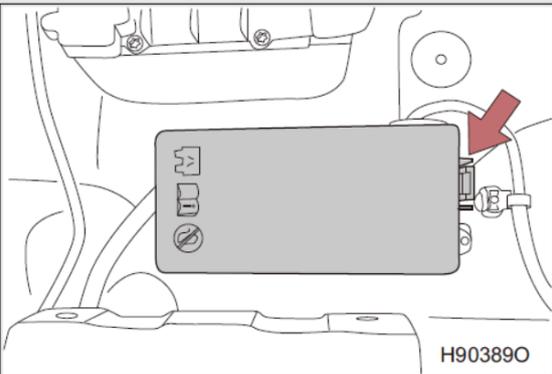
Remove the front right doorsill trim board. When replacing the fuse here, it is recommended to contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for replacement.

■ Trunk(type A)



Open the maintenance cover on the trunk left side trim, and then open the box lid.

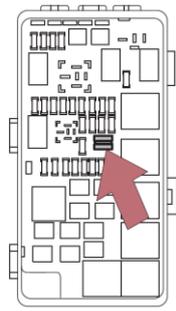
■ Trunk(type B)



Take out the tool box and open the lid.

STEP 3 If there is a trouble in the system, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for specific instructions on which fuses to check.

STEP 4



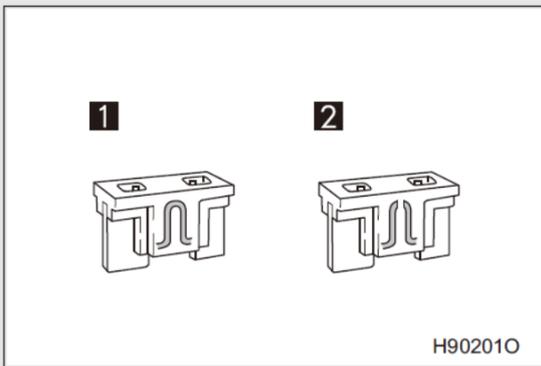
H903620

Remove the fuse with the fuse puller.

STEP 5

Check whether the fuse is blown.

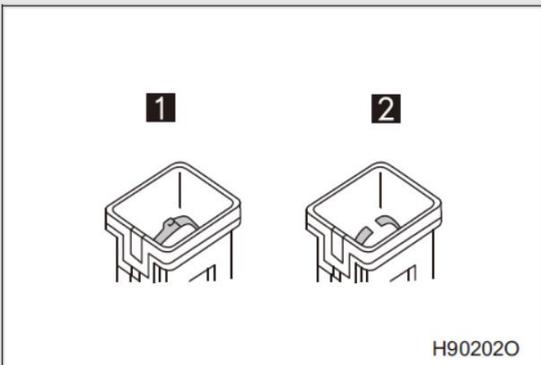
► Type A



H902010

- 1** Normal fuse
- 2** Blown fuse

► Type B



H902020

- 1** Normal fuse
- 2** Blown fuse

Replace the fuse with one of the China-FAW-approved rating amperage.

■ Fuse distribution and ampere ratings

For the fuse distribution and ampere ratings, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for confirmation.

■ After replacing the fuse

- If the electrical function still does not work properly after the fuse is replaced, further inspection may be required. Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.
- If the fuse after replacement is blown again, have FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer inspect the vehicle.

■ If the circuit is overloaded

The fuse will be blown, resulting in damage to the entire harness.



CAUTIONS

■ Preventing system failure and vehicle fire

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in serious damage / fire to the vehicle or personal injury.

- Do not use fuse higher or lower than the rated amperes.
- Be sure to use the same or equivalent product recommended by your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

Do not use a wire instead of fuse. Even temporary replacement is not allowed. Doing so may cause serious damage or even a fire.

- Do not modify the fuse or the fuse box.



NOTICES

■ Before replacing the fuse

Please contact FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to confirm the cause of and troubleshoot the electrical overload fault.

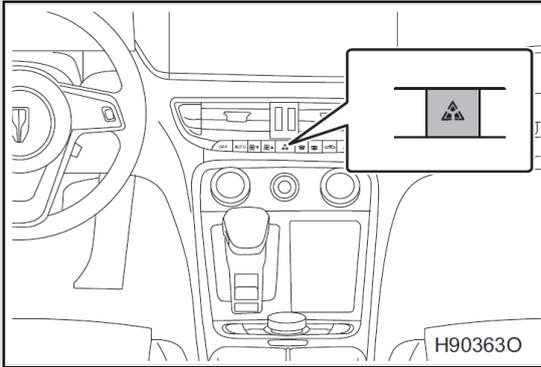
8-1. Essential information

Emergency flasher	350
SOS alarm.....	351

8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies

If the vehicle needs to be towed	352
If any abnormality is found on the vehicle	356
If a warning light illuminates or a warning buzzer sounds.....	357
In the case of a flat tyre.....	362
If the engine cannot be started	369
If the key is lost	370
If the smart key does not work properly	371
If the door can not be locked properly	373
If the battery or super capacitor is low*.....	375
If the vehicle is overheating	379
In case of the vehicle stuck.....	381
If you drive on water covered roads ...	382
In case of a punctured tyre	383
In case of an accident.....	384
Trunk lid emergency open	385

Use the emergency flashers and pull over if the vehicle malfunctions; place the warning triangle behind the vehicle while turning on the emergency flashers if the vehicle cannot move due to malfunctions. If necessary, wear a reflective vest.



By pressing the emergency flasher switch, all turn signal lamps will flash; by pressing it again, turn the emergency flashers off.



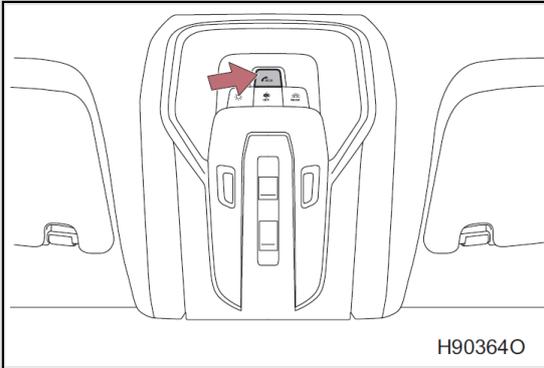
NOTICES

■ **Avoid low battery**

Do not leave the emergency flashers on longer than necessary when the engine is not operating.

SOS alarm

If you need to ask for help in an emergency, press and hold the SOS alarm switch for 3s, the emergency rescue phone will start to dial, and the SOS light will change from normally ON to flashing. After the back-end service receives your call, it will arrange rescue service for you properly.



The SOS alarm switch is located behind the front room lamp.



NOTICES

- Please use the SOS alarm switch when needed.

If the vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, FAW recommends having your vehicle towed using a flat bed truck by the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer or a commercial towing service.

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and observe all the legal regulations of your country/region.

Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer before towing.

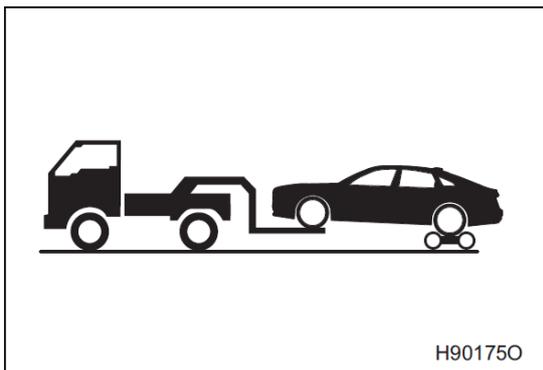
- The engine is operating but the vehicle will not move.
- The transmission makes an abnormal sound or vibration.

Do not use a sling-type truck for towing



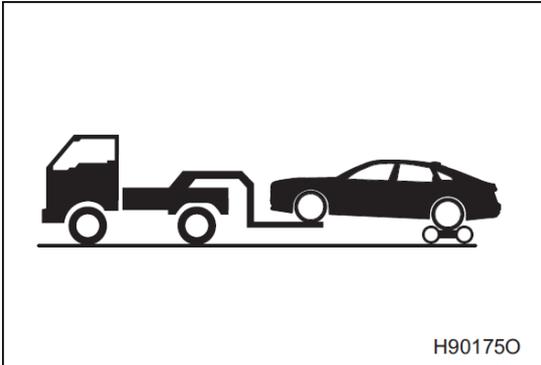
Do not use a sling-type truck for towing to prevent damage to the vehicle body.

Towing with a wheel-lifting truck from the front



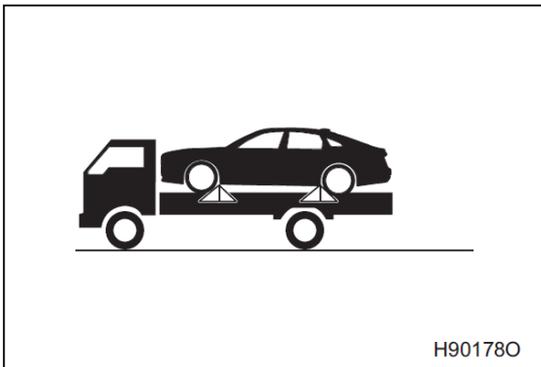
Place the towing trolley under the rear wheels and place the vehicle in the lifting mode.

Towing with a wheel-lifting truck from the rear



The front wheels and suspension of the vehicle must be in good condition and place the vehicle in the lifting mode.

Using a flat bed truck



Apply the electronic parking brake, place the vehicle in the lifting mode and turn off the engine switch.

Use holding blocks under the 4 wheels to avoid vehicle movement.

As shown in the figure, tie tyres on the base plate of the tow truck to secure the vehicle.

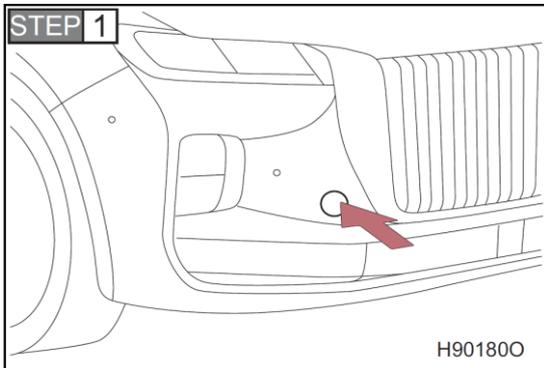
Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed by fastening a cable or chain to the emergency towing eyelets and shifting the shift lever to N. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds.

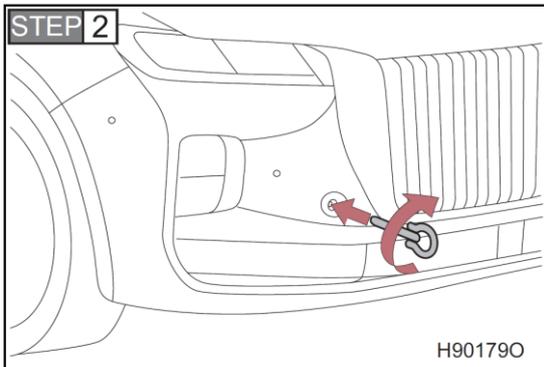
A driver must be in the vehicle to operate the steering wheel and brake pedal. The wheels, drive train, steering wheel and brakes must be in good condition.

Emergency towing procedures

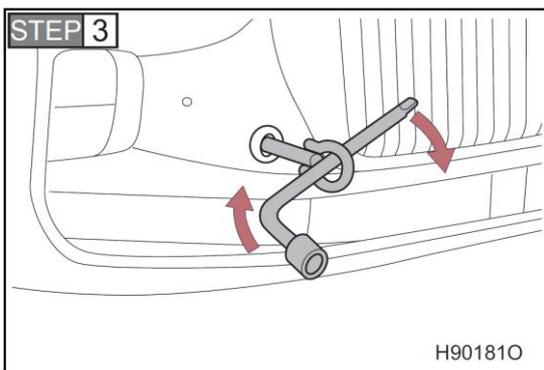
The following steps are for the towing from the front, and are the reference for the towing from the rear.



By pressing the left side of the towing eyelet lid, release the towing eyelet lid.



Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a tool.

STEP 4 Firmly secure the towing cable or chain onto the towing eyelet. Be careful not to damage the body.

STEP 5 Go to the vehicle being towed and start its engine. If the vehicle can not be started, turn the engine switch to "IG-ON" mode.

STEP 6 Release the electronic parking brake and shift the shift lever to N.

■ While towing

If the engine does not run, it means the brake and the steering wheel's power assistant system are not working, which makes steering and braking even more difficult.

■ Towing eyelet

Towing eyelet is stored in the vehicle tool box. (→ P.362)



CAUTIONS

Please observe the following notes. Otherwise it will lead to serious personal injuries, even death.

■ While towing vehicles

Make sure to transport vehicles when their driving wheels are elevated or all four wheels are off the ground.

If towing a vehicle when its driving wheels are on the ground, its power train system and related parts might be damaged.

■ While towing

- When towing with a rope, avoid any sudden start, or it would generate excessive tensile force to the towing eyelet or rope.

The towing eyelet or rope might be damaged, and the broken pieces might hit persons and lead to serious injuries.

- Do not turn the engine switch to the "IG-OFF" mode. The steering wheel might be locked and thus unavailable for any operation.

■ Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle

Make sure the towing eyelets securely installed.

If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing. It may cause an accident as a result.



NOTICES

■ When towing with a wheel-lifting truck, prevent any damage to the vehicle

When lifting the vehicle, make sure the landing end of the vehicle has enough ground clearance for towing. Otherwise, during towing, the vehicle might be damaged.

■ When towing with a sling-type truck, prevent any damage to the vehicle

Do not use any sling-type truck for towing no matter from the front or rear section of the vehicle.

■ When towing with a flat bed truck, prevent any damage to the vehicle

- Do not drive over the holding blocks, or it would damage the tyres.
- Do not tie the vehicle by the parts (e.g. the suspension) other than tyres.

If any abnormality is found on the vehicle

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible.

- Visible symptoms
 - Fluid leaks under the vehicle.
(Water dripping from the air conditioning after use and from drain hole on the exhaust pipe is normal.)
 - Flat-looking tyres or uneven tyre wear.
 - Engine coolant temperature continually points higher than normal.
- Audible symptoms
 - Changes in exhaust sound.
 - Excessive tyre squeal when cornering.
 - Abnormal noise related to suspension system.
 - Noises related to the engine.
- Operational symptoms
 - Engine misfiring, stumbling or running rough.
 - Power reduces obviously.
 - Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking.
 - Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road.
 - Brake failure, soft brake pedal, or pedal approaching to the floor.

If a warning light illuminates or a warning buzzer

Calmly perform the following actions if any warning light lights up or flashes. If the warning light lights up or flashes and goes out subsequently, it does not necessarily mean a system fault. However, if this is going on for a while, have the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to inspect the vehicle.

List of warning lights

Warning lights	Warning light/details/actions
	<p>Engine control system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> After the engine starts, if the indicator is still on, it means the engine control system is faulty. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Engine exhaust gas monitoring system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> After the engine starts, if the indicator is still on, it means the exhaust gas monitoring system is faulty. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>12V battery charging malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> After the engine starts, if the indicator is still on, it means the charging system is faulty. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Low fuel volume warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates insufficient remaining fuel. <p>→ Refuel the vehicle.</p>
	<p>Abnormal oil pressure warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates low engine oil pressure. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Airbag system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in the airbag system. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>

Warning lights	Warning light/details/actions
	<p>Seat belt reminder light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reminds the driver or the front passenger of a failure in seat belt fastening. <p>→ The driver or the front passenger shall wear their seat belt.</p>
	<p>Transmission system/electronic shift system malfunction warning light</p> <p>Indicates a failure in transmission system/electronic shift system.</p> <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Engine immobilizer system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in the engine immobilizer system. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Passive start system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in passive start system. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>Low key battery warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates low key power. <p>→ Replace the key battery.</p>
	<p>Electronic wiper system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in electronic wiper system. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>Bulb malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates that there is a malfunction in the external lights of the vehicle. <p>→ Check whether the external lamps and wiring harness connectors are faulty or contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>Low washer fluid level warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates that the washer fluid level is low <p>→ Add washer fluid or contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>Coolant high temperature warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates that the coolant temperature is high. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Low brake fluid level/system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in brake system. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer. It may be dangerous to continue driving the vehicle.</p>

Warning lights	Warning light/details/actions
	<p>Over-worn brake liner alarm lamp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates over-worn brake liner <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately to check and replace the brake liner.</p>
	<p>EPS system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in EPS system. <p>→ Please exercise greater caution to drive and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>EPS system major malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a major failure in EPS system. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>ABS system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in ABS system. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>AUTO HOLD system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in AUTO HOLD system. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>Hybrid system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in 48V supply system. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Constant speed cruise system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in constant speed cruise system. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>HBB system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in HBB system. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>EPB system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in EPB system. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>

8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies

Warning lights	Warning light/details/actions
	<p>Abnormal tyre pressure/system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in TPMS system or abnormal tyre pressure. <p>→ Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>Automatic driving light/automatic wiper function malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in automatic driving light/automatic wiper function. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>Headlight leveling system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in headlight leveling system. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>Drive select system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in the drive mode select system. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>Idle start-stop system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in idle start-stop system. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>Air suspension system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a failure in air suspension system. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>Air suspension system major malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a major malfunction in air suspension system. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>SOS malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a malfunction in SOS. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>Power train mounting malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a malfunction in power train mounting. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>Low coolant level warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates that the coolant level is low <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>Super capacitor malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a malfunction in super-capacitor. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>

Warning lights	Warning light/details/actions
	<p>GPF cleaning warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates that GPF needs to be cleaned. <p>→ Refer to the section "Particle Filter" for cleaning or contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p>GPF malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a malfunction in GPF. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>Driver assistance system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a malfunction in driver assistance system. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>APA system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a malfunction in APA system. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>Wireless charging system malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a malfunction in the wireless charging function. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>TripREC malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a malfunction in trip recorder. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>TripREC MicroSD card malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a malfunction in SD card of trip recorder. <p>→ Replace the MicroSD card of trip recorder or contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p>PM2.5 malfunction warning light</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Indicates a malfunction in A/C system PM2.5 detection. <p>→ Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>

Note: when the oil pressure warning light, coolant temperature warning light and other indicators light up, the warning buzzer sounds.

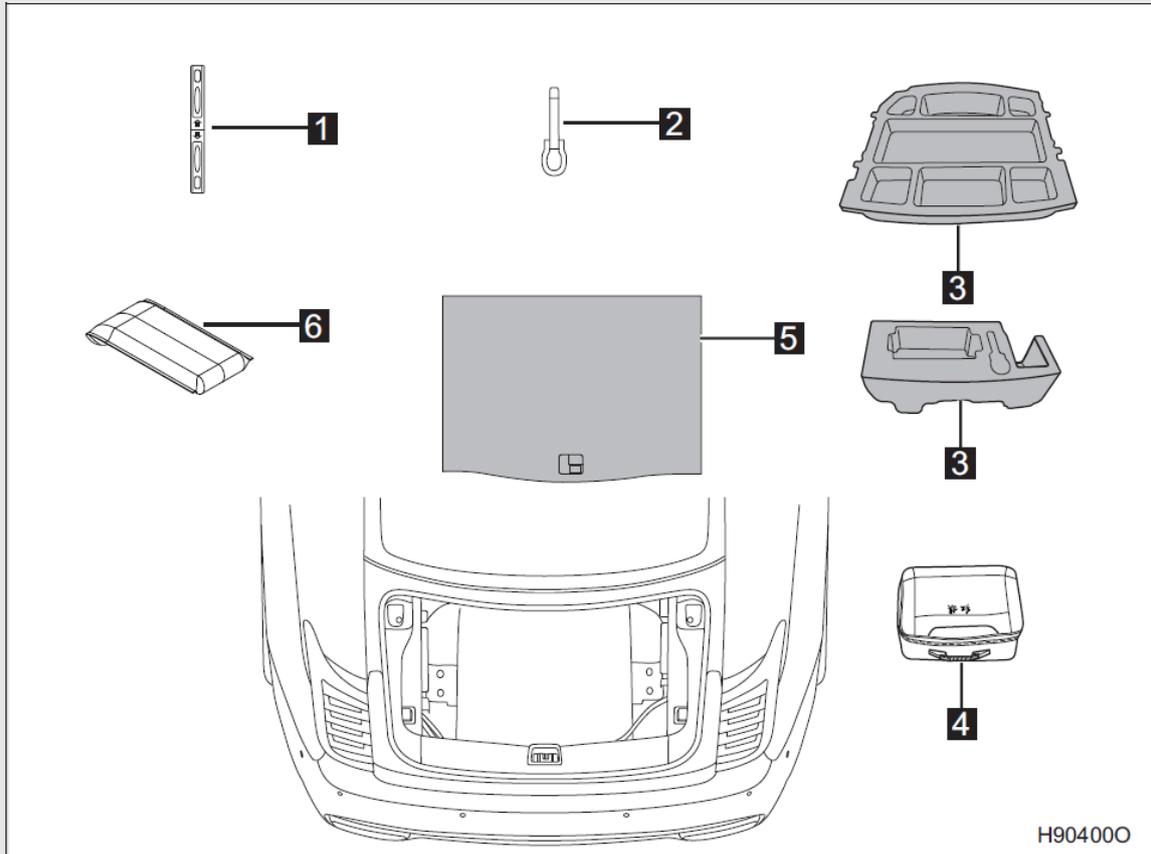
8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies In the case of a flat tyre

► Models with tire repair kit

Please use the tire repair kit included in the vehicle tool for repairs.

For specific operation methods, please refer to the instructions included in the tire repair kit.

■ Vehicle tools



1 Warning triangle

2 Towing eyelet

3 Tools box

4 Tire repair kit

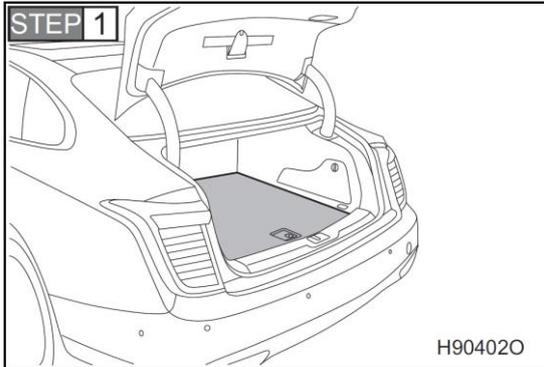
5 Trunk carpet

6 Reflective vest assembly

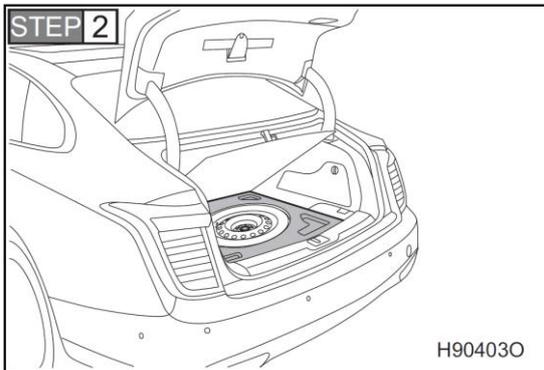
H904000

Taking out the spare tyre

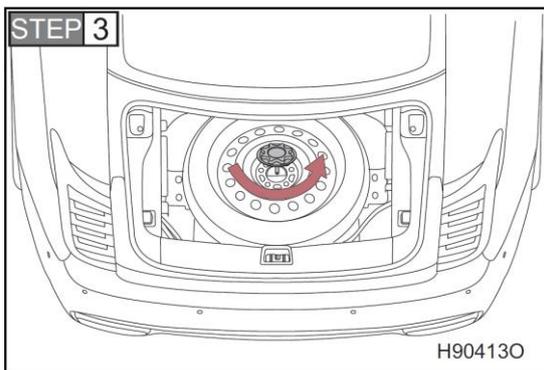
The following steps are for the towing from the front, and are the reference for the towing from the rear.



Take out the trunk carpet.



Take out the vehicle tool box.



Unscrew and remove the spare tire fasteners to take out the spare tire.

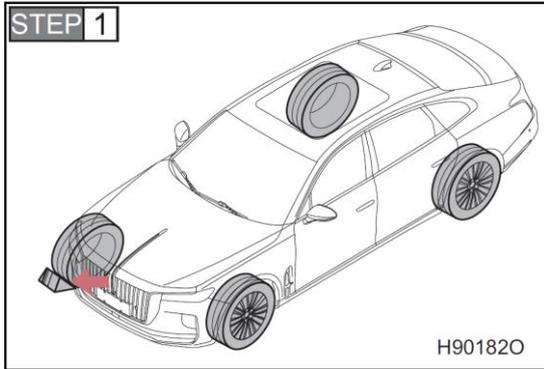


CAUTIONS

■ **When accessing the spare tire**

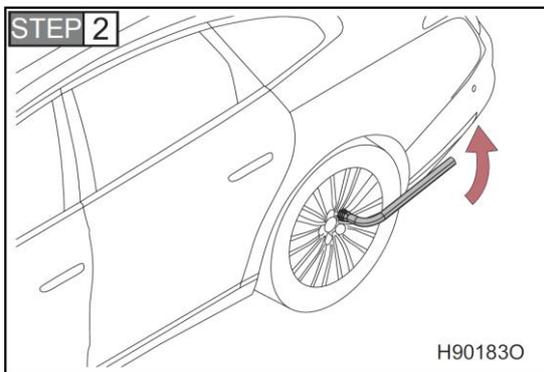
Be careful, and do not let your finger or other body part get pinched between the spare tire of the vehicle body.

Flat tire replacement



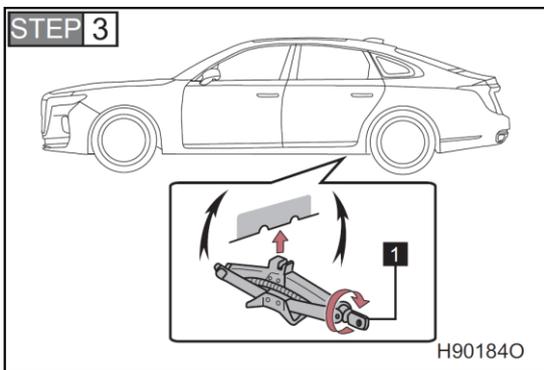
Use chock to wedge the tire.

Flat tire		Positions of wheel chock
Front wheels	Left	Behind the rear right tire
	Right	Behind the rear left tire
Rear wheels	Left	In front of the front right tire
	Right	In front of the front left tire



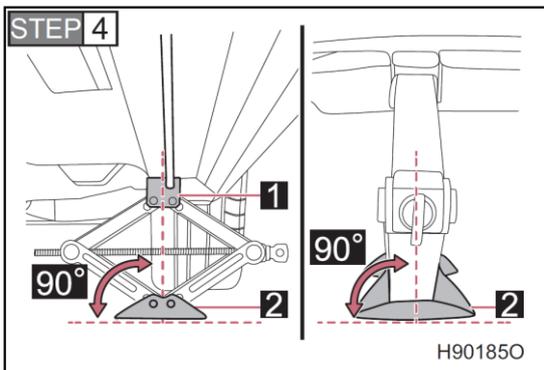
Use the accompanying tyre wrench to slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

For some models, the wheel nut can be loosened after removing the wheel trim cover.



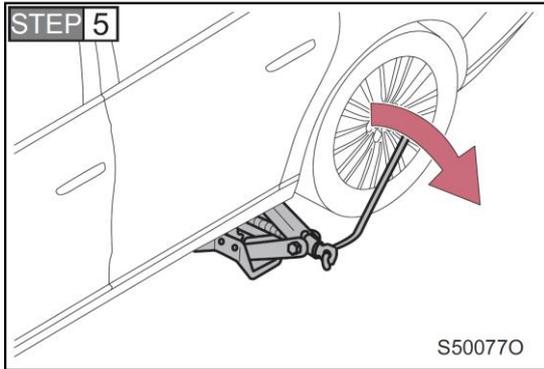
Turn the tire jack portion "1" with your hands until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

The jack point marks are under the sill panel. Please support the vehicle according to the jack point positions.

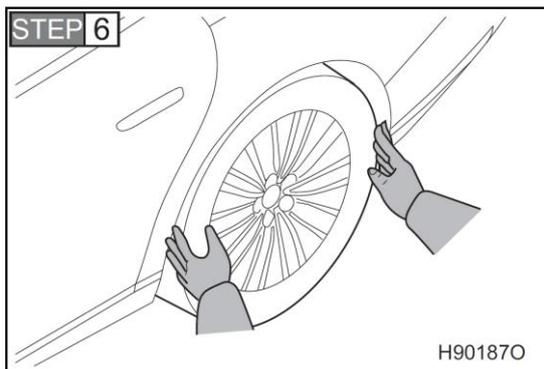


Calibrate the jack positions to make its notch "1" cover the jack point and the base plate "2" flatly attached to ground. At this moment, the base plate "2" must be vertically under the jack point.

8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies



Insert the jack handle into the hole of the jack. Rotate the jack handle to raise the vehicle and allow the wheels slightly off the ground.



Remove all the wheel nuts and the wheel.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire with the wheel spoke facing upward to avoid scratching the wheel rim surface.

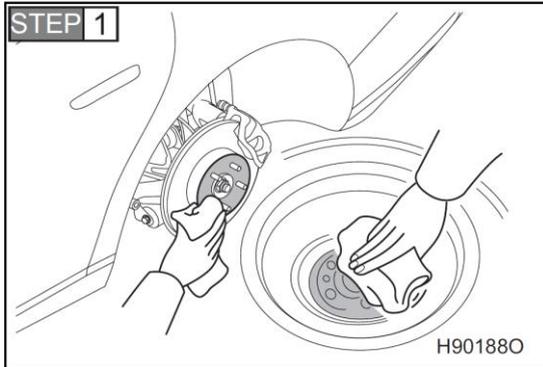


CAUTIONS

■ Replacing a flat tire

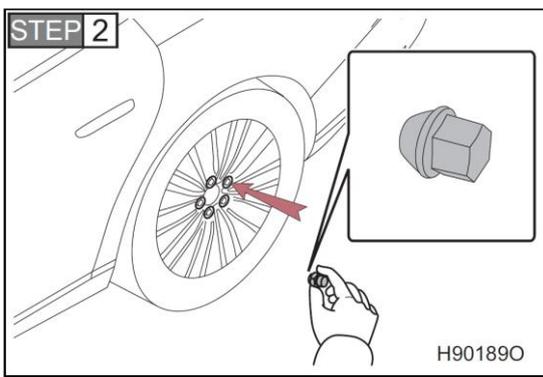
- Do not touch the area around the wheels or the brake immediately after driving.
After driving, the area around the wheels or the brake will be very hot. When replacing a tire, touching this area with your hands, feet or other body parts could lead to burns.
- If the following notes are not followed, the wheel nuts might be loose and the wheels may come off, leading to serious personal injuries or even death.
 - After the wheel replacement, tighten the wheel nuts to the specified torques with a torque wrench as soon as possible.
 - Do not install any wheel decorative insert that has been severely damaged, because it might come off from the wheel while driving.
 - When installing the wheels, only use wheel nuts designed for such wheel.
 - If bolts or nuts on the wheels have any crack or deformation, have the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to inspect the vehicle.
- Please correctly and securely tighten the wheel nuts.
It is dangerous when the wheel nuts are improperly tightened or loose. The wheel might wobble or come off. It might make the vehicle out of control and lead to severe accidents.

Installing the spare tire

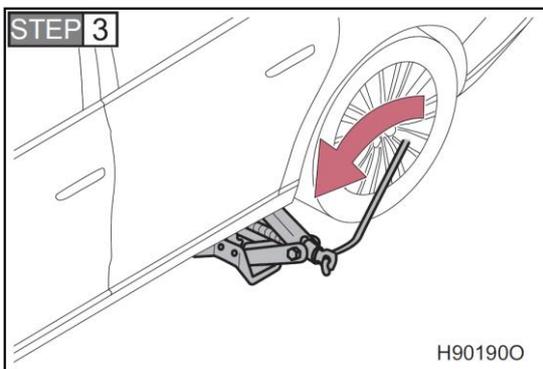


Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

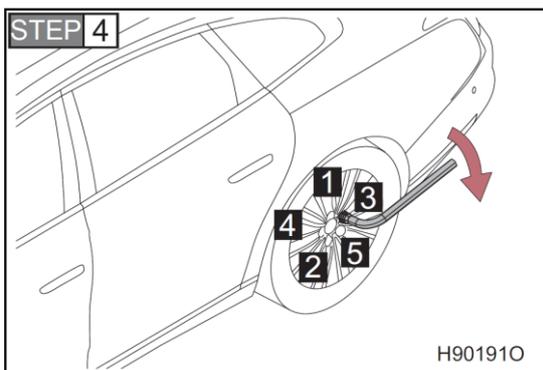
If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may become loose while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.



Install the wheel and tighten each wheel bolt by hand with the same force.



Lower the vehicle.



Firmly tighten each wheel nut in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
 $140 \pm 10\text{N}\cdot\text{m}$



CAUTIONS

■ After using tools and the jack

Before driving, make sure all tools and the jack are securely fixed on their storage spots to decrease the possibility to cause personal injuries in the event of a collision or any emergency braking.

■ Cleaning before installing wheels

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may become loose while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.

■ Installation of the spare tire

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.

Oil and grease may make the wheel nuts over-tightened, resulting in damage to the bolts or spoke wheels. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident that may lead to serious injury or even death. Remove all oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.

- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to standard value in the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible after replacing wheels.
- Have FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to inspect and replace the wheel if the wheel bolt hole is damaged or cracked.



NOTICES

■ Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.

Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel and make them beyond repair, causing an accident.

8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies If the engine cannot be started

After executing correct starting steps (→ P.118), the engine cannot start yet. Please confirm the following causes.

- The engine will not start even though the starter is normally operating
One of the followings may be the cause of the problem:
 - There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle tank.
Add fuel to the vehicle.
 - There may be oil spilling off the engine.
Try to go through the correct engine starting procedure again. (→ P.118)
 - The engine immobilizer system is malfunctioning. (→ P. 48)
- The starter rotates slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume
One of the followings may be the cause of the problem:
 - The battery is low. (→ P.375)
 - The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.
- The starter is not operating
The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem, such as an open circuit.
- The starter can not be started, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound
One of the followings may be the cause of the problem:
 - The battery terminals may be disconnected.
 - The battery may be depleted.

Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

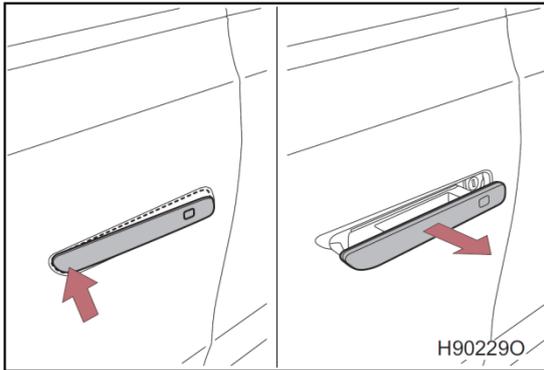
If the key is lost

If you lose your keys or the keys are stolen, provide the remaining keys to the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible. After rematching the keys, the lost or stolen keys will be invalid. The illegal modification without authorization, or using informal spare parts may lead to the malfunction of the system.

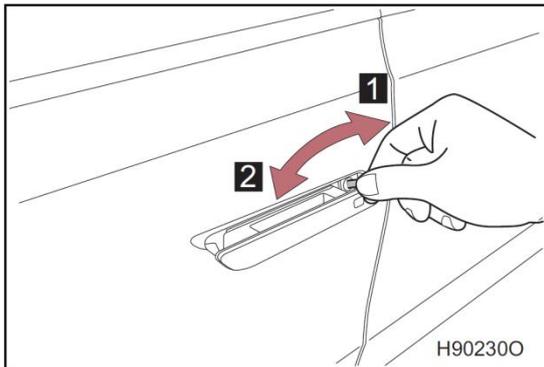
If the smart key does not work properly

If communication between the keys and vehicle is interrupted (→ P.82) or the keys cannot be used because of depleted battery, the passive entry & start system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors can be opened and the engine can be started by following the procedures below.

Locking and unlocking the doors



Press the front of the driver door handle to tilt it, then pull the middle part to pull the handle out vertically.



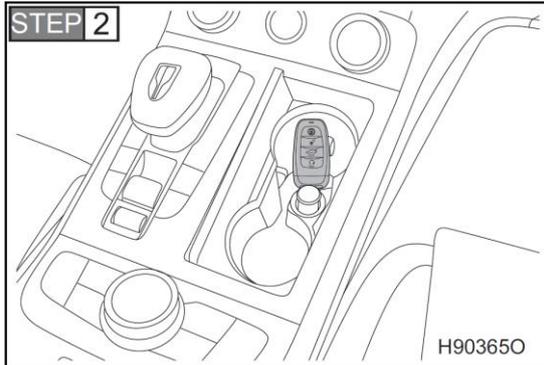
Pull and hold the handle, then use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the vehicle.

- ❑ 1 Unlock the doors
- ❑ 2 Lock the doors

Backup starting mode

Use the backup starting mode if the smart key battery is depleted.

- STEP 1** Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal. Press the engine switch.
At this time, the multi-function display of the combination instrument indicates that no keys are recognized



Open the front cup holder, and then put the smart key in the cup holder.

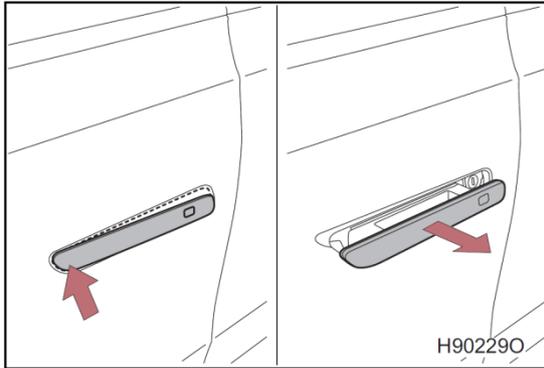
- STEP 3** Depress and hold the brake pedal and press the engine switch to start the engine.
Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer if the engine still can not be started.

- Replacing the key battery
Replace the smart key battery if it is weak. (→ P. 342)

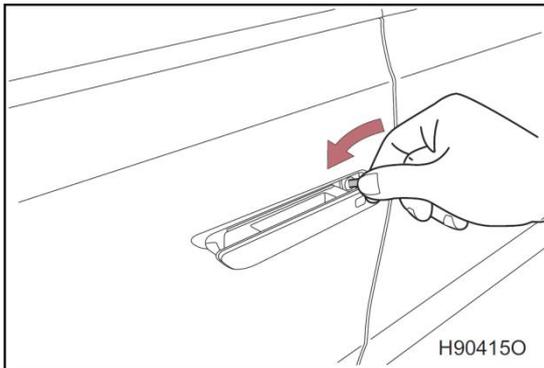
8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies If the door can not be locked properly

If the door cannot be locked through the PEPS function or the wireless remote control function due to the low battery. Then, the following steps can be used to lock each door.

Locking the driver side door

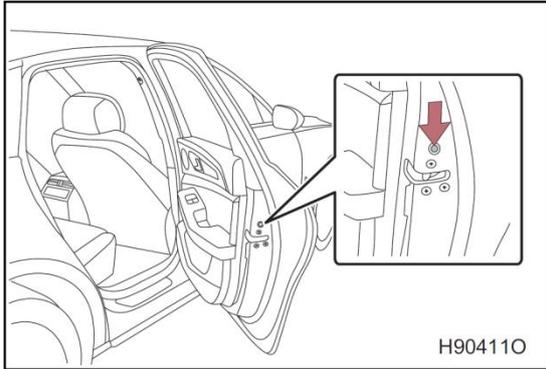


Press the front of the driver door handle to tilt it, then pull the middle part to pull the handle out vertically.

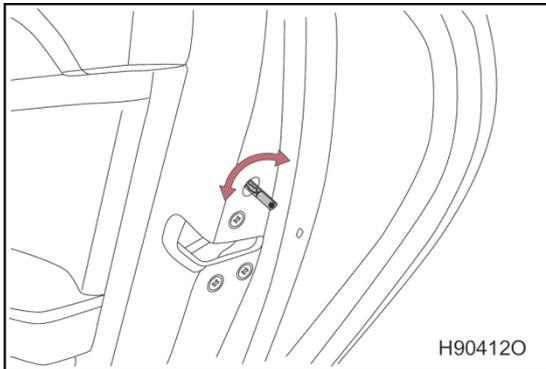


Pull and hold the handle, then use the mechanical key to lock the doors.

Lock the front passenger side and rear passenger side doors



Disengage the mechanical lock switch cover of the corresponding side door.



Close the door after locking it by the use of mechanical key.

For the front passenger side and rear right door: turn the switch clockwise;

For the rear left door: turn the switch counterclockwise.

If the battery or super capacitor is low*

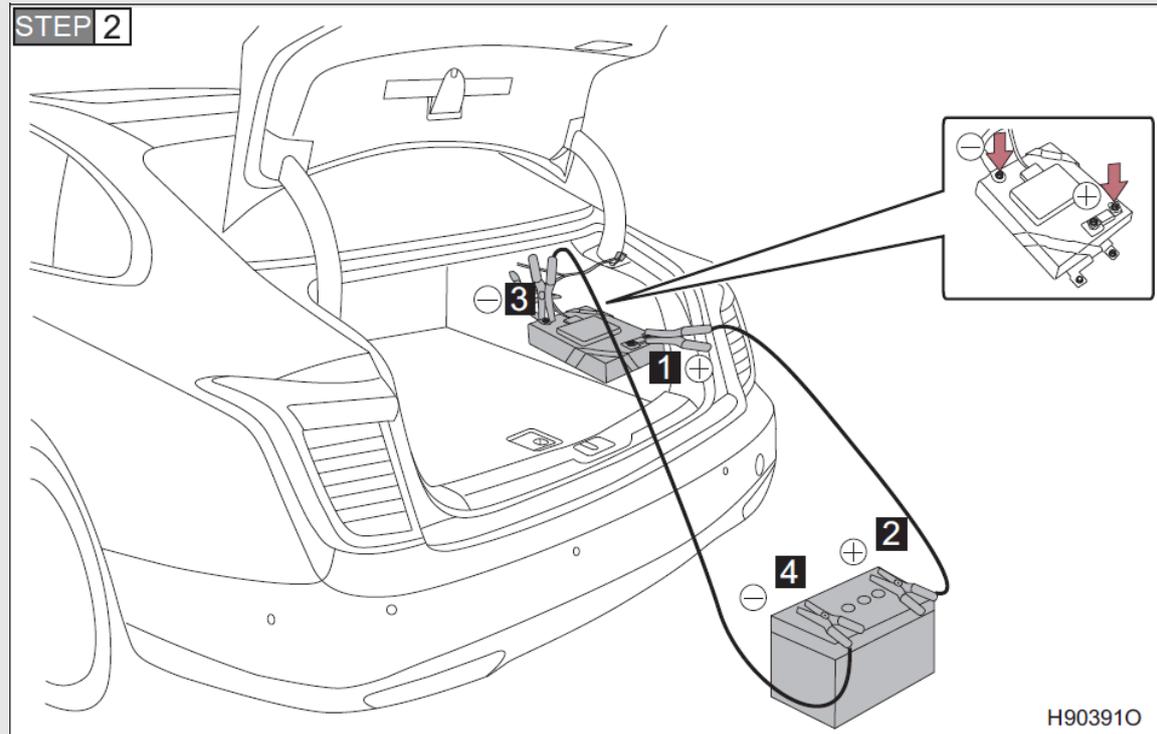
If the battery or super capacitor is low, the following measures can be used to start the engine.

You may contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer or qualified repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper cables with a length of not less than 2.5m and a diameter of not less than 50mm² and a second vehicle with a 12V battery, you can jump start your vehicle through the following steps.

- Connecting super capacitor by jumper cable*

STEP 1 Open the right maintenance cover plate in the trunk of the vehicle.



Connect the jumper cable (before connecting the cable, you need to set the engine switches of the two vehicles to "IG-OFF" mode).

- 1** Connect to the positive (+) super-capacitor terminal on your vehicle (right bolt).
- 2** Connect to the positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle.
- 3** Connect to the negative (-) super-capacitor terminal on your vehicle.
- 4** Connect to the negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

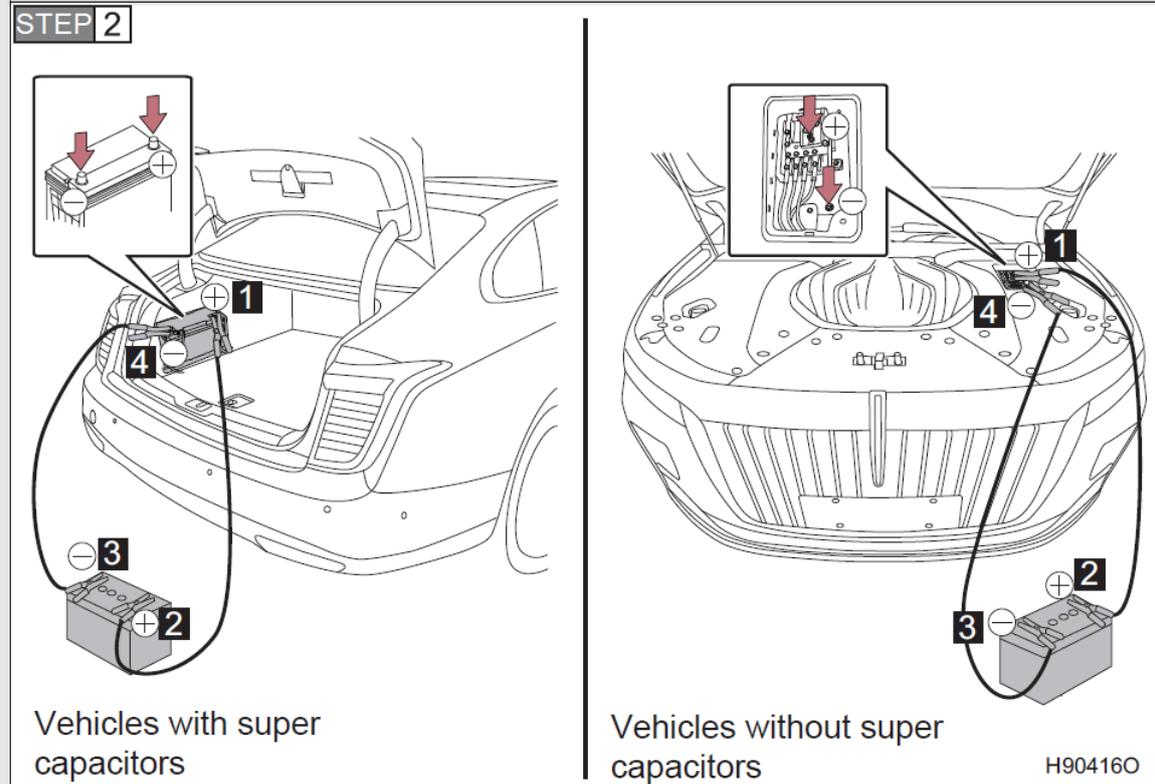
Please note that the distance between the battery and the super-capacitor should not be less than 1.5m when connecting.

STEP 3 After charging for about 20s, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

If the vehicle engine fails to start after the super-capacitor is connected, please charge the battery according to the following steps; and the vehicle without a super-capacitor can directly have the battery charged.

- Connecting battery by jumper cable

STEP 1 Open the left maintenance cover plate in the trunk of the vehicle or the maintenance cover plate on the left decoration cover of engine compartment.



Connect the jumper cables

- 1 Connect to the positive (+) terminal on your vehicle.
- 2 Connect to the positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle.
- 3 Connect to the negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle.
- 4 Connect to the negative (-) terminal on your vehicle. (Or connect to metal parts on the engine body)

STEP 3 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

STEP 4 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine of your vehicle by turning the engine switch to "IG-ON" mode.

STEP 5 Once the engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

■ To prevent battery/super-capacitor depletion

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is off and then lock the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is not used for a long time, it is recommended to start the vehicle and run it for more than 20 minutes every 10 days or so.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ Battery/super-capacitor charging

- Because natural discharge and wear effect of some electrical equipment, the battery and super-capacitor will be depleted even when the vehicle is not in use. If the vehicle leaves unused for a long time, the battery energy will deplete and the engine may not be started.
- The battery can be charged by a charger or a second vehicles. When charging the battery through the charger, be sure to turn off the engine switch and disconnect the ground wire.
- Super-capacitor can be charged through auxiliary 12V lead-acid batteries or 12V battery from a second vehicle. Be sure to turn off the engine switches of the two vehicles before charging.

■ When replacing batteries

- Use batteries conforming to the genuine standards.
- When the battery is removed, confirm that the super-capacitor has sufficient power before installing a new battery.

■ When replacing super-capacitor

- Use super-capacitor conforming to the genuine standards.
- Confirm that the super-capacitor has sufficient power before installing.



NOTICES

■ When handling jumper cables

- Only one 12V auxiliary battery can be used.
- When connecting or disconnecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fans or belt.
- Super-capacitor have extremely strong charging and discharging capabilities. Once a short circuit occurs, sparks may occur, and cause burn to the operator. Be careful when charging them and connecting cables to avoid short circuits.



CAUTIONS

■ When disassembling the battery/super-capacitor terminals

- Please disassemble the negative (-) terminal first. If the disassembled positive (+) terminal touches any metal around, it may generate sparks, lead to a fire as well as electric shock, and thus cause severe injuries even death.
- Since the battery and the super-capacitor are dual power supply components, and when the single power supply wiring is removed, the whole vehicle may still be in a live state. Make sure to prevent short circuits from occurring.
- Do not start the vehicle before installing the positive and negative poles of the super-capacitor or the controller connector, otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.



CAUTIONS

- **When the charging is completed, once the engine has started, drive your vehicle to the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to inspect as soon as possible.**

- **Avoiding battery/super-capacitor fires or explosions**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery/super-capacitor.

- Make sure all jumper cables are connected to the correct terminals, and they will not touch any other terminals except the correct one.
- Do not let the other end of the jumper cable connected to the “+” terminal touch any other parts or metal surfaces (such as a bracket or any nonpaint metal) in this area.
- Do not let the “+” clips of the jumper cables to touch the “-” clips.
- Do not ignite a fire, smoke or use matches, cigarette lighters near the battery/super-capacitor.

- **Precautions on battery**

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery electrolyte to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- If the battery electrolyte comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Keep children away from the battery.

- **Precautions on super-capacitor**

- The voltage for charging the super capacitor must not exceed 15V. It is strictly forbidden to use various chargers to charge the super capacitor, even the devices designed for charging the batteries.
- It is normal that sparks will be produced at the moment of circuit connecting during jumper connection. Make sure that the jumper cable is connected firmly; reverse connection is strictly prohibited, and sparks are strictly prohibited when wiring the super capacitor side.
- If you smell a pungent odor during charging, you should immediately remove the negative connection of the external battery (be careful to avoid electric sparks during operation, and avoid short-circuiting the removed jumper cable). It is forbidden to operate the super capacitor side until the smell has dissipated.
- If the vehicle battery and the super-capacitor are depleted at the same time, it is prohibited to charge the super-capacitor and battery at the same time.
- When the super-capacitor is charged and the vehicle is started, if the combination instrument still prompts that the super-capacitor system is malfunctioning, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately to check the vehicle. It is strictly forbidden to charge the super-capacitor repeatedly or for a long time.

8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies If the vehicle is overheating

Following situations may indicate an overheating vehicle.

- The coolant system has high-temperature warning or you can feel the engine power is dropping.
- Steam comes out from the engine hood.

■ Correction procedures

STEP 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the A/C system.

STEP 2 Check to see if steam is coming out from the engine hood.

If you see steam:

Stop the engine. Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides and then restart the engine.

If you do not see steam:

Leave the engine operating and carefully lift the hood.

STEP 3 Check if the cooling fan is operating.

If the fan is operating:

Wait until the engine coolant temperature decreases (shown on the combination meter) and then stop the engine.

If the fan is not operating:

Stop the engine immediately and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

STEP 4 After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, check the engine coolant level and inspect the cooling system for leaks.

STEP 5 Add engine coolant if necessary. (→ P. 328)

Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer if engine coolant is unavailable in an emergency.



CAUTIONS

■ Precautions when inspecting

To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle, observe the following precautions.

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot, causing serious injuries such as scald.
- Do not approach fan and belt when the engine is operating.
- Do not loosen the radiator cap while the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injuries, such as scald, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.



NOTICES

■ When adding engine coolant

After the engine is fully cooled, slowly add the coolant to it. When the engine is very hot, fast filling cold coolant may damage the engine.

■ To prevent damaging the cooling system

Observe the following precautions:

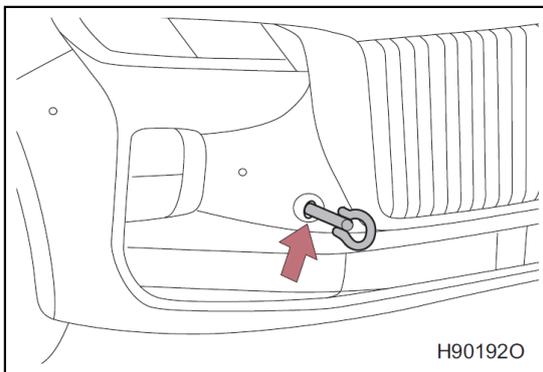
- Avoid mixing any foreign matter (such as sand or dust) to the coolant.
- Do not use any coolant additive.

8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies In case of the vehicle stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow.

- STEP 1** Apply the electronic parking brake and shift the shift lever to P. Stop the engine.
- STEP 2** Remove the mud, snow or sand around the stuck tire.
- STEP 3** Place wood, stones or some other material under the tires to help provide traction.
- STEP 4** Restart the engine.
- STEP 5** Shift the shift lever to the D or R position and carefully depress the accelerator to free the vehicle.

■ Emergency towing



- In emergency, tie the emergency towing cable or chain to a second vehicle to tow this vehicle with a towing eyelet if it is stuck or can not move.
- For more details on towing, refer to “If the vehicle needs to be towed” in this chapter. (→ P.354)
- Towing other vehicles with this vehicle is not recommended.

⚠ CAUTIONS

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid colliding with other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or backward suddenly as it becomes free; please pay extra attention.

■ When operating the shift lever

Do not depress the accelerator pedal by mistake during gear shifting. Otherwise, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and cause serious accidents.

⚠ NOTICES

■ To avoid damage to the transmission and other components

- Avoid wheel spin. Do not run the engine at a high speed.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, it may require towing to be freed.

If you drive on water covered roads

Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to check the vehicle for the following aspects if water enters the vehicle accidentally when driving on water-covered roads:

- Check the braking efficiency of the brake.
- Check the oil level and oil quality in the engine, transmission and final drive (the white and turbid lubricating oil indicates that water is mixed in it and should be replaced).
- Check the lubricating situations of drive shaft, all bearings and all connectors.



Driving on water-covered roads easily causes the engine to stall, electric elements short circuit and vehicle watered. Do not start the engine after the engine stalls; doing so may cause serious damage to the engine.

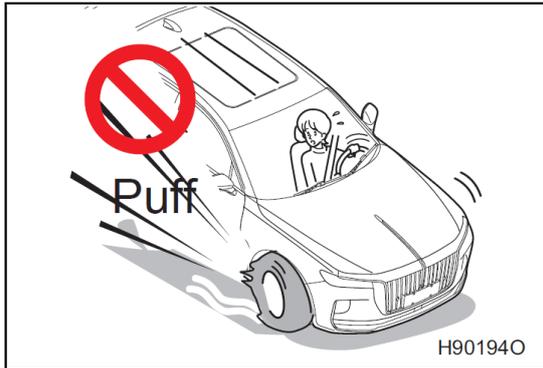
8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies In case of a punctured tyre

Stay calm when you have a punctured tire or a broken tire when driving.

Tightly grip the steering wheel and slowly depress the brake pedal to decelerate the vehicle. The vehicle can easily be out of control if brakes are suddenly applied or by turning the steering wheel suddenly.

The tire may be punctured or broken in the following situations:

- When the steering wheel vibrates.
- When the vehicle vibrates abnormally.
- When the vehicle tilts abnormally.

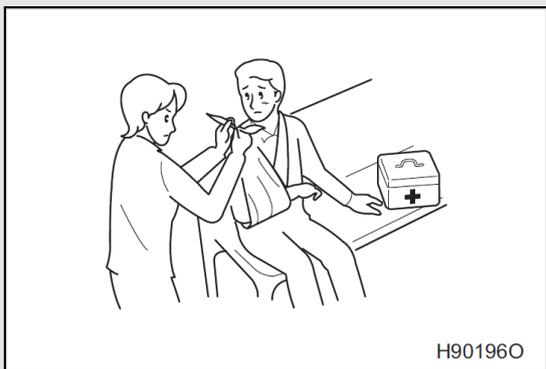
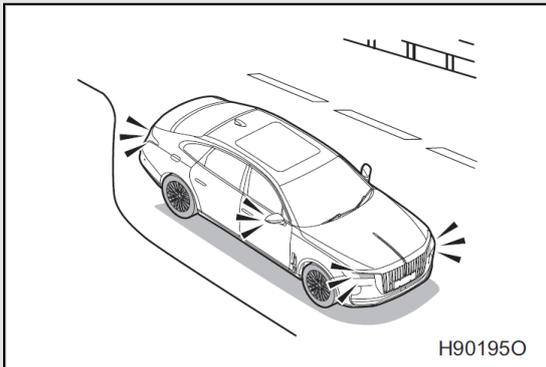


Do not drive with a punctured tire.

Do not continue driving with a punctured tire, otherwise, it might easily cause accidents. In addition, it may damage the tire, wheel rim, suspension and vehicle body. At this moment, please replace the tire or contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.

8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies In case of an accident

Stay calm and follow the methods below:

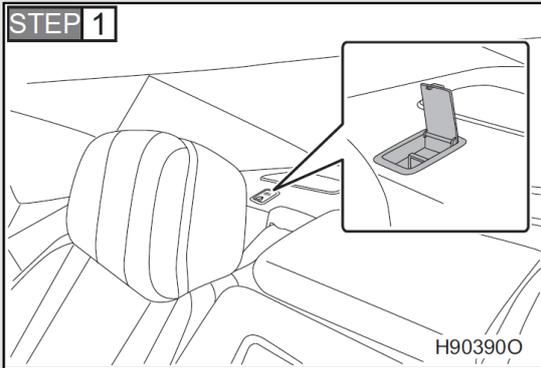


- ❶ To prevent subsequent accidents.
Move the vehicle to a safe area avoiding affecting the traffic, and turn off the engine.
- ❷ Adopt emergency treatment measures if someone is injured.
Try to adopt emergency treatment measures before the doctors and ambulance arriving. If the head is seriously injured, keep the gesture; if worrying about the consecutive accidents, move to a safe area.
- ❸ Call the police.
- ❹ Confirm the responsible party and record (name, address and phone number).
- ❺ Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer and your insurance company.

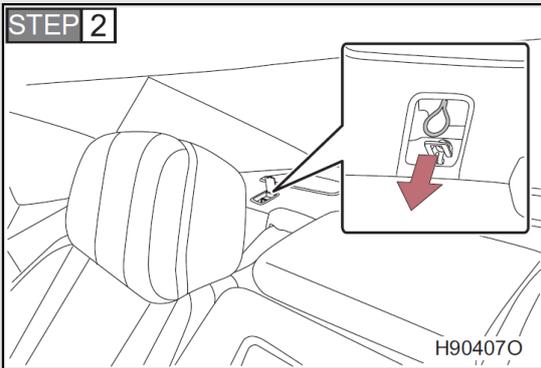
8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies

Trunk lid emergency open

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the trunk lid can be opened.



Open the right anchor bracket lid by pulling it upward.



Pull the trunk lid unlock cable to open the trunk lid (if necessary, disassemble the anchor bracket lid assembly).

CAUTIONS

- **Be cautious when manually opening or closing the trunk lid in emergency, and avoid getting hurt!**
 - Do not leave any child or people in need of help unattended in the vehicle, who may be trapped in it when emergencies occur and can not evacuate or save themselves.
 - As seasons change, the interior temperature of a closed vehicle might be very high or low, and occupants are extremely easy to get hurt or sick and even die, especially for babies.
 - Be cautious when opening or closing the trunk lid, and make sure no one is between the trunk lid and the body.

NOTICES

- **To prevent damaging the vehicle**
When opening or closing the trunk lid in emergency, carefully disassemble the parts to avoid damaging the vehicle.

9. Specifications

Maintenance data	388
Fuel information	402

Maintenance data**Dimensions**

- Model No.:CA7205, CA7205G, CA7250HA6T, CA7306, CA7306G

Overall length	5,137 mm	
Overall width	1,904 mm	
Overall height	1,493 mm	
Front suspension	908 mm	
Rear suspension	1,169 mm	
Wheel base	3,060 mm	
Tread	Front	1,633 mm
	Rear	1,629 mm
Approach angle(no-load)	16.2°	
Departure angle(no-load)	17.3°	

Seating capacity

- Model No.:CA7205, CA7205G, CA7250HA6T, CA7306

Seating capacity	5
-------------------------	---

- Model No.: CA7306G

Seating capacity	4
-------------------------	---

Drive mode

- Model No.:CA7205, CA7205G, CA7250HA6T, CA7306, CA7306G

Drive mode	Front longitudinal engine & RWD
-------------------	---------------------------------

Mass of complete vehicle

- Model No.: CA7205, CA7205G

Kerb weight		1,875 kg
Max. permissible total mass		2,325kg
Full-load axle load	Front	1,082kg
	Rear	1,243kg

- Model No.: CA7250HA6T, CA7306, CA7306G

Kerb weight		1,995 kg
Max. permissible total mass		2,505 kg
Full-load axle load	Front	1,160kg
	Rear	1,345kg

Emission standards

- Model No.:CA7205, CA7205G, CA7250HA6T, CA7306, CA7306G

Emission standards	China VI
---------------------------	----------

Total fuel consumption under specified test conditions
--

- Model No.: CA7205, CA7205G

Engine model	CA4GC20TD-31
Comprehensive consumption (L/100 km) ^{fuel}	7.1

- Model No.: CA7250HA6T

Engine model	CA6GV25TD
Comprehensive fuel consumption (L/100 km)	9

- Model No.: CA7306, CA7306G

Engine model	CA6GV30TD-03
Comprehensive fuel consumption (L/100 km)	9

Vehicle performance

- Model No.: CA7205, CA7205G

Maximum net power/engine speed	180 kW/5500 r/min
Rated power/rotating speed	185 kW/5500 r/min
Maximum output torque/engine speed	380 N·m/ (1800-4000) r/min
Maximum gradeability	≥ 30%
Top speed	230 km/h

- Model No.: CA7250HA6T

Maximum net power/engine speed	195 kW/ (4780-5500) r/min
Rated power/rotating speed	203 kW/ (4780-5500) r/min
Maximum output torque/engine speed	390 N·m/ (2500-4780) r/min
Maximum gradeability	≥ 30%
Top speed	240 km/h

- Model No.: CA7250HA6T

Maximum net power/engine speed	200 kW/ (4780-5500) r/min
Rated power/rotating speed	208 kW/ (4780-5500) r/min
Maximum output torque/engine speed	400 N·m/ (2500-4780) r/min
Maximum gradeability	≥ 30%
Top speed	245 km/h

Front wheels alignment (no-load)

- Model No.: CA7205, CA7205G

Front wheel camber	-15'±25'
Master pin caster angle	5°58'±45'
Master pin inclination angle	6°43'±45'
Front wheel toe-in	$\beta=12.84'\pm5'$ $2\beta=25.68'\pm10'$
Max. steering angle (inner wheel/outer wheel)	38°4' /32°12'
Vehicle height (from the wheel center to the fender edge)	411.8mm

- Model No.: CA7250HA6T, CA7306, CA7306G

Front wheel camber	-30'±25'
Master pin caster angle	5°48'±45'
Master pin inclination angle	7°7'±45'
Front wheel toe-in	$\beta=7.5'\pm5'$ $2\beta=15'\pm10'$
Max. steering angle (inner wheel/outer wheel)	38°4' /32°12'
Vehicle height (from the wheel center to the fender edge)	395.1mm

Rear wheel alignment (no-load)

- Model No.: CA7205, CA7205G

Rear wheel camber	-56'±30'
Rear wheel toe-in	$\beta=7'\pm5'$ $2\beta=14'\pm10'$
Vehicle height (from the wheel center to the fender edge)	411mm

9. Specifications

- Model No.: CA7250HA6T, CA7306, CA7306G

Rear wheel camber	-1°30'±30'
Rear wheel toe-in	$\beta=10'\pm5'$ $2\beta=20'\pm10'$
Vehicle height (from the wheel center to the fender edge)	390mm

Suspension

- Model No.: CA7205, CA7205G

Front suspension	Type		Double wishbone independent suspension
	Spring type		Helical spring
	Shock absorber type		Double-cylinder hydraulic gas filled shock absorber
	Stabilizer bar	Type	Hollow stabilizer bar
Diameter		Φ27.5mm	
Rear suspension	Type		Trapezoid arm independent suspension
	Spring type		Helical spring
	Shock absorber type		Double-cylinder hydraulic gas filled shock absorber
	Stabilizer bar	Type	Solid stabilizer bar
Diameter		Φ18mm	

- Model No.: CA7250HA6T, CA7306, CA7306G

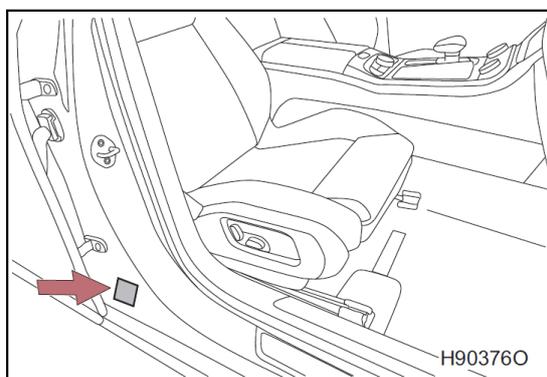
Front suspension	Type		Double wishbone independent suspension
	Spring type		Air spring
	Shock absorber type		Continuous damping shock absorber
	Stabilizer bar	Type	Hollow stabilizer bar
Diameter		Φ27.5mm	
Rear suspension	Type		Trapezoid arm independent suspension
	Spring type		Air spring
	Shock absorber type		Continuous damping shock absorber
	Stabilizer bar	Type	Solid stabilizer bar
Diameter		Φ18mm	

New vehicle running-in technical conditions

The new vehicle running-in mileage is 1500 km, and the engine speed within in the first 1000 km shall not exceed 3/4 of the rated speed; during 1000 km and 1500 km, the engine speed can be raised according to the roads till the rated speed is reached.

Vehicle identification

- Manufacturer's label



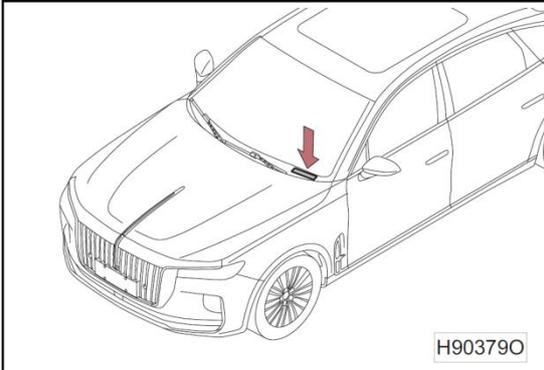
As in the figure, the manufacturer's label is located on the right B-pillar.

Contents on the manufacturer's label: manufacturer's country, manufacturing plant, vehicle identification number, brand, vehicle model, seating capacity, max. permissible total mass, engine model, max. engine net power, engine displacement and production date.

■ Vehicle identification number

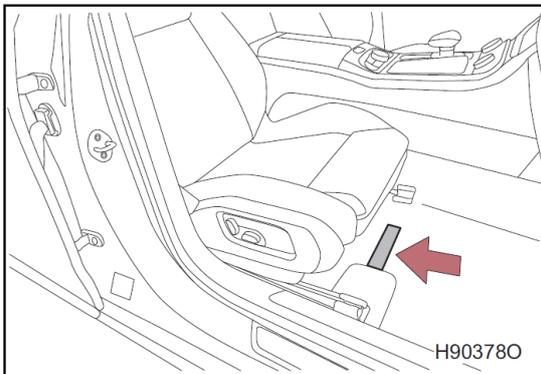
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your vehicle and is used for owner registration.

► The upper left of the dash panel



It is stamped under the front windshield to the upper left of the dash panel.

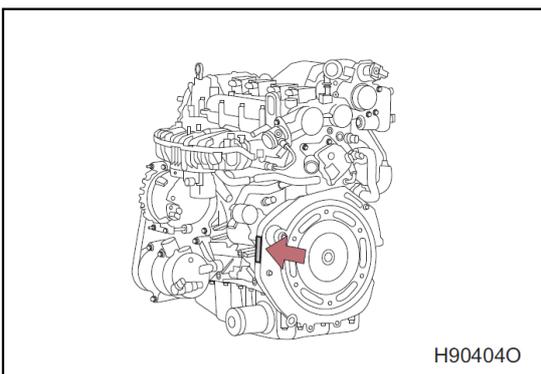
► The bottom of the front passenger seat



It is stamped under the front passenger seat.

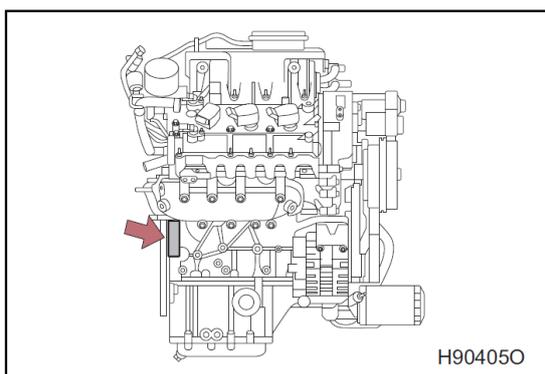
■ Engine model and factory number

► CA4GC20TD-31 engine



The numbers are stamped on the engine cylinder body as shown in the illustration.

▶ CA6GV25TD, CA6GV30TD-03 engine



The numbers are stamped on the engine cylinder body as shown in the illustration.

Engine

Model	CA4GC20TD-31, CA6GV25TD, CA6GV30TD-03
Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ CA4GC20TD-31 engine Inline four-cylinder, direct injection, and charged gasoline engine ▶ CA6GV25TD engine V-type six-cylinder, direct injection, and charged gasoline engine ▶ CA6GV30TD-03 engine V-type six-cylinder, direct injection, and charged gasoline engine
Bore and stroke	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ CA4GC20TD-31 engine 82.5 × 93 mm ▶ CA6GV25TD engine 82.5 × 77.8 mm ▶ CA6GV30TD-03 engine 82.5 × 92 mm
Displacement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ CA4GC20TD-31 engine 1.989 L ▶ CA6GV25TD engine 2.495 L ▶ CA6GV30TD-03 engine 2.951 L

Fuel

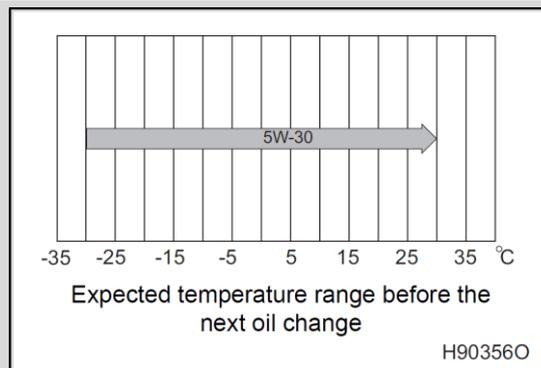
Fuel type	Gasoline
Octane number	95# or above
Fuel tank capacity (for reference)	62 L

Lubrication system

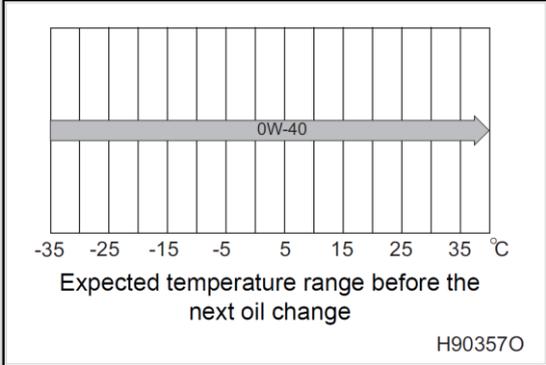
■ CA4GC20TD-31 engine

Oil capacity (drain and refill)	6 L
Filling quantity after replacing the oil and oil filter	5.3 L
Filling quantity after replacing the oil separately	5 L
Oil quality grade	Special oil for turbocharged engine
Oil viscosity grade	5W-30

The viscosity grade is selected according to the ambient temperature of use



- CA6GV25TD, CA6GV30TD-03 engine

Oil capacity (drain and refill)	8.5 L
Filling quantity after replacing the oil and oil filter	7.7 L
Filling quantity after replacing the oil separately	7L
Oil quality grade	SN(by 1009100-39L/1009100A39L)
Oil viscosity grade	0W-40 (Four-season oil)
The viscosity grade is selected according to the ambient temperature of use	 <p>The viscosity grade is selected according to the ambient temperature of use</p> <p>Expected temperature range before the next oil change</p> <p>H90357O</p>

Cooling system

- Model No.: CA7205, CA7205G

Capacity	9 L
Coolant type	Use the Super Long Life Coolant for the whole year (G30-91)

- Model No.: CA7250HA6T, CA7306, CA7306G

Capacity	12 L
Coolant type	Use the Super Long Life Coolant for the whole year (G30-91)

Ignition system

■ CA4GC20TD-31 engine

Spark plug	3707010-27L
-------------------	-------------

Clearance	0.6 - 0.7mm
------------------	-------------

■ CA6GV25TD, CA6GV30TD-03 engine

Spark plug	3707010-39L
-------------------	-------------

Clearance	0.7 - 0.8mm
------------------	-------------

Electrical system

Battery	12V, 80Ah maintenance-free battery
----------------	------------------------------------

Rear final drive

Final drive oil capacity	1.12±0.03L
---------------------------------	------------

Final drive oil specification	Castrol 75W-140
--------------------------------------	-----------------

A/C refrigerant

A/C refrigerant capacity	575±25 g
---------------------------------	----------

A/C refrigerant specifications	R134a
---------------------------------------	-------

Transmission

- Model No.: CA7205, CA7205G, CA7250HA6T, CA7306, CA7306G

Transmission type	7-speed wet dual-clutch transmission
Transmission fluid capacity (initial)	8.5 L
Filling amount during maintenance	6.5 L
Transmission fluid type	Castrol BOT351 C4



NOTICES

- Automatic transmission fluid**

- The use of automatic transmission fluid other than the specified will affect the control of the transmission hydraulic system and the cooling and lubricating effect, and will cause damage to the transmission assembly.

Brake system

Free travel of brake pedal	≤ 12.4 mm
Travel of brake pedal	124 mm
Brake fluid capacity	About 1 L
Type of the brake fluid (Conforming to GB 12981-2012)	DOT4

Reasonable use range of the brake friction pair

► Front

Pad thickness	Standard thickness	Aggregate thickness 18mm	Friction material thickness 11.5mm
	Min. thickness	Aggregate thickness 9mm	Friction material thickness 2.5mm
Brake disc thickness	Standard thickness	30mm	
	Min. thickness	28mm	

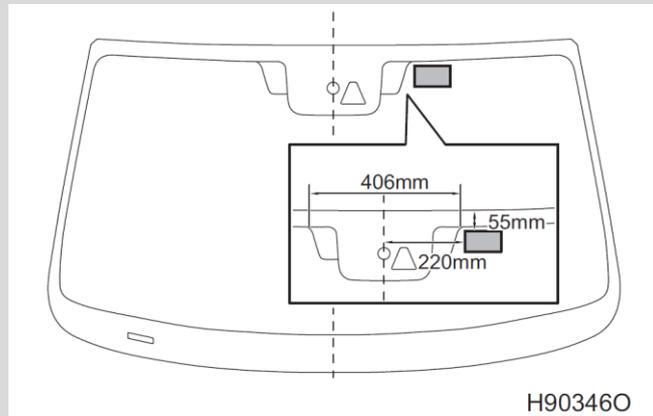
9. Specifications

► Rear

Pad thickness	Standard thickness	Aggregate thickness 17mm	Friction material thickness 11mm
	Min. thickness	Aggregate thickness 8.5mm	Friction material thickness 2.5mm
Brake disc thickness	Standard thickness	24mm	
	Min. thickness	22mm	

Microwave window

Recommended position of the microwave window (the picture is viewed from the cab)



Tires and wheels

Tire specifications		230/50 R18	245/45R19	245/40R20
Wheel size		18x7.5J	19x8J	20x8J
Tire pressure kPa (bar)		3 persons		ECO
	Front	18/19 inch: 220 (2.2) 20 inch: 240(2.4)		270(2.7)
	Rear	220(2.2)		270(2.7)
Wheel nut torque	140 ± 10N·m			
Wheel dynamic balance requirements	The residual amount of unbalance: ≤ 8g			
Spare tire specifications	T125/80R18			
Spare tire pressure kPa (bar)	420(4.2)			

Seat (with a deep cushion)

Front seats	Position at front & rear (from the guide rail rear end position to the front)	254mm
	Backrest angle	25°
Rear seats	Position at front & rear	Unadjustable
	Backrest angle	26°

The normal service condition of seat backrest: any position within the adjustable range designed for the backrest is the normal service condition.

Fuel information

You must only use unleaded gasoline in your vehicle.

To achieve the best engine performance, you must use unleaded gasoline of 95# or above in your vehicle.

In order to ensure emission control performance and malfunction diagnosability, FAW recommends you use gasoline specified in the local standard of each country/region.

■ Fuel tank filler specially for motor gasoline

To prevent incorrect fueling, your vehicle has a fuel tank filler that only accommodates the special nozzle on vehicle fuel pumps.

■ If your engine knocks

- Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.



NOTICES

■ Precautions on fuel quality

- Do not use any unsuitable fuel. If you use any unsuitable fuel, the engine might be damaged.
- Unsuitable fuel may lead to the engine or exhaust gas monitoring system malfunction.
- Make sure to clean the fuel system thoroughly and check the engine after adding improper fuels. Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

Additional information on sales to
other countries and regions except
for the mainland of
China..... 404

Additional information on sales to other countries and regions except for the mainland of China

Navigation, voice recognition, and related functions that need to be connected to the Internet to use the mobile APP and the car APP are temporarily unavailable in other countries and regions except for China, and mainly include the following contents in this manual:

- 4-5 Using other driving systems TSR (Traffic Sign Recognition) system* and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China
- 5-2 Using audio system* (and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China)
- 5-4 Voice recognition* (and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China)
- 5-5 HONGQI Smart Connect APP* (and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China)

Other information

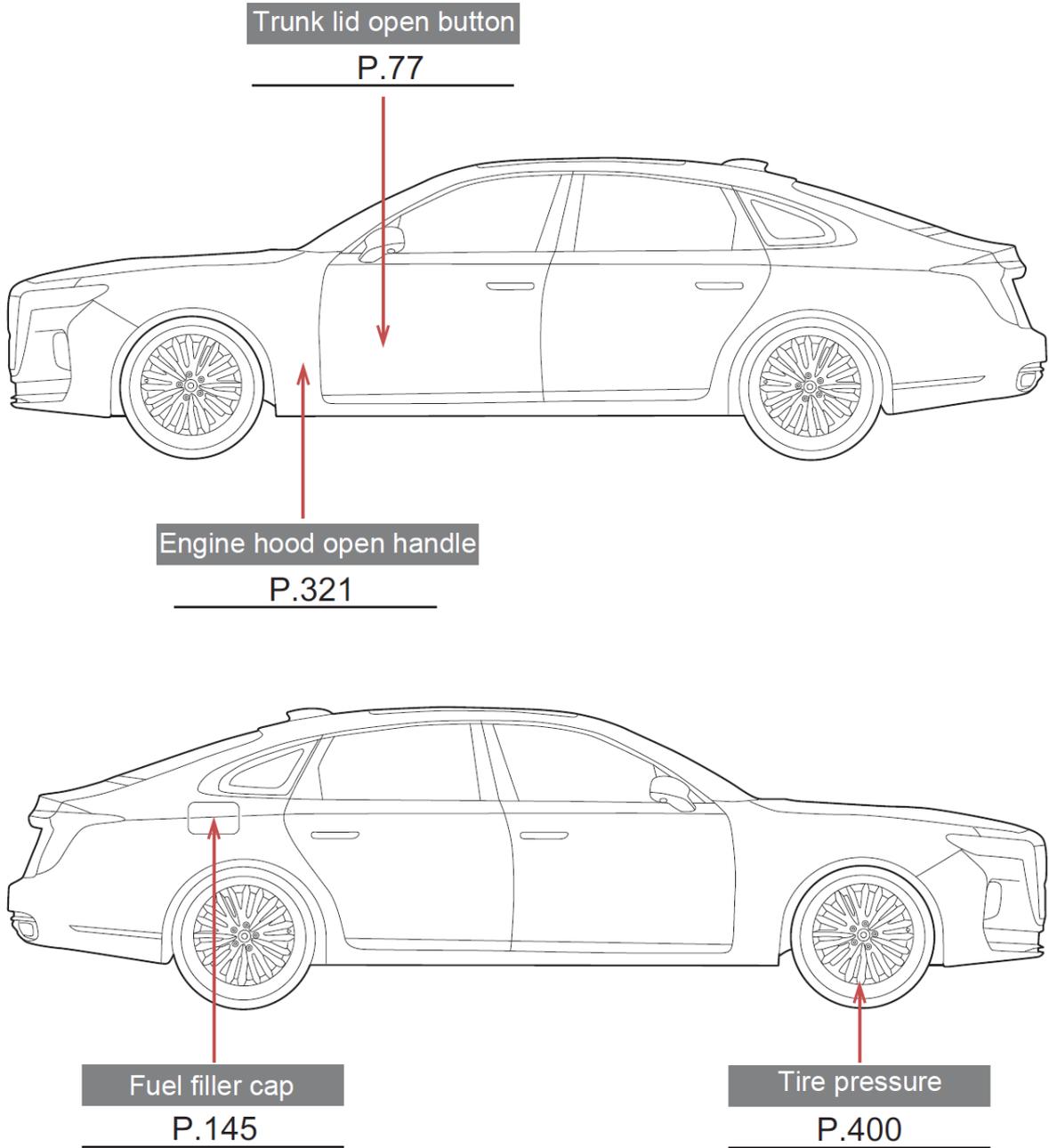
Abbreviation list..... 404

Abbreviation list
Abbreviation list

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
ABP	AutomaticBrake Prefill
ABS	AntilockBrakeSystem
ACC	AdaptiveCruiseControl
ADB	AdaptiveDriving Beam
ADS	AutoDefrostSystem
AEB	Autonomous EmergencyBraking
APA	AutoParkingAssist
AQS	AirQualitySystem
BSD	BlindSpot Detection
CDC	Continuous DampingControl
CDD-S	ControlledDeceleration forACC-Stop&Go
CDP	Controlled Deceleration forParkingBrake
CO	Carbon Monoxide
DSM	DriverStatus Monitoring
EBD	ElectronicBrakeforceDistribution
ECU	ElectronicControlUnit
ELR	EmergencyLocking Retractor
EMS	EngineManagementSystem
EPB	Electrical Parking Brake
EPS	Electric Power Steering

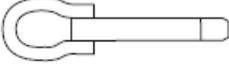
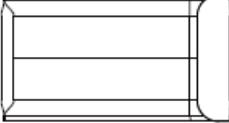
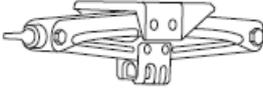
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
ESS	EmergencyStop Signal
FCW	Forward Collision Warning
GPF	Gasoline ParticulateFilter
GPS	GlobalPositioningSystem
HBA	Hydraulic Brake Assist
HBB	Hydraulic BrakeBoost
HHC	HillHold Control
LDW	Lane Departure Warning
LED	Light EmittingDiode
LKA	Lane Keeping Assist
MAX	Maximum
MIN	Minimize
OBD	On-BoardDiagnostic
POI	PointOfInterest
SACC	Super Adaptive Cruise Control
TCS	TractionControlSystem
TPMS	TirePressureManegment System
TSR	Traffic Sign Recognition
USB	Universal Serial Bus
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number

References For Gas Station



Fuel tank capacity (For reference)	62L
Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline(→ P.396)
Tire pressure	(→ P. 400)
Oil capacity	(→ P. 396)
Oil grade	(→ P. 396)

On-board tool list

Illustration	Designation	Qty.
	Warning triangle	1
	Towing eyelet	1
	Reflective vest assembly	1
	Tire wrench*	1
	Jack crank*	1
	Jack*	1
	Tire repair kit*	1